CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary reference and practice

Third Edition

Elementary

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary reference and practice

with answers and ebook

Third Edition

Elementary

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India
79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/elt

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2005
Third Edition 2017

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-316-63152-2 Edition with answers and ebook
ISBN 978-1-316-63153-9 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-1-316-631546 ebook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks

Introduction

People

1 The family *mother, uncle, relatives*

2 Birth, marriage and death *birthday, married, die*

3 Parts of the body *head, foot, shoulder*

4 Clothes *hat, shirt, trousers*

5 Describing people *tall, dark, good-looking*

6 Health and illness *headache, heart attack, exercise*

7 Feelings *love, tired, thirsty*

8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes *Good morning, Happy New Year, well done*

9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions *I don't mind, anyway, let's*

At home

10 Food and drink *rice, tea, vegetables*

11 In the kitchen *fridge, glass, saucepan*

12 In the bedroom and bathroom *wardrobe, shampoo, mirror*

13 In the living room *bookshelf, lamp, remote control*

School and workplace

14 Jobs secretary, factory, nurse

15 At school and university *biology, notebook, pass an exam*

16 Communications *address, computer, memory stick*

17 Your phone *apps, voicemail, text*

Leisure

18 Holidays *package holiday, currency, visa*

19 Shops and shopping *chemist's, department store, credit card*

20 Online shopping *reviews, basket, delivery*

21 In a hotel *single room, key, luggage*

22 Eating out *café, menu, fish and chips*

23 Sports *table tennis, judo, volleyball*

24 Cinema *western, film star, director*

25 Free time at home *gardening, listening to CDs, programme*

26 Music and musical instruments *guitar, jazz, orchestra*

The world

27 Countries and nationalities *Spain, Chinese, continent*

28 Weather *cold, rain, storm*

29 In the town *railway station, bank, town hall*

30 In the countryside *hill, farm, river*

31 Animals *horse, giraffe, pet*

32 Travelling *train, map, flight*

33 UK culture *fireworks, roast beef, Christmas*

Social issues

34 Crime *murder, prison, guilty*

35 The media *TV channel, magazine, talk show*

36 Problems at home and work *repair, untidy, in a bad mood*

37 Global problems *hurricane, war, strike*

Everyday verbs

38 Have / had / had *have breakfast, have time, have a swim*

39 Go / went / gone *go away, go shopping, go home*

40 Do / did / done *do an exercise, do your best, do the washing*

41 Make / made / made *make coffee, make a mistake, make a noise*

42 Come / came / come *come in, come from, come back*

43 Take / took / taken *take the bus, take a photo, take an exam*

44 Bring / brought / brought *bring something here, bring back, take*

45 Get / got / got *get tired, get better, get married*

46 Phrasal verbs *get up, put on, turn down*

47 Everyday things *watch TV, wash clothes, go for a walk*

48 Talking *say, tell, ask*

49 Moving *walk, drive, fly*

Words and grammar

50 Conjunctions and connecting words *because, only, before*

51 Days, months, seasons *Monday, July, winter*

52 Time words *next year, often, once a week*

53 Places *middle, front, abroad*

54 Manner *fast, loud, the right way*

55 Common uncountable nouns *money, bread, information*

56 Common adjectives: Good and bad things *nice, awful, lovely*

57 Words and prepositions *wait for, belong to, good at*

58 Prefixes *impossible, ex- wife, unsafe*

59 Suffixes *swimmer, useless, sunny*

60 Words you may confuse *quiet / quite, lend / borrow, cook / cooker*

Answer key

Phonemic symbols

Index

Irregular verbs

How to learn vocabulary

Acknowledgements

Thanks

Sabina Ostrowska wrote two new units for the Third Edition: Unit 17, *Your phone*, and Unit 20, *Online shopping.* The publishers would like to thank Sabina for her contribution to this new edition.

Introduction

To the student

This book will help you learn around 1, 250 new words and phrases. You can use the book yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like. If you have the edition with the ebook, you can listen to the pronunciation of all the new vocabulary, and highlight text. see page 171 for more information about the ebook.

Here is what the pages look like:

The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

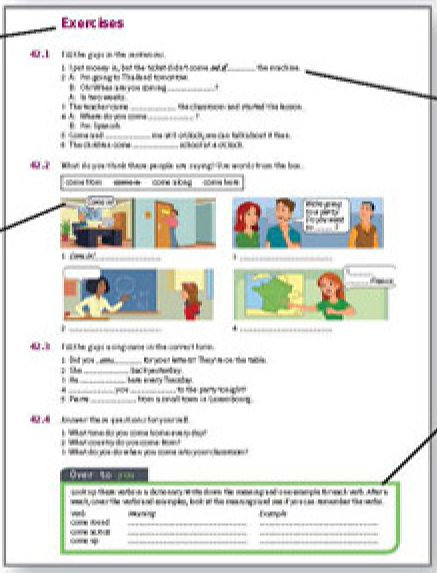
The left-hand page is divided into sections.

Common mistakes and learning tips are also given on the left-hand page.

Diagrams and pictures show the meaning.

Example sentences show the words in context.

Mini-dialogues show how people use the words in real situations.



The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

Pictures, tables and diagrams give variety to the exercises.

A lot of diff erent exercise types are used: gap-fills, answering questions, matching, etc.

Over to you tasks give you a chance to do more work on the topic of the unit.

The Answer key at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises aft er you do them. The Answer key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because there is oft en not just one correct way of saying something. The Answer key also has possible answers for most of the exercises which are open-ended, or where you are asked to talk about yourself.

The Index at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a list of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 158.

It is a good idea to have a dictionary with you when you use the book so you can check the meaning of something, or translate a word into your own language. sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so. You also need a vocabulary notebook to write down new words. see page 170 for ideas on how to learn and remember these new words.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished all the units in this book, you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and Intermediate*, and after that, to the higher levels, *English Vocabulary in Use: Upper-intermediate* and *English Vocabulary in Use: Advanced*.

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended for learners at A1–A2 levels of the Council of Europe scale. It aims to take learners with a very basic level of vocabulary to a point where they can use approximately 2,000 words and phrases and teaches them around 1, 250 new words and phrases. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted a written and spoken corpus of present-day English to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included. The new vocabulary (on average 20–30 items per unit) is presented with photos or illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an Index with pronunciation for all the key vocabulary.

The book focuses not just on single words, but also on useful phrases and collocations. For example, difficult teaching points such as the difference between **do** and **make** are dealt with through collocation (we **do** our homework, but we **make** mistakes), and useful phrases (e.g. **come along**) are presented.

The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to core verbs such as **get** and **bring** / **take**. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each key item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but it is often a good idea to do blocks of units based round the same topic (e.g. *People, At home, Leisure*).

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, including traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can easily be adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual ways. For example, where there are dialogues, students can take the speaking parts and practise the conversations, and where the exercises have questions and answers, students can practise asking each other the questions and answering them. See who has the best ideas for recording vocabulary in their notebook. The Answer key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises, and also gives possible model answers for the more personalised ones.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that learners need five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished and reviewed all the units in this book, they can move on to the next book in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and Intermediate,* by Stuart Redman.

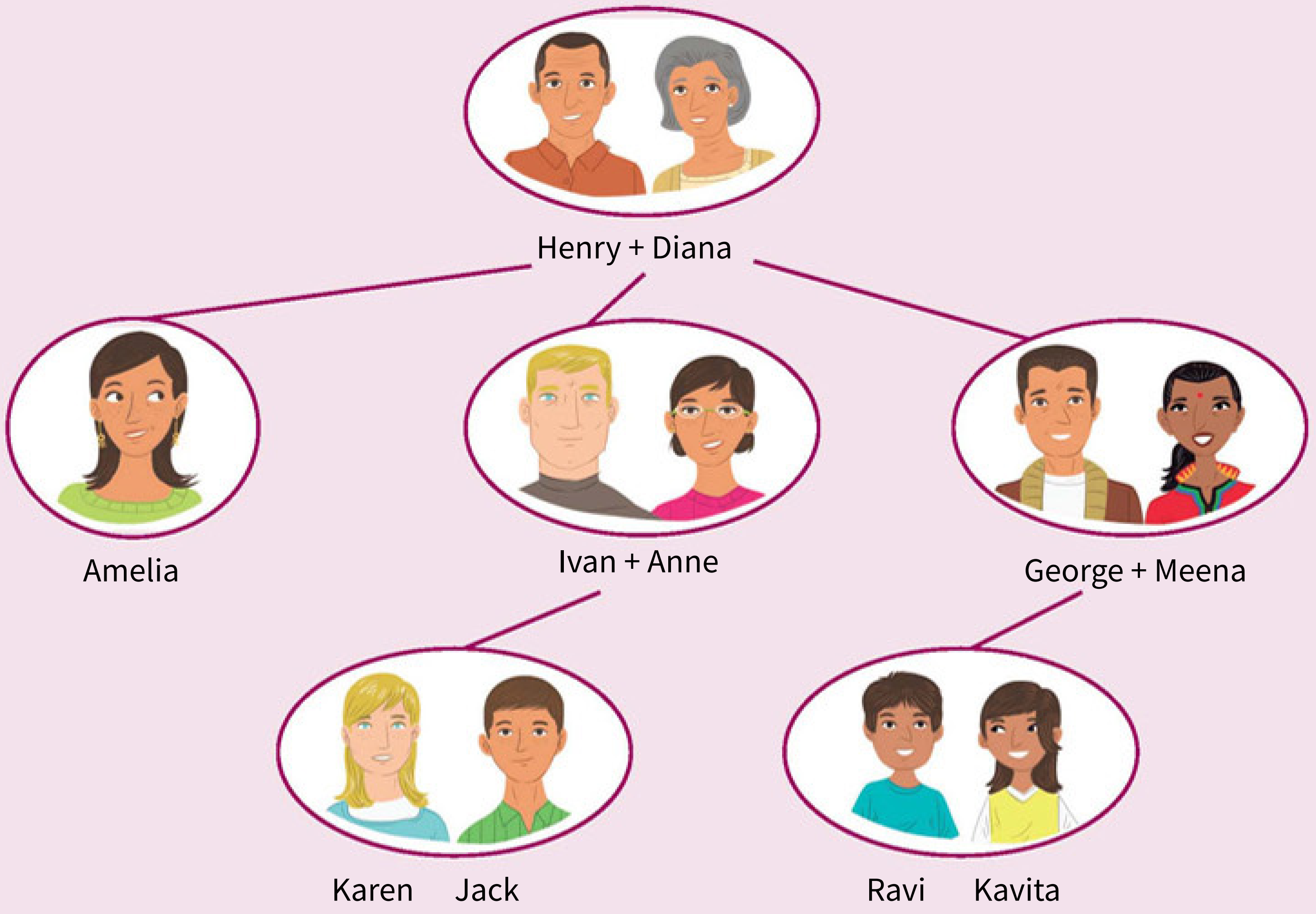
Find more resources for teachers at www.cambridge.org

We hope you enjoy using the book.

1 The family

A Family words

A family tree for some of Anne and Ivan Sorokin's **relatives** or **relations**.



Ivan and Anne and their **children**

- Ivan is Anne's **husband** and Karen and Jack's **father**.
- Anne is Ivan's **wife** and Karen and Jack's **mother**.
- Anne and Ivan are Karen and Jack's **parents**.
- Karen is Anne and Ivan's **daughter**. Jack is their **son**.
- Karen is Jack's **sister**. Jack is Karen's **brother**.

Henry and Diana

- Henry is Karen and Jack's **grandfather**. Diana is their **grandmother**.
- Henry and Diana are Karen and Jack's **grandparents**.
- Karen is Henry and Diana's **granddaughter**. Jack is their **grandson**.

Amelia, George and Meena

- George is Karen and Jack's **uncle**.
- Amelia and Meena are Karen and Jack's **aunts**.
- Karen is Amelia, George and Meena's **niece**. Jack is their **nephew**.
- Kavita and Ravi are Karen and Jack's **cousins**.

B Expressions

Have you got any brothers and sisters?	No, I am **an only child**.
Do you come from a big family?	Yes, I have three brothers and two sisters.

Common mistakes

We say 'my/his wife' (singular) but 'our/their wives' (plural).

Audio not supported

Exercises

1.1 **Look at the family tree on the opposite page. Complete the sentences.**

1 Kavita is Ravi's *sister*
2 Ravi is Kavita's ....
3 Anne is Kavita's ....
4 Ivan is Ravi's ....
5 Diana is Ravi's ....
6 Henry is Kavita's ....
7 Ravi is Ivan's ....
8 Kavita is Ivan's ....
9 Meena is Kavita's ....
10 Meena is George's ....
11 Karen is Ravi's ....

1.2 **The Sorokins have some other relatives. Complete the sentences about them.**

Sanjay

Alexander and Leila

Meena has a brother, Sanjay. Sanjay is Kavita and Ravi's ^{1} *uncle* and Sanjay's wife is their ^{2}.......... . Sanjay and his wife have one son, Prem. Prem is an ^{3}.......... . Henry's parents are still alive. Alexander is Henry's ^{4}.......... and his ^{5}.......... Leila is Henry's ^{6}.......... . Alexander and Leila have three ^{7}.......... –Amelia, Ivan and George. Ivan and George and their ^{8}.........., Anne and Meena, love their ^{9}.......... and visit them as often as possible.

1.3 **Ask a friend these questions. Then write sentences about your friend and their family. For example,** *Marta has one brother but no sisters*.

1 Have you got any brothers and sisters?
2 Have you got any cousins?
3 Have you got any nieces or nephews?
4 Have you got any grandparents?
5 Do you come from a big family?

1.4 **Cover the opposite page. How many family words can you write down in two minutes? Check what you wrote carefully with the book. Did you spell everything correctly? Which words did you forget?**

Over to you

Draw your family tree. Then write sentences. Write about your relations. *Marta is my mother.*
Use a dictionary to help you.

2 Birth, marriage and death

A Birth

Anna **had a baby** yesterday.
He **was born** at 1.15 yesterday morning.
He **weighed** 3 kilograms.

They are going to **call** him John – **after** John, his grandfather. His grandfather's **birthday** is June 16th too – but he was born in 1957!
The baby's parents **were born** in 1986.

Common mistakes

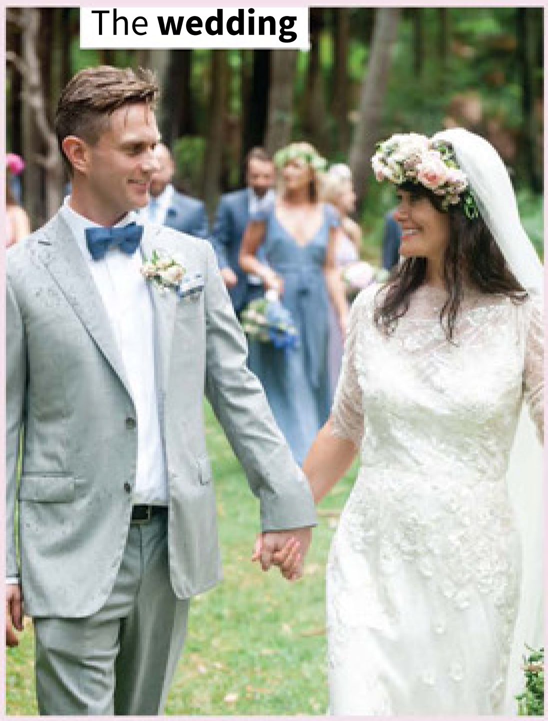
Anna **had a baby** [NOT Anna got a baby].

He/ She **was born** [NOT He/ She ~~born~~ or He/ She ~~is born~~].

B Marriage

If you do not have a partner, you are **single**.
If you have a husband or wife, you are **married**.
If your husband or wife dies, you are **widowed**.
If your marriage breaks up, you are **separated** / **divorced**.
[the marriage has legally ended]

Harry and Sarah **got married**.
They (**got**) **married** in 2001.
(*married* without *got* is more formal)
They went on their **honeymoon** to Italy.
They **were married** for 15 years.



The **wedding**

(bride) groom

bride

Common mistakes

Sarah **got married** to Harry [NOT with Harry].

C Death

Then Harry became **ill**.
He **died** last year.
He **died of** a heart attack.

Common mistakes

Harry is dead [NOT Harry ~~is died~~ or Harry ~~is death~~].

The **funeral**

Exercises

2.1 Think of people you know. Where were they born? When?

1 *My mother was born in Scotland on July 4th 1967.*
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

2.2 Find a word on the opposite page which means …

1 the name for a woman on her wedding day. *bride*
2 the name for a man on his wedding day.
3 what you are if you haven't got a partner.
4 to be 57 kilograms.
5 what you are if your marriage has legally ended.
6 a religious service for a dead person.
7 a holiday after a wedding.
8 what you are if your husband or wife dies.

2.3 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

~~in~~	after	of	to	born	on

[1] *In*.......... 2003 Anne got married [2].............. Daniel Smith. Unfortunately, Daniel's grandmother, Lydia Smith, died [3].............. old age soon after their wedding. Daniel and Anne were [4].............. their honeymoon when she died. Anne's baby daughter was [5].............. two years later. They called the baby Lydia, [6].............. Daniel's grandmother.

2.4 When were these people born and when did they die? Write sentences.

1 Genghis Khan (1162–1227) *Genghis Khan was born in 1162 and died in 1227.*
2 Christopher Columbus (1451–1506)
3 Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)
4 Princess Diana (1961–1997)
5 Heath Ledger (1979–2008)

2.5 Complete the sentences using died, dead or death.

1 Kelly's grandfather *died*.............. last year.
2 His.............. made her very sad.
3 Her grandmother has been.............. for five years now.
4 She.............. of a heart attack.
5 Now all Kelly's grandparents are.............. .

2.6 Write about your family. Use words and expressions from the opposite page.

Here are some ideas for making your sentences.

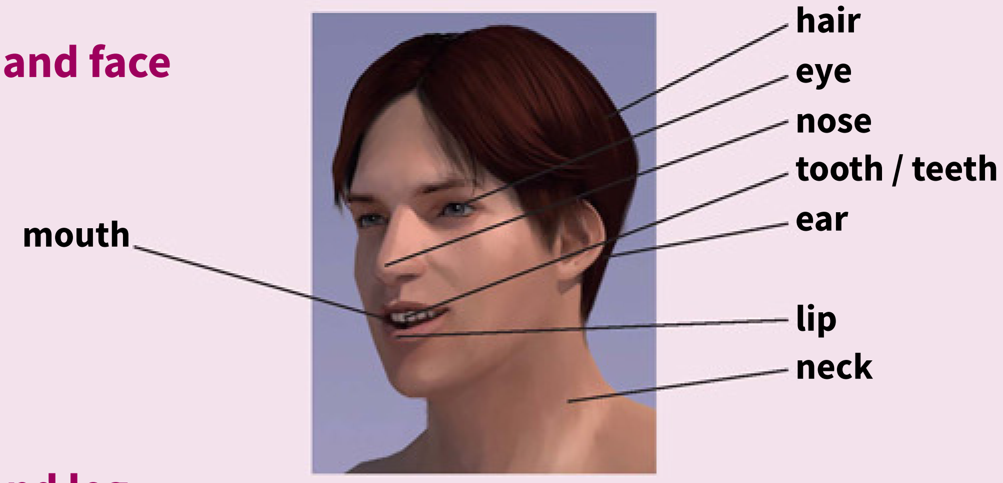
I have .... I/my ....
got married in .... (year).
For my/his/her honeymoon, I/he/she went
to ....

I have / My .... has ....
children. They were born in .... and
.... (years).

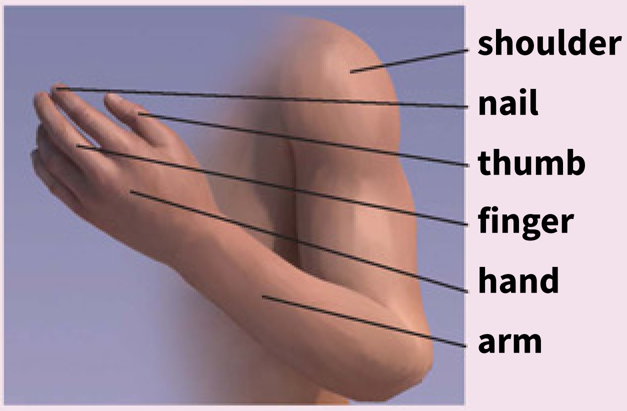
3

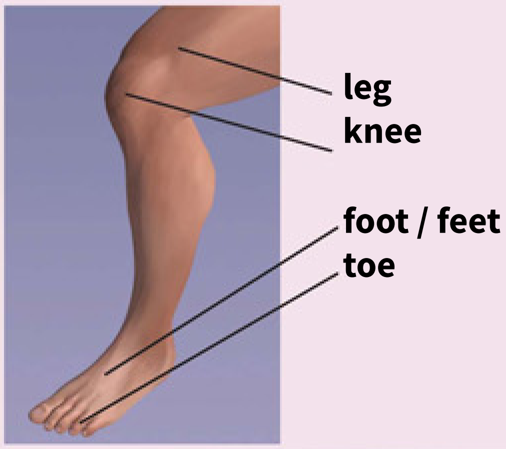
Parts of the body

A Head and face

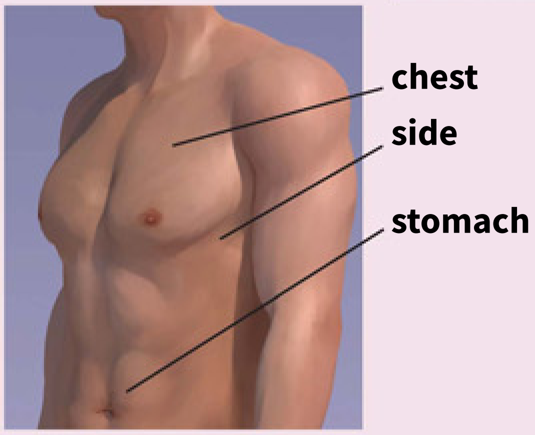

hair
eye
nose
tooth / teeth
ear
mouth
lip
neck

B Arm and leg

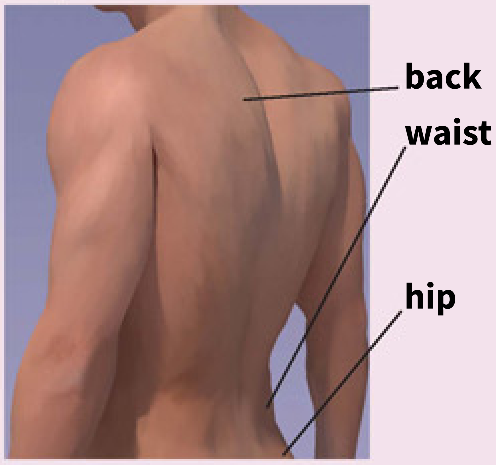

shoulder
nail
thumb
finger
hand
arm


leg
knee
foot / feet
toe

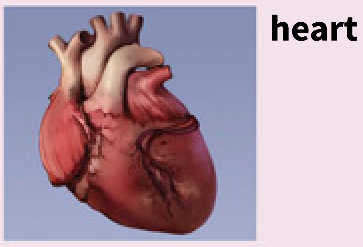
C Rest of body


chest
side
stomach

We have **skin** covering our bodies.


back
waist
hip

D Inside the body



E Pronunciation problems

eye /aɪ/ knee /niː/ stomach /'stʌmək/ heart /hɑːt / blood /blʌd/ foot /fʊt/ tooth /tuːθ/

F Singular and plurals

one foot – two feet one tooth – two teeth

Hair is a singular word. My hair is very long – I must cut it soon.

Common mistakes

Usually we use my, your, his, her, etc. with parts of the body.

Katie is washing her hair [NOT Jane is washing ~~the~~ hair]. I have a pain in my leg [NOT I have a pain in ~~the~~ leg].

(See Unit 6: Health and illness.)

Exercises

3.1 Here are the names of some parts of the body with the letters mixed up. What are they?

1 eken ……*knee*……
2 osen ……………
3 rathe ……………
4 hamcost ……………
5 olderush ……………
6 are ……………
7 hotot ……………
8 buhtm ……………
9 akbc ……………
10 tiwas ……………

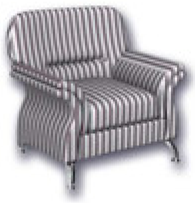
3.2 Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.

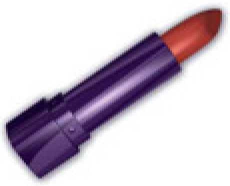
1 A hand has five ……*fingers*…… .
2 A foot has five …………… .
3 An adult has 32 …………… .
4 You smell with your …………… .
5 The …………… is a symbol of love.
6 You hear with your …………… .
7 The child sat on her father's …………… .
8 Your …………… type can be A, B, AB or O.
9 You think with your …………… .

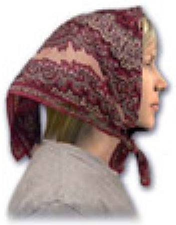
3.3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

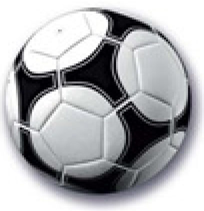
1 I have a pain in ~~the~~ side. *I have a pain in my side.*
2 That woman has got very big foots.
3 My grandfather has a pain in the shoulder.
4 The baby has already got two tooths.
5 The little girl needs to wash the face and the hands before dinner.
6 My hairs are dirty. I need to wash them.

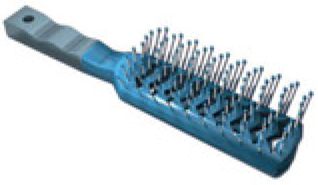
3.4 Parts of the body are often used in compound nouns too. Complete these nouns with a word from the opposite page.

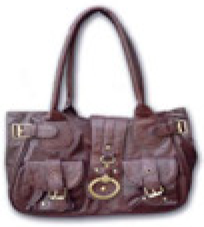

1 ……*arm*……chair


3 ……………stick

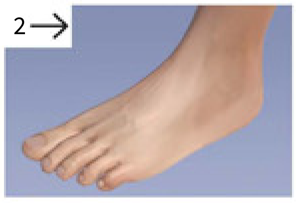

5 ……………scarf

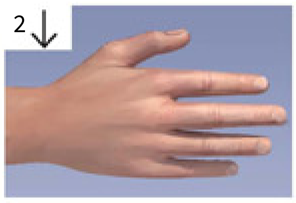

2 ……………ball

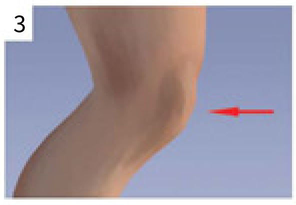

4 ……………brush

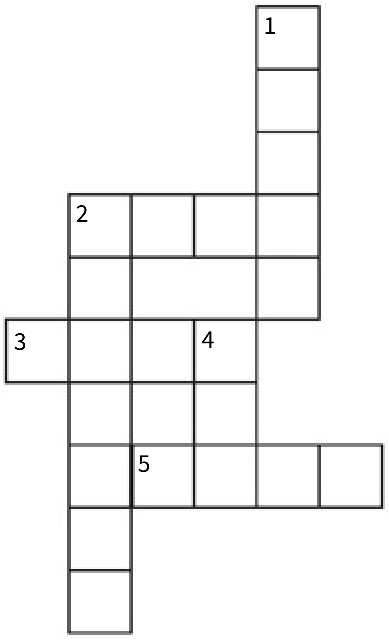

6 ……………bag

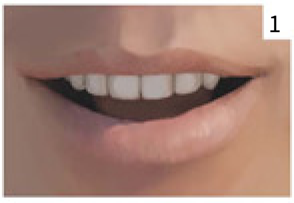
3.5 Complete the crossword. Look at the pictures.

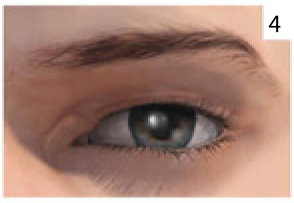

2→

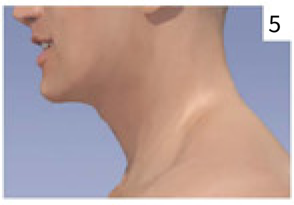

2↓


3



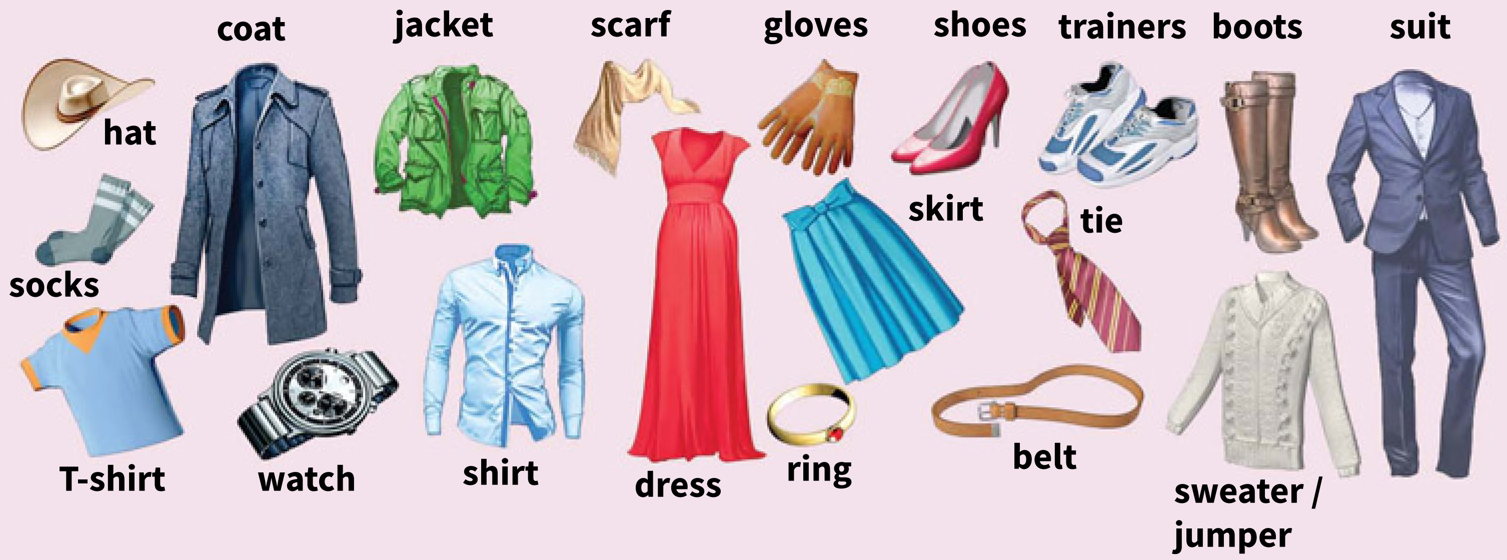

1


4


5

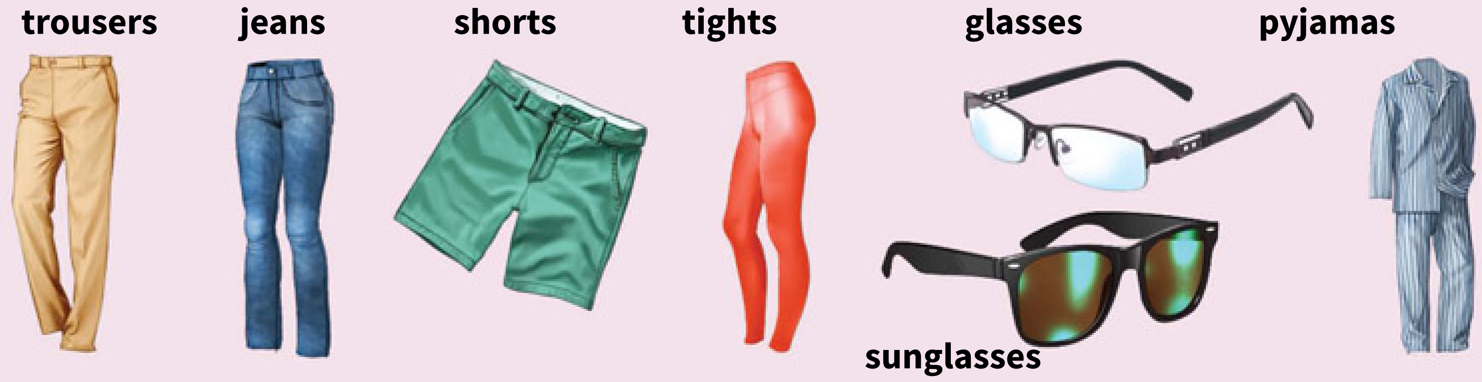
4 Clothes

A Clothes


coat
jacket
scarf
gloves
shoes
trainers
boots
suit
hat
socks
skirt
tie
T-shirt
watch
shirt
dress
ring
belt
sweater / jumper

B Plural words

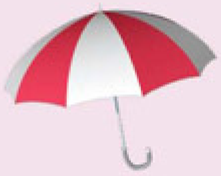
These words are always plural in English. They need a plural verb.

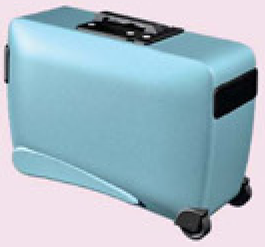

trousers
jeans
shorts
tights
glasses
pyjamas
sunglasses

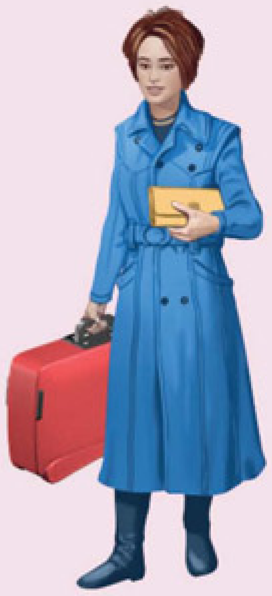
My suit **is** new but these trousers **are** old. Her jeans / shorts / tights **are** blue.
Note: You say: **a pair of** trousers / shorts / glasses, etc.

C Verbs

You **wear** clothes but you **carry** things.
You **wear** glasses.
Naomi **is wearing** a long blue coat.
She's **carrying** a suitcase and a **handbag**.
You can also say: Naomi **has** (**got**) a blue coat **on**.
You **carry** a **bag** and an **umbrella**.







In the morning you **get dressed** or **put** your clothes **on**. At night you **get undressed** or you **take** your clothes **off**.

Common mistakes

You **put clothes on** but you **take clothes off** [NOT ~~put clothes off~~].

Tip

When you get dressed in the morning, say to yourself *Now I'm putting on my socks. Now I'm putting on my shoes* and so on.

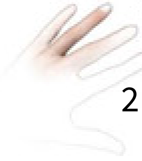
Exercises

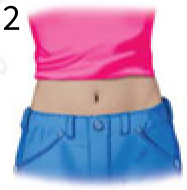
4.1 Complete the sentences.

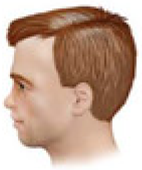
1 Joe has a job interview today, so he's wearing a smart su*it*.........................., a white sh.......................... and a t.......................... .
2 Julia's not working today, so she's wearing a T-.......................... and sh..........................s.
3 Lucy is going to play tennis. She's wearing white s..........................s and tr..........................s.
4 Gianni is going to a business meeting. He's..........................ing a b.......................... with his papers and laptop.
5 My trousers are too big. I have to wear a b.......................... .
6 It's cold today. I'll wear my j ...., and I'll take my c .... too.

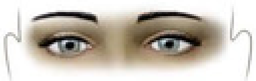
4.2 Match the item of clothing with the part of the body.

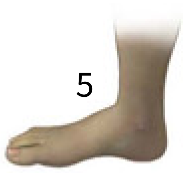
scarf	belt	shoe	hat	glove	glasses	tights	ring

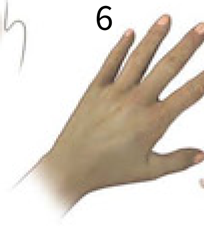
1


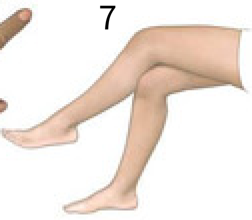
2


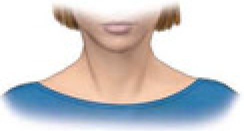
3


4


5


6


7


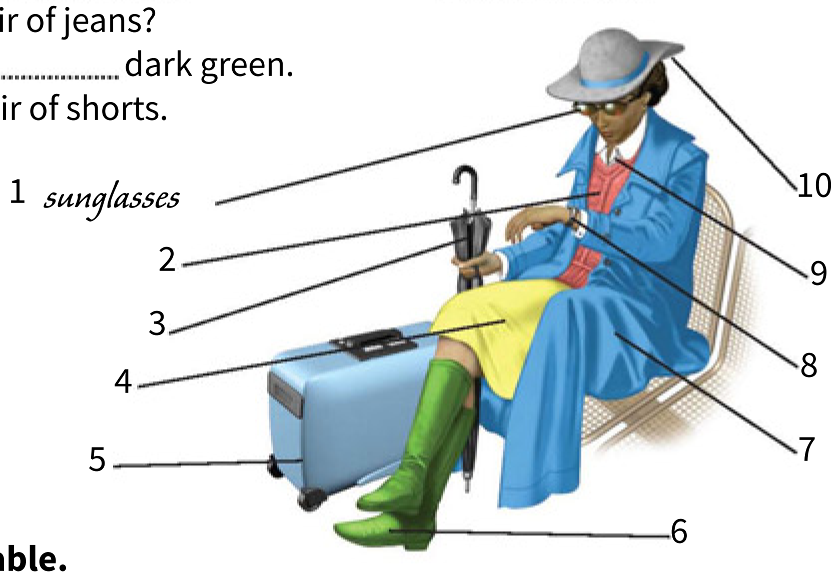
8


4.3 Complete the sentences with one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.

be	wear	carry	have

1 Tim's jeans *are*.......................... blue and his T-shirt.......................... red.
2 Julia.......................... jeans and a T-shirt today.
3 Meena.......................... got a red coat on and she .... some flowers.
4 Sarah's dress.......................... old but her shoes .... new.
5 Last year Harry's trousers.......................... white. Now they .... grey.
6 .... this a new pair of jeans?
7 My favourite pyjamas.......................... dark green.
8 Kim.......................... a new pair of shorts.

4.4 Label the picture.



4.5 Complete the verbs in the table.

morning	night
get *dressed*..........................	get ....
or .... your clothes on	or .... your clothes off

4.6 What are you wearing today? Use a dictionary to help you.

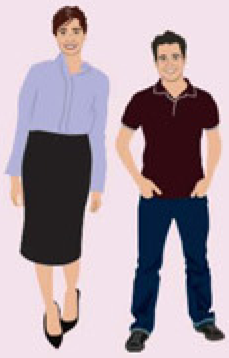
I'm wearing a white T-shirt and a blue jumper. I've got a pair of black trousers on. I'm wearing blue socks and white trainers. I've also got a watch and a pair of glasses on.

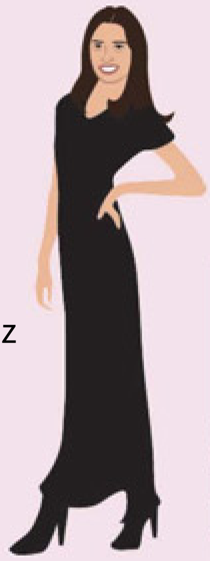
5 Describing people

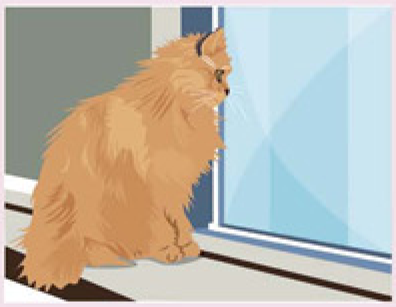
A Height /haɪt/ and weight /weɪt/

Bettina Schwenke is a very **tall** woman.
Tom Jakes is quite **short**.
If you aren't tall or short, you are of **medium height**.

Agata Sanchez is really **slim**.
I was very **thin** when I was in hospital.
[slim is more polite than thin]



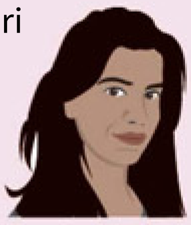


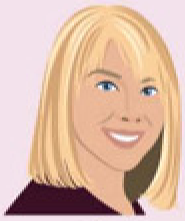


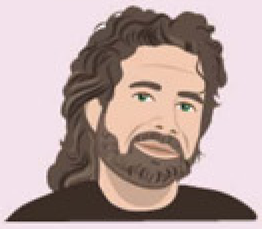
The doctor said I am **overweight**. [weigh too much]
Their cat is very **fat**. It needs to go on a diet.

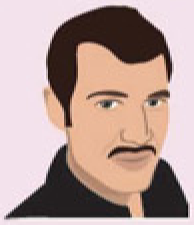
B Face and head

Suri has **dark skin** and **dark hair**. She has **brown** eyes.
Polly has **blonde** (or **fair**) **hair** and **fair skin**. She has **blue** eyes.
Ben has a **beard** and **long hair**. He has **green** eyes.
Luca has a **moustache** /mʊ'stɑːʃ/ and **short hair**.
You can also use **has got**, for example, Suri **has got dark hair** and **dark skin**.
My mother is a very **beautiful** woman. [very pretty]
My dad's a very **good-looking** man.









Common mistakes

People are tall [NOT People are ~~high~~].

People have blonde or dark hair [NOT ~~hairs~~].

My sister is **pretty**. (usually girls / women only)
Bob's an **ugly** man. [**ugly** = the opposite of **beautiful** or **good-looking**]
I'm not ugly or beautiful, I'm just **average-looking**!

C Age

My grandmother is 97. She's very **old**. My sister is 14. She's **young**, but would like to be **older**. My father is 56. He's **middle-aged**, but would like to be **younger**!

This hospital is for **elderly** people. (more polite than **old**)

D Expressions

A: **How tall** is Bettina / Tom? B: She's 1.85 metres tall. / He's 1.48 metres tall.
A: **How heavy are you?** / **How much do you weigh?** B: I weigh 62 kilos / 74 kilos, etc.
A: **How old is he?** B: He's 84.
A: **What does** Gemma / your sister **look like?**
B: She's tall and dark. She's very pretty.

Tip

Some of the words on this page are a little negative, so be careful how you use them. It's better not to say to someone: 'You are fat / thin / ugly / old.'

Exercises

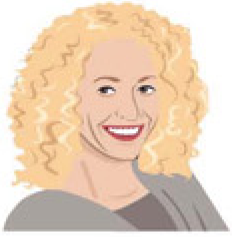
5.1 Complete the sentences.

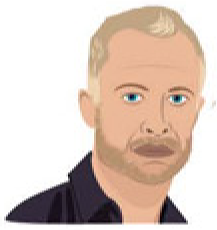
1 He's only 1 metre 52. He's quite *short*..........
2 Very.................... people are often good at basketball.
3 Models are usually.................... .
4 Does she have dark skin? No, it's.................... .
5 She's only seven. She's very.................... .
6 If I eat too much I'll be.................... .
7 My grandmother is in this hospital. It's a hospital for.................... people. (don't use ' old')

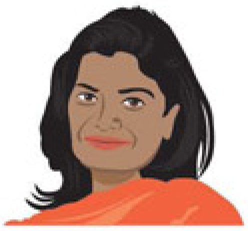
5.2 Complete the questions using the words in brackets ().

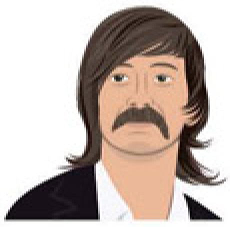
1 *How tall is your brother?*.......... (your brother)
He's about 1 metre 75.
2 Is..............................? (Elena's hair)
No, she's got dark hair.
3 Is..............................? (Mike's hair)
Yes, it is quite long.
4 Are..............................? (your parents)
Not really, they're middle-aged.
5 Is..............................? (his sister)
Yes, she's very pretty.
6 Why..............................? (Sara, so thin)
She's very ill.

5.3 Write sentences about the people in these pictures.


Felicity


Jeff


Anika


Stefan

1 Felicity's *got blonde hair and fair skin.*..........
2 Jeff has..............................
3 Anika's got..............................
4 Stefan's hair is.................... and he ....

5.4 Write questions.

1 your brother, height *How tall is your brother?*..........
2 your teacher, looks ....
3 you, weight ....
4 your mother, age ....
5 your sister, height ....
6 your parents, looks ....

5.5 Now write answers to the questions in 5.4.

1 *He's not very tall. He's 1 metre 52.*

Over to you

Write down the names of three people you know. Then write about their:
- height (tall, short, medium height)
- hair (colour, long, short, beard)
- eyes (colour)
- looks (pretty, average-looking, etc.)

6 Health and illness

A How are you today?

I'm **very well**, thanks.
I'm **fine**, thanks.
I **don't feel very well**. I must go home and rest. (I'll probably be OK tomorrow.)
I **feel ill**. Can you get a **doctor**, please? (Perhaps it's a serious problem.)
That fish was bad. I think I'm going to be **sick**! (I want to vomit.)

B Everyday problems

Have you got **an aspirin**? I'**ve got a headache**. / hede k/

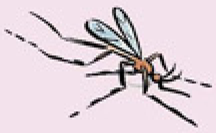
I'**ve got toothache**. /'tuːθeɪk/ I need to go to the **dentist**.

I'm going to bed with a hot drink. I'**ve got a cold**.

C Problems people have for many years / all their lives

I get **hay fever** every summer, from flowers and grass. I **sneeze** all day. /sniːz/
My little brother has **asthma**; sometimes he can't breathe. /'æsmə/

D Illnesses in hot / tropical countries



mosquito

In some countries, mosquitoes can give people **malaria.** /mə'leərɪə/
The drinking water was bad, and many children had **cholera**. /'kɒlərə/

E Serious illnesses

Every year **cancer** kills many people who smoke. /'kænsə/
My father went to **hospital** when he had a **heart attack**.

Common mistakes

My father **had a heart attack**
[NOT ~~got~~ a heart attack].

F Expressions

A Do you **have a healthy diet**?

B Yes, I eat lots of fruit and vegetables.

A Do you **exercise**?

B Yes, I like swimming, jogging and cycling. They're really **good for you**.

A **I feel stressed!**

B Do you? You need to **relax** more and don't panic about work!

Exercises

6.1 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: How are you today?
B: *Very well, thanks.*
A: Good!
2 A: Are you OK?
B: No, ...
A: Would you like to use the bathroom?
B: Yes, thank you.
3 A: I ....
B: I'll get a doctor.
A: Oh, thank you.
4 A: ....
B: Here's the dentist's phone number.
A: Thanks.
5 A: Your nose is red. Have you got ....?
B: Yes.
A: Have a hot drink and go to bed early.

6.2 Match the illnesses in the table with a possible treatment.

go to the dentist ~~take an aspirin~~ go to hospital go to bed with a hot drink

illness	treatment
a headache	*take an aspirin*
toothache	
a heart attack	
a cold	

6.3 What illnesses are connected with …

1 a mosquito bite? *malaria*
2 bad drinking water?
3 pollution, traffic fumes, etc.?
4 grass, flowers, sunshine, etc.?
5 smoking, unhealthy diet, no exercise?

6.4 Answer these questions. Use a dictionary to help you.

1 Do you have a healthy diet?
2 What exercise do you do?
3 Do you often feel stressed?
4 Have you ever been in hospital?
5 Do you get hay fever in summer?

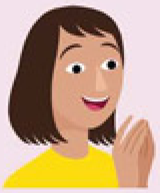
7 Feelings

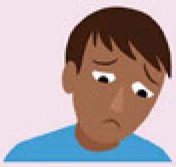
A Love, like and hate

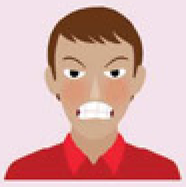
++	+	–	– –
love	like	don't like	hate

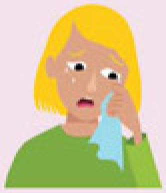
I **love** my family and my best friend.
I **like** my job.
I **don't like** horror films.
I **hate** spiders.

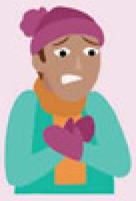
B Happy, sad and tired

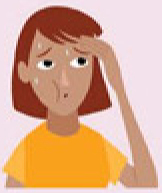

happy

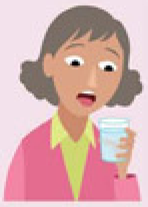

sad

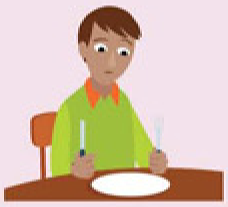

angry

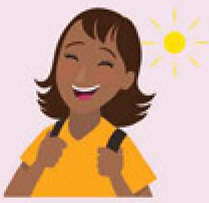

upset

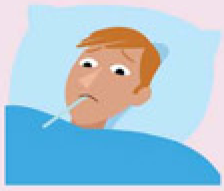

cold

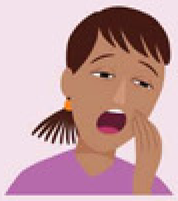

hot

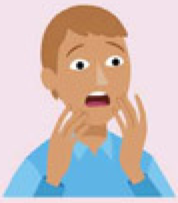

thirsty


hungry


well


ill


tired


surprised

Common mistakes

I am very **happy about** your news [NOT I am very ~~happy for~~ your news]. BUT You did very well in your exam – I'm very **happy for** you.

C Prefer, hope and want

I prefer coffee **to** tea. (= I **like** coffee **more than** I like tea.)
I **hope to do** well in my exam.
I **hope** (**that**) my friend does well in his exam.
I **want** a new car. [I would like]
I **want to buy** a new car.
Note: I **want my mother to buy** a new car.

Common mistakes

I **want you to help me** [NOT I want ~~that you help~~ me].

D Expressions

A **Do you like** football?

B Yes, **I really like** football / it.
No, **I don't like** football / it very much.

A How's your grandfather?

B He's **very well**, thanks.

A And **how about** your grandmother?

B She's **a bit / a little tired**.

Common mistakes

[NOT I ~~very like football / it~~. or
I ~~like very much football / it~~.]

Exercises

7.1 Do you love, like, not like or hate these things? Write sentences.

1 chocolate *I love chocolate.*
2 cowboy films
3 flying
4 tea
5 football
6 cats
7 cars
8 jazz music

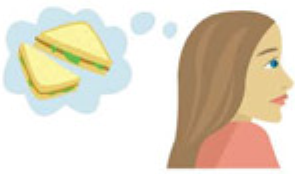
7.2 Which do you prefer? Write answers.

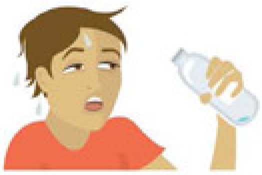
1 tea or coffee? *I prefer coffee to tea.*
2 dogs or cats?
3 sunbathing or sightseeing?
4 cars or bikes?
5 strawberry or chocolate ice cream?
6 watching sport or doing sport?

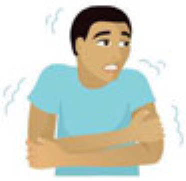
7.3 Answer these questions using *want* or *hope*.

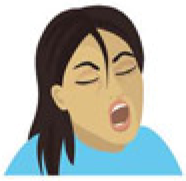
1 You're thirsty. What do you want? *I want glass of water.*
2 The lesson feels very long. What do you hope?
3 You're hungry. What do you want?
4 Your friend feels ill. What do you hope?
5 You're tired. What do you want to do?
6 You're upset. What do you want to do?
7 It's very cold weather. What do you hope?
8 Your friend feels sad. What do you want?

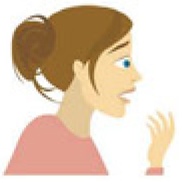
7.4 Look at the pictures. How do the people feel? Use words from B opposite.

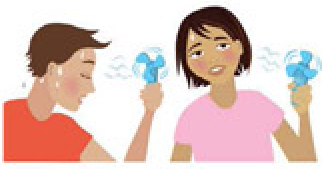
1

Jessica *is hungry.*

2

Nicholas ....

3

Max ....

4

Sunita ....

5

Fiona ....

6

The children ....

7.5 Correct the mistakes.

1 I very like basketball. *I like basketball very much.*
2 I am happy for my sister's good news.
3 The teacher wants that we learn these new words.
4 I like really spiders.
5 My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy about him.
6 My parents want that I go to university.
7 I feel very well. How for you?
8 Priya is bit tired this morning.

Over to you

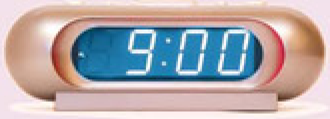
When did you last feel …

1 surprised 2 hungry 3 tired 4 angry

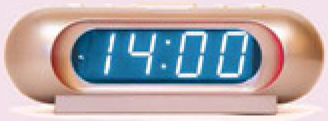
I felt surprised yesterday when I saw the news.

8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes

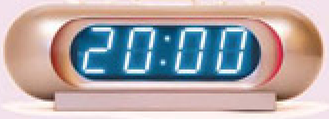
A Every day



good morning



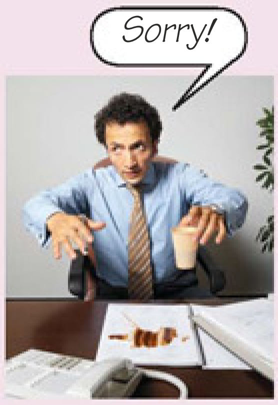
good afternoon



good evening

How are you?
Fine, thanks. And you?
Not too bad, thanks.

When we leave someone we usually say **Goodbye** and also perhaps **See you soon!** See you soon is quite informal.
When someone goes to bed, we usually say **Goodnight**. We sometimes also say **Sleep well**.
Don't say **Goodnight** when you arrive somewhere, only when you leave.
If you ask for something you usually say **Please**.
If someone does something nice for you, you say **Thank you** or **Cheers** (informal).



B Special days

When:	you say:
it's someone's birthday	**Happy Birthday!**
it's Christmas	**Happy / Merry Christmas!** /ˈkrɪsməs/
it's New Year's Day	**Happy New Year!**
someone is doing something difficult, e.g. taking an exam or having an interview for a job	**Good luck!**
someone has done something special, e.g. done well in an exam or had a baby	**Congratulations! / Well done!**

Common mistakes

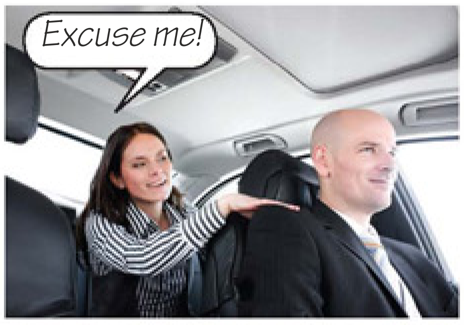
When it's someone's birthday we say: **Happy Birthday** [NOT ~~Congratulations~~].

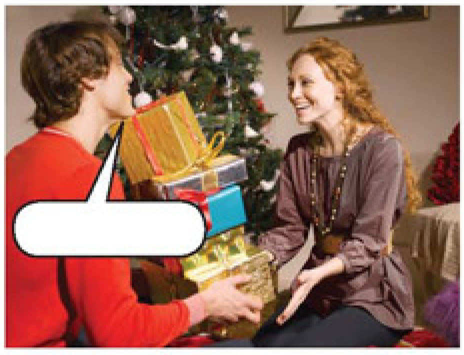
Exercises

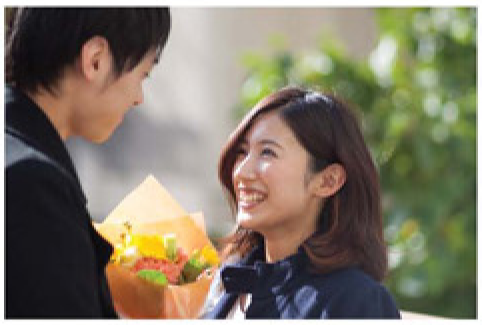
8.1 Choose one of the phrases from the opposite page to fit the dialogues.

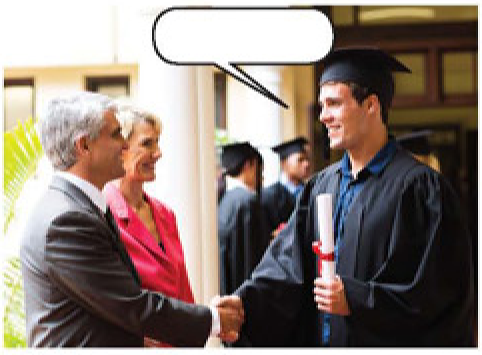
1 A: (*sneezes*) Atishoo!
B: *Bless you!*
2 A: I'm taking my driving test today.
B: ....
3 A: I passed my driving test!
B: ....
4 A: Goodbye.
B: ....
5 A: It's my birthday today.
B: ....
6 A: How are you?
B: ....
7 A: Hello!
B: ....
8 A: Here's your tea.
B: ....

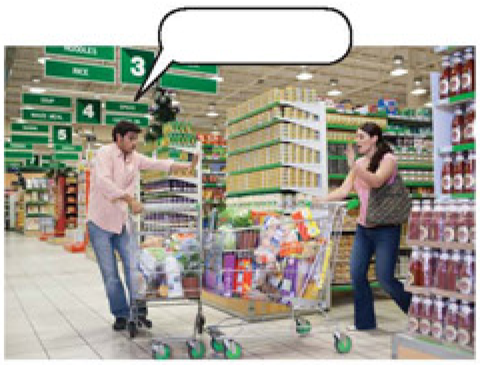
8.2 What is the person saying in the pictures?

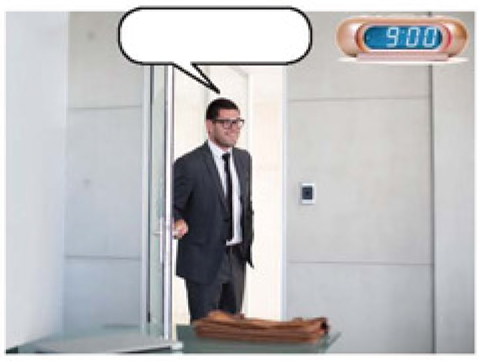
1


2


3


4


5


6


8.3 What do you say? Choose a phrase from the opposite page.

1 You want to go through a doorway. There are some people blocking it. *Excuse me!*
2 A friend buys you a drink.
3 A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
4 You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 am.
5 You answer the phone at work. It is 3 pm.
6 It is 2 am on January 1st. You meet a friend in the street.
7 You are on a very crowded bus and you stand on someone's foot.
8 It is 24th December. You meet a friend on the bus.

8.4 You meet Ann, an English friend. Reply to her.

ANN: Good evening.
YOU: *Hello.*
ANN: How are you?
YOU: ....
ANN: It's my birthday today.
YOU: ....
ANN: Would you like a drink?
YOU: ....
ANN: Here you are.
YOU: ....

8.5 Write a conversation between you and a friend. He / She has passed an exam.

9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions

A Words

word	example	meaning
actually	People say bad things about her, but she's **actually** very nice.	in reality
really	The book is **really** good.	very
else	Do you want to buy anything **else**? Or go somewhere **else**?	in addition or different
around	I'll meet you at **around** 6 o'clock.	about or approximately
anyway	I'll drive you home. I'm going that way **anyway**.[1] **Anyway**, as I said, I woke up very late today.[2]	[1] to give a reason for doing something [2] to return to an earlier subject

Common mistakes

Actually is a false friend in some languages - in English it means 'in reality' NOT 'now'.

B Expressions

A: **Why don't** we go to the cinema this evening? (used to make a suggestion)
B: Good idea. **Let's** go and see a film and then have a meal. (used to make a suggestion)
A: OK! Which film do you want to see?
B: **I don't mind**. [It's all the same to me.] **It's up to you**. [You can decide.]
A: **How about** / **What about** the new Angelina Jolie film? (used to make a suggestion)

Common mistakes

Why don't we go … [NOT ~~Why don't we going~~] *or* **Let's go …** [NOT ~~Let's going~~].
How about going … [NOT ~~How about go~~] *or* **What about going …** [NOT ~~What about go~~].

A: I was late for work today.
B: **Oh dear!** Was your boss angry? (used when you are surprised or disappointed)

A: I forgot to bring your book!
B: Oh, **it doesn't matter**. I don't need it. [it's not important]

A: I'm sorry, but I can't come to your party.
B: **What a pity**! (used when you are disappointed)

A: I passed my exam.
B: **Well done**!

A: **Hurry up**! The taxi's here. [be quick]

A: **Look out**! / **Be careful**! There's a car coming.

A: We need to buy Marta's birthday present.
B: **Absolutely**! What about getting her a scarf? (used when you agree strongly)
A: **I agree**. Let's go shopping this afternoon.

Common mistakes

I agree *or* **I don't agree** [NOT ~~I am agree~~ *or* ~~I'm not agree~~].

Exercises

9.1 Choose a word from A opposite to complete the sentences.

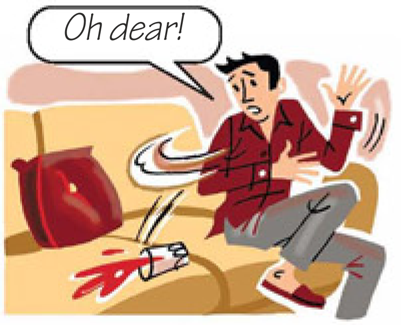
1 It's boring here. Let's go somewhere *else*
2 There were .... 20 people at the lecture.
3 It's a .... lovely photo!
4 Have you had enough to eat? Would you like anything .... ?
5 He said he was a doctor but he's .... still a medical student.
6 The journey takes .... two hours.

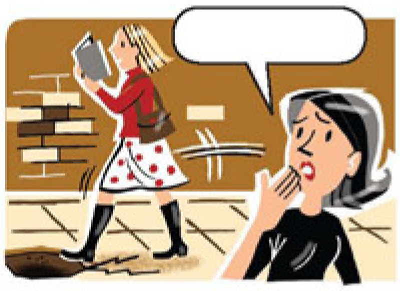
9.2 Choose the correct answer.

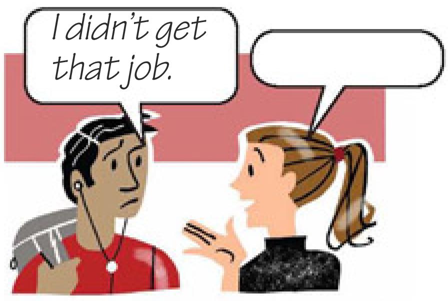
1 I don't like skiing and *about* / [✓ *anyway*] / *else* I'm not free that weekend.
2 I don't *mind / matter / agree* what we do. It's all the same to me.
3 *It's up to you / Let's / I agree* invite Rachel to dinner tonight.
4 *Be careful / What a pity / Oh dear* in London. There's lots of traffic there.
5 I don't have time to go to the cinema and *really / absolutely / anyway* I've seen that film already.

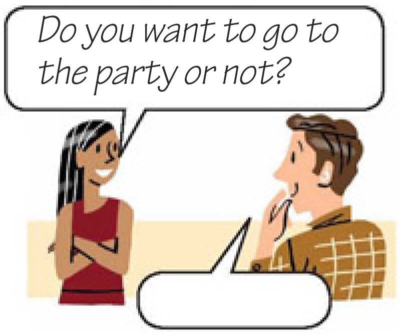
9.3 Choose an expression from the box to fit these situations.

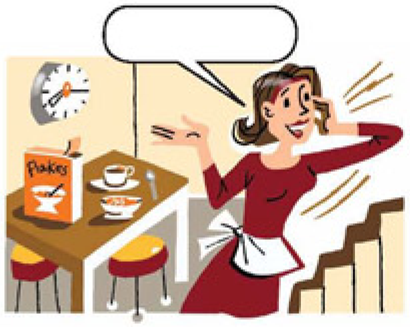
Well done! ~~Oh dear!~~ What a pity!
Hurry up! It's up to you. Look out!

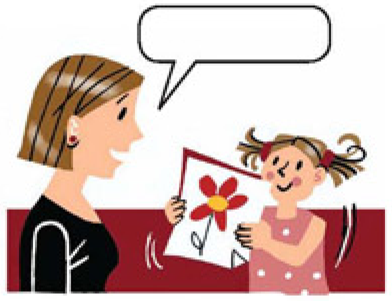
1


2


3

I didn't get that job.

4

Do you want to go to the party or not?

5


6


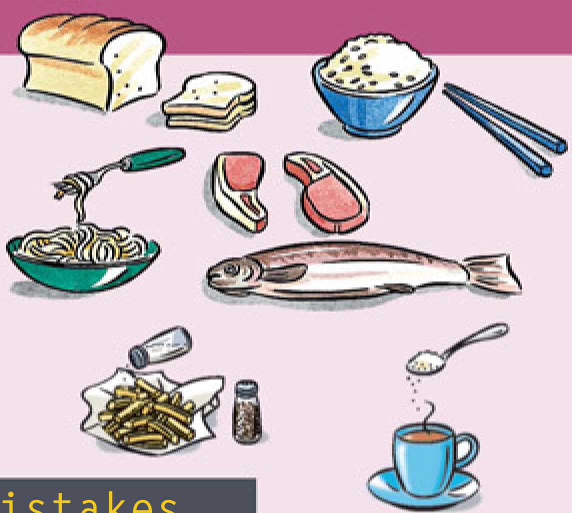
9.4 Correct the eight mistakes in the dialogue.

VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!
LUKE: Well ~~made~~! *done*
How about go out for a meal this evening?
VERA: Great! Let go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?
LUKE: I don't mind it. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.
VERA: Oh, it isn't matter.
LUKE: OK. Why don't we going to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.
VERA: I'm agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?
LUKE: Absolute!

10 Food and drink

A Everyday food

Would you like some **bread**?
I love sushi because I love **rice**.
Pasta is good for you, but don't eat too much!
I always put **salt** on my **chips**, but not **pepper**.
My sister never eats **meat** or **fish**. She's **vegetarian**.
Do you take **sugar** in **tea** or **coffee**?

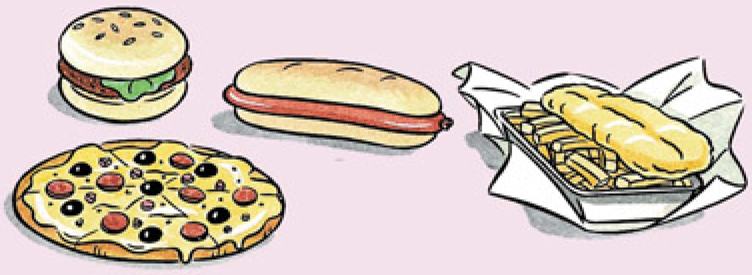


Common mistakes

Can I have **some bread**? [NOT Can I have ~~a~~ bread?]

B Fast food

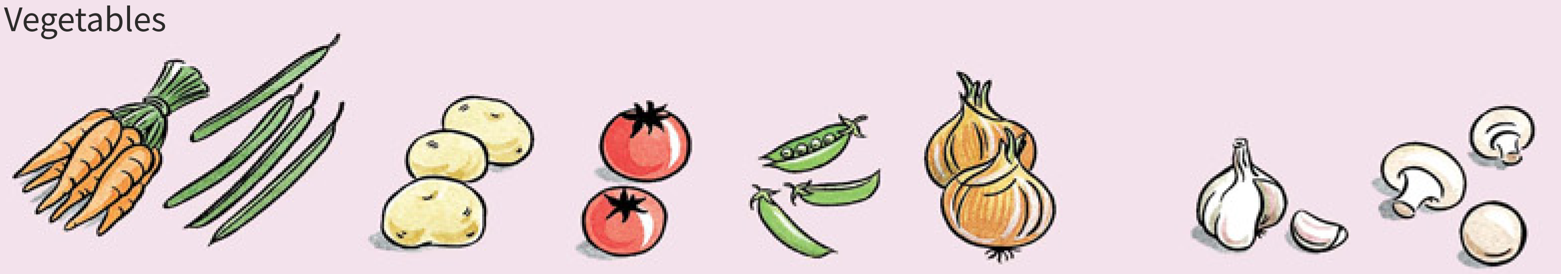
I eat **hamburgers**, **hot dogs** and **pizzas** when I don't have much time.
Fish and chips is popular in Britain, Australia and New Zealand.



C Fruit /fruːt/ and vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/

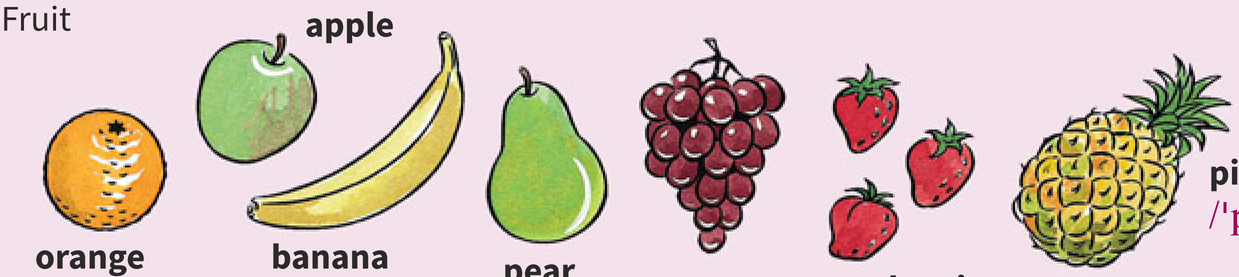
Vegetables are good for you. **Fruit** is also good for you. (singular, uncountable)

Vegetables



carrots **beans** **potatoes** **tomatoes** **peas** **onions** /'ʌnjənz/ **garlic** **mushrooms**

Fruit

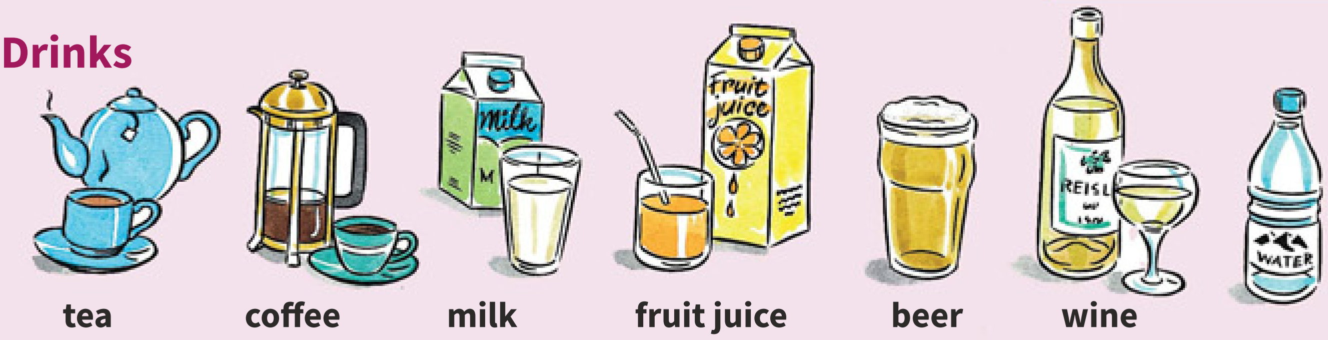


orange /'ɒrɪndʒ/ **apple** **banana** **pear** /peə/ **grapes** **strawberries** /'strɔːbrɪz/ **pineapple** /'paɪnæpl/

Common mistakes

I love **fruit** [NOT I love ~~fruits~~].

D Drinks



tea **coffee** **milk** **fruit juice** **beer** **wine** **mineral water**

Tip

Go to a supermarket. How many different kinds of food or drink have English names on them?

Try to learn some of them.

Exercises

10.1 Complete the sentences. Use words from the opposite page.

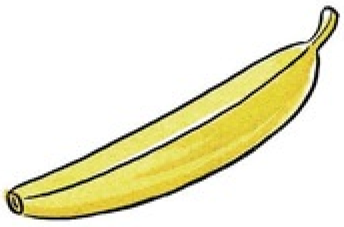
1 Rice ...... is popular in Japan.
2 ...... and ...... are very popular in Italy.
3 Chips are made from ......
4 Many British people eat ......
5 Hamburgers are made from ......
6 A ...... is a sausage inside a piece of bread.

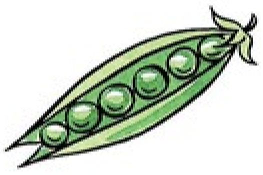
10.2 Put these words into two lists: fruit and vegetables.

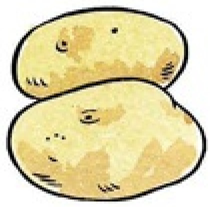
~~beans~~ pineapple grapes onions apple carrot garlic pear mushrooms

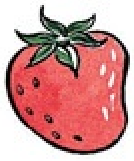
fruit	vegetables
	beans

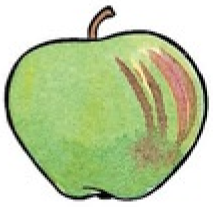
10.3 Write the names of these fruit and vegetables.

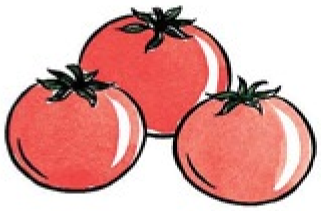

1 banana ......


3 ......


5 ......


2 ......


4 ......


6 ......

10.4 Here are the names of some drinks with the letters mixed up. What are they?

1 eta tea ......
2 rebe ......
3 klim ......
4 fecofe ......
5 rituf eciju ......
6 nilemar retaw ......

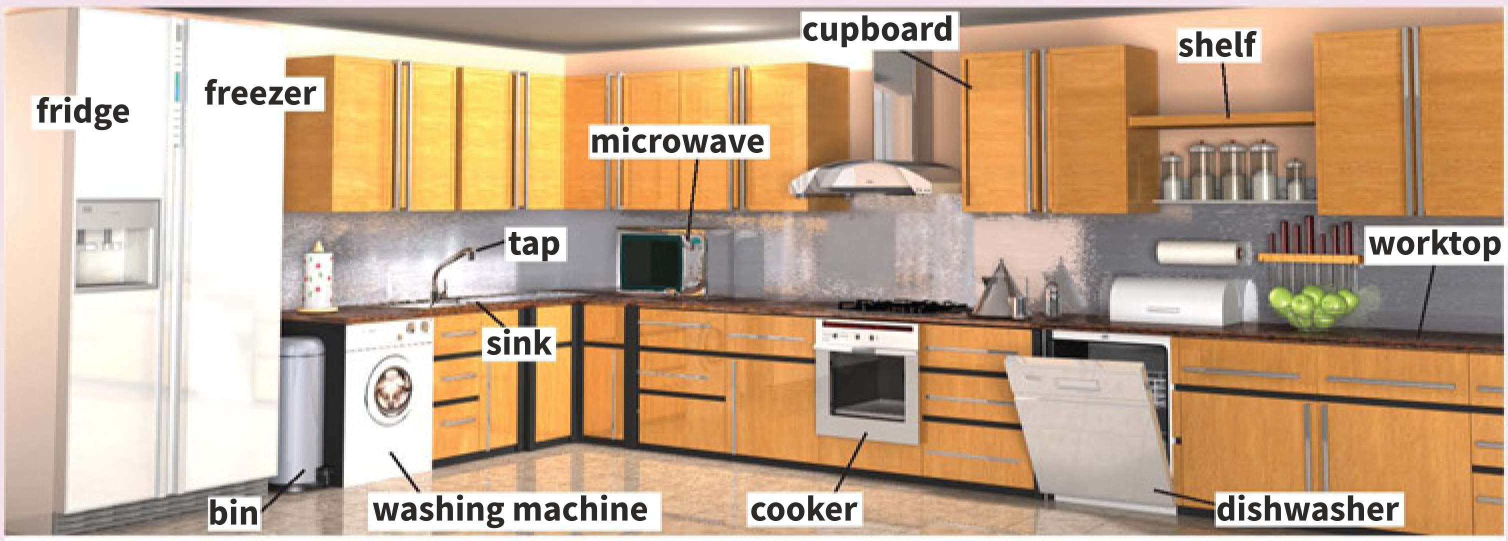
10.5 Choose a, b or c.

1 Vegetarians do not eat a) vegetables [✓ b) meat] c) fast food.
2 Garlic is a kind of a) fruit b) fast food c) vegetable.
3 You put a) salt b) beer c) sugar in coffee.
4 Which is correct a) pinapple b) pineapple c) pieapple?
5 The first sound in onion is the same as the sound in a) fun b) orange c) man.
6 A pear is a) a drink b) a vegetable c) a fruit.

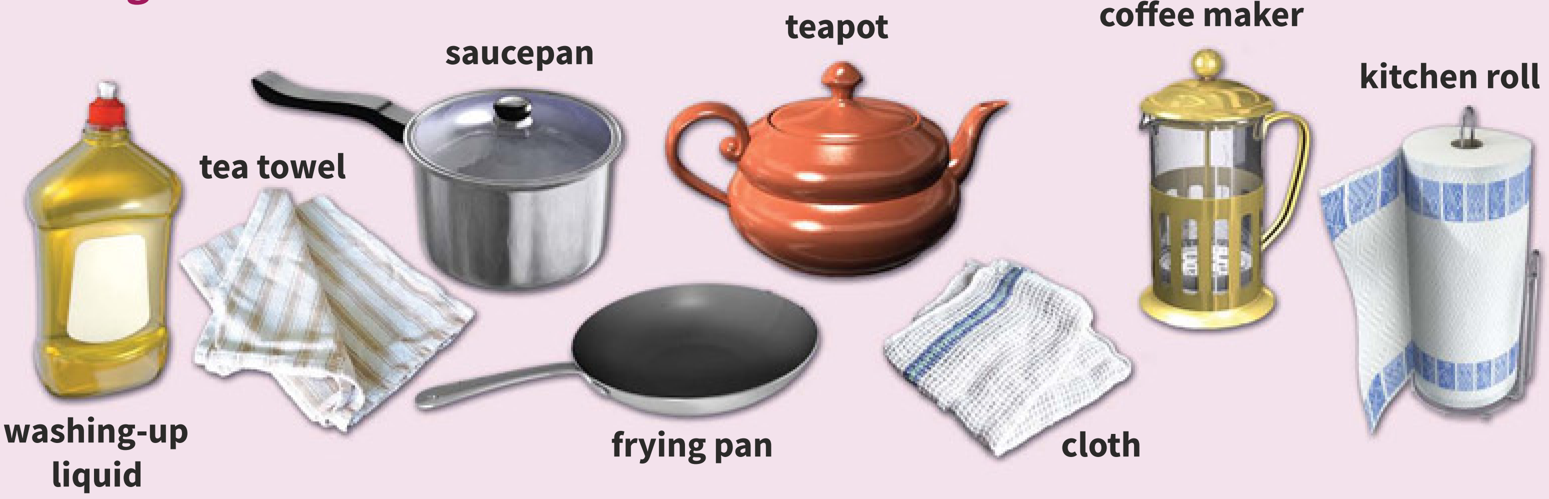
10.6 What are your four favourite foods? And your three favourite drinks? Are they good for you? Use a dictionary to help you.

11 In the kitchen

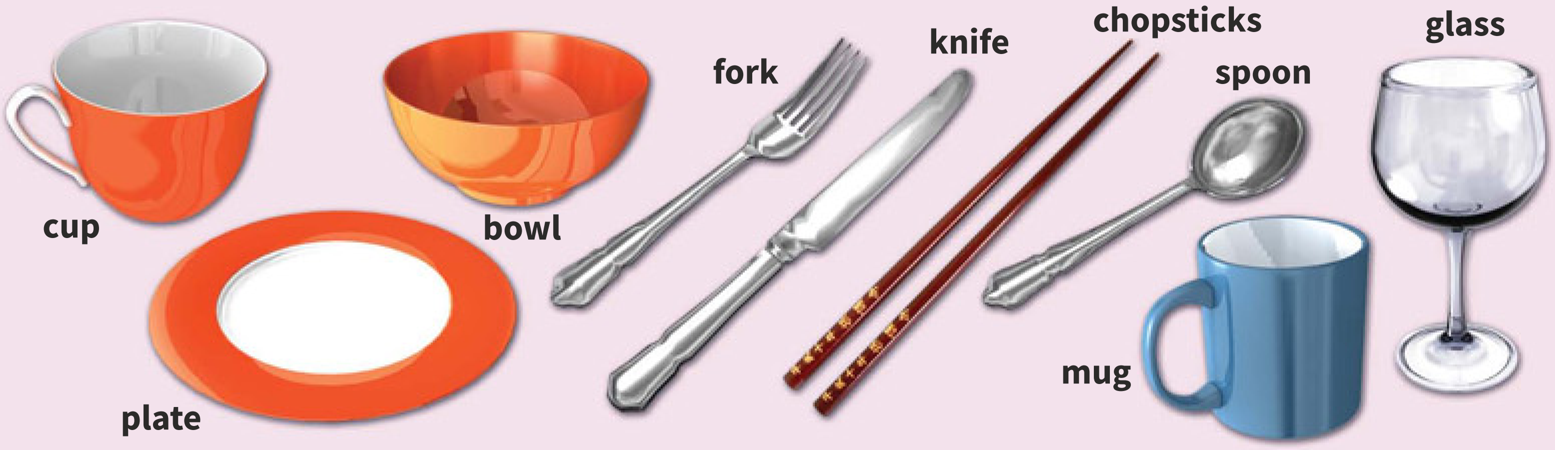
A What's in the kitchen?


cupboard
shelf
fridge
freezer
microwave
tap
worktop
sink
bin
washing machine
cooker
dishwasher

B Things we use in the kitchen


saucepan
teapot
coffee maker
kitchen roll
tea towel
washing-up liquid
frying pan
cloth

C Things we use for eating and drinking


chopsticks
glass
knife
fork
spoon
cup
bowl
mug
plate

D Expressions

A: **Where can I find** a mug / a cloth / some kitchen roll? B: They are in the cupboard.

A: **Can I help with the** washing-up / cooking? B: Yes, please! You can **dry** the plates. / You can **cook** some rice.

A: **Where does** this cup / plate / frying pan **go**? B: Put it in this cupboard, please.

Tip

Stick labels on objects in your kitchen with their English names on them. You will see these every day and this will help you to learn the words.

Exercises

11.1 Tick (✓) yes or no. Write sentences for the wrong answers.

	yes	no	
1 I use a frying pan to drink out of.		✓	*I use a glass / a cup / a mug to drink out of.*
2 You use washing-up liquid to clean plates.			
3 The fridge is cold inside.			
4 The fridge is colder than the freezer.			
5 I turn on the tap to get water.			
6 A tea towel is for making tea.			

11.2 Make questions for these answers. Use words from the opposite page.

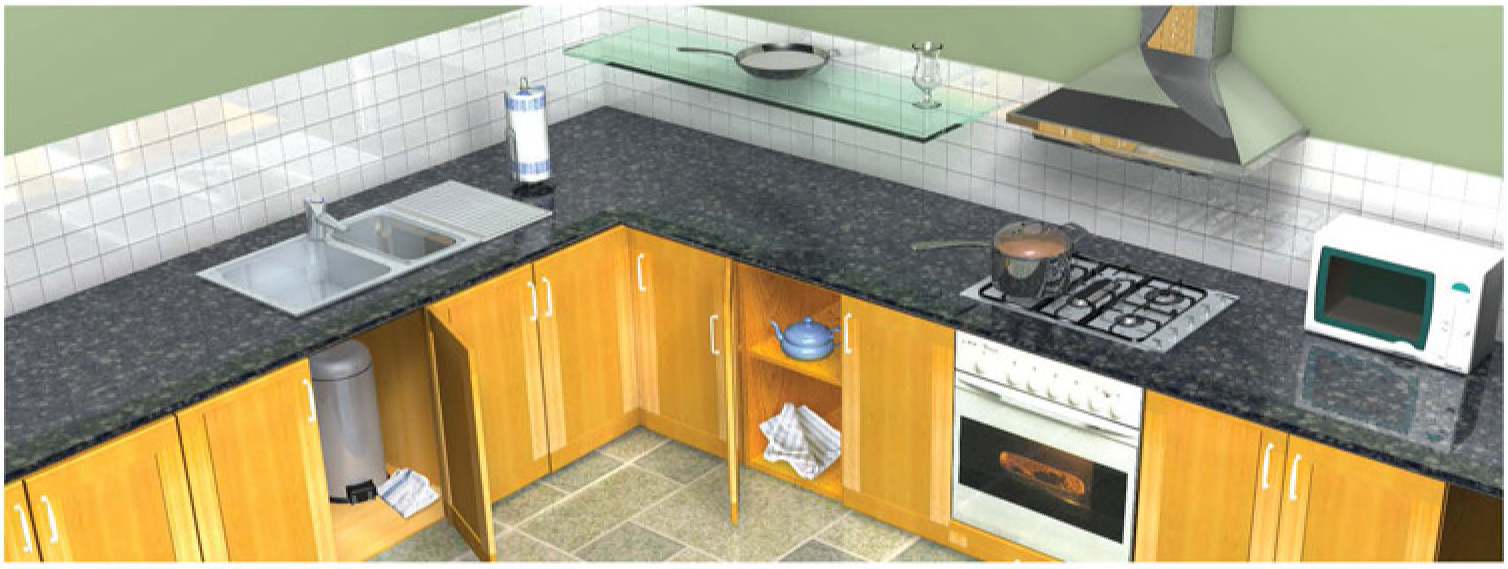
1 *Where's the coffee?*	It's in the cupboard.
2	It's on the cooker.
3	Please put them on the worktop.
4	Thanks. You can wash these plates and I'll dry them.
5	In the fridge on the bottom shelf.

11.3 What do you need?

1 To make coffee I need *a coffee maker, a cup, a spoon.*
2 To make tea I need ....
3 To fry something I need ....
4 To eat my food I need ....
5 To drink some water I need ....
6 To cook dinner in two minutes I need ....
7 To wash plates, knives and forks I need ....
8 To wash my clothes I need ....

11.4 Look at the picture. Answer the questions.

1 What's on the cooker? *a saucepan*
2 What's on the shelf? ....



3 What's in the cupboard under the shelf? ....
4 Where's the microwave? ....
5 What's next to the sink? ....
6 What's under the sink? ....

(See **Unit 53: Places**.)

12 In the bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom

bed

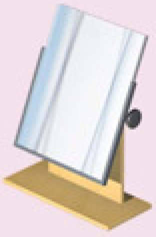
bedside lamp

alarm clock

pyjamas

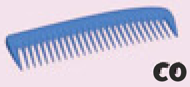
dressing table

chest of drawers


mirror

wardrobe

bedside table


comb

hairbrush

B Bathroom

shower

soap

toothpaste

toothbrush

shelf

basin

towel

shampoo

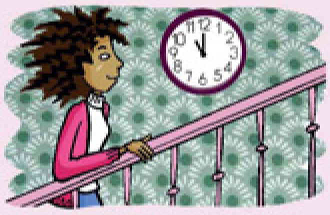
shower gel

razor

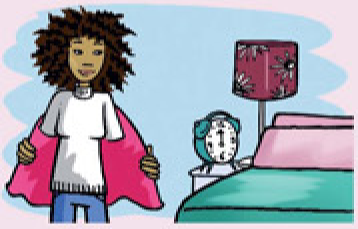
toilet

C Emma's routine

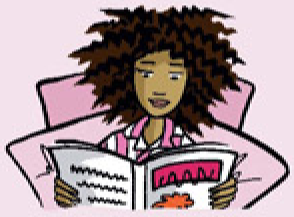
Emma **goes to bed** at 11 o'clock. She **goes upstairs** to her bedroom.



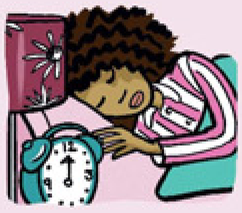
She **gets undressed** and gets into bed.

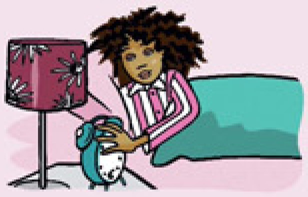


She reads for a bit.

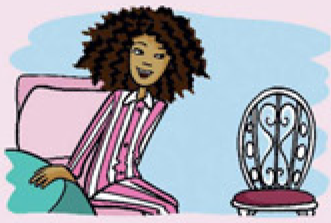


She **turns off** the light and **falls asleep**.



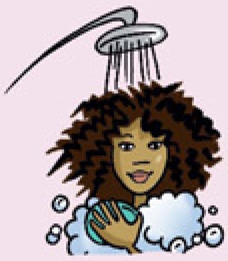


She **wakes up** when her alarm clock rings.

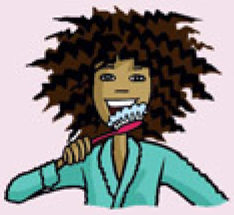


She **gets up**.

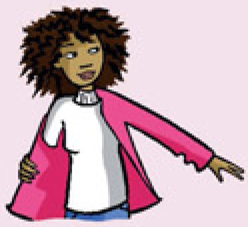
She **has a shower**,



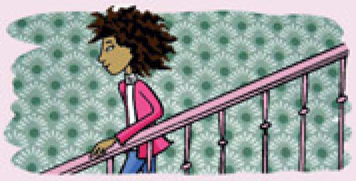
cleans her teeth



and **gets dressed**.



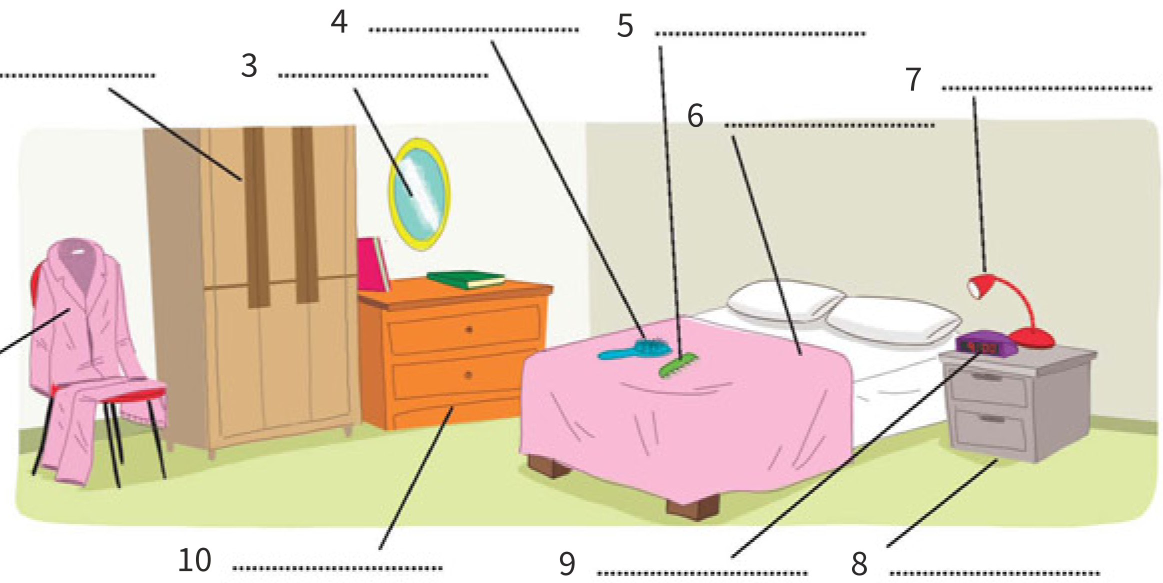
She **goes downstairs** to the kitchen for breakfast.



(See **Unit 47: Everyday things**.)

Exercises

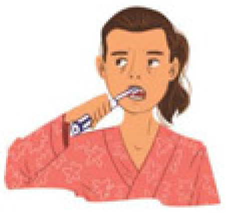
12.1 **Look at the picture. Write the words next to the numbers.**

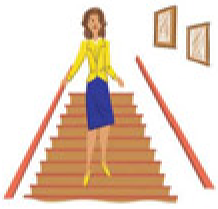


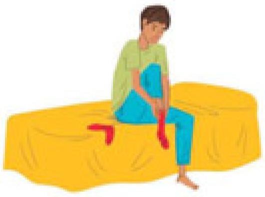
12.2 **Write down five more things that you need to take with you if you go to stay with a friend for one night.**

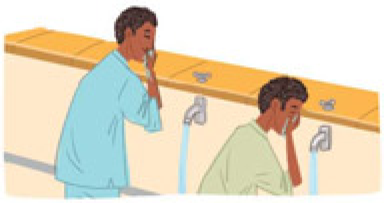
toothbrush ....
....
....
....
....
....

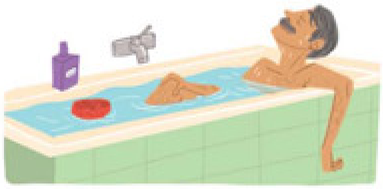
12.3 **Look at the pictures. Describe what the people are doing.**

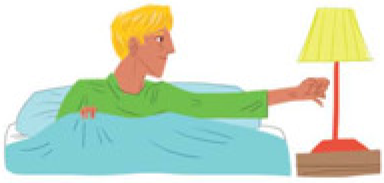

1 Anne *is cleaning her teeth.*


3 Mrs Park ....
....


5 Jaime ....
....


2 Selim and Umit ....
....


4 Mr Park ....
....


6 Lee ....
....

12.4 **What is in your bathroom? Write the things down. Use a dictionary to help you.**

12.5 **Are these sentences true about your bedroom? If not, change them to make them true.**

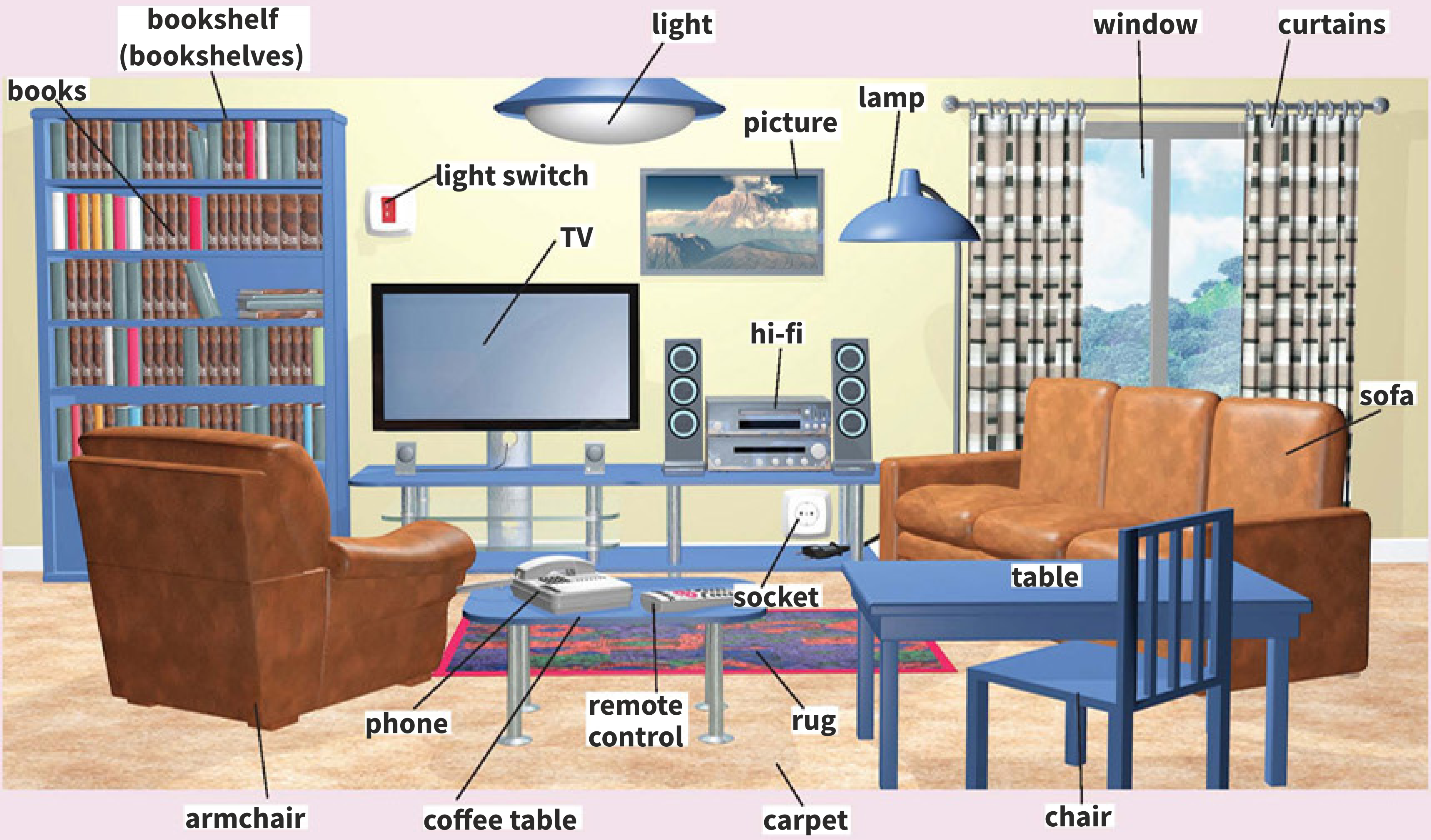
1 ~~My bedroom is upstairs.~~ *My bedroom is not upstairs. I live in a flat.*
2 My bedroom has one large window.
3 In my bedroom there is a big bed.
4 There are two wardrobes, one on the left and one on the right of the room.
5 I have a small bedside table.
6 I've got a lamp and an alarm clock on my bedside table.
7 There is a chest of drawers under the window.
8 I haven't got a dressing table.

12.6 **Complete this paragraph about your night-time and morning routine.**

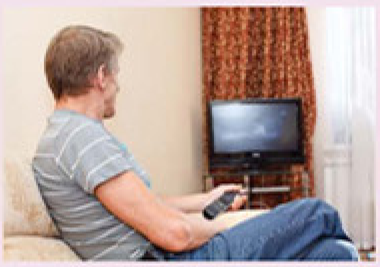
I usually [1] *go* .... to bed at [2] .... I get [3] .... and [4] .... into bed. I usually read [5] .... a bit. I turn [6] .... the light and [7] .... asleep. I [8] .... up when my alarm clock rings. I get [9] .... I have a [10] .... , [11] .... my teeth and [12] .... dressed. I go to the kitchen for breakfast.

13 In the living room

A Things in the living room

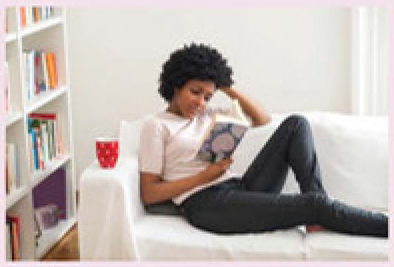

bookshelf (bookshelves)
books
light
light switch
picture
lamp
window
curtains
TV
hi-fi
sofa
socket
table
phone
remote control
rug
armchair
coffee table
carpet
chair

B Useful verbs



Every evening I **watch television**.

Sometimes I **listen to the radio** or **listen to music**.

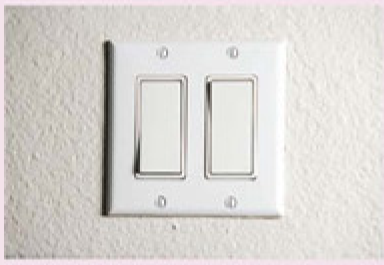


Sometimes I **read a book**.

Sometimes I **just relax**. [rest and do nothing]

C Expressions

It's getting dark. Can you **close the curtains**, please?



OK. And I'll **switch the light** on.

Thanks. Now can you **turn the radio off**? And **pass me the remote control**. I want to **turn on the TV**. There's a good programme on.

Common mistakes

The furniture in my room **is** white [NOT The furniture in my room ~~are~~ white].

Exercises

13.1 Write the names of …

1 somewhere you can put books. *a bookshelf*
2 somewhere two or three people can sit.
3 somewhere you can put down your cup.
4 something you can look at on the wall.
5 something for switching the light on or off.
6 something for listening to music.
7 something under your feet.
8 something for changing channels on the TV.

13.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

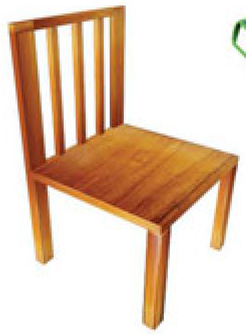
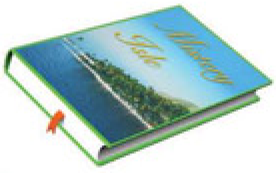
1 switch on the
2 relax in an
3 close the
4 pass the
5 listen to the
6 watch

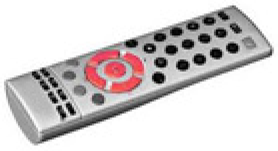
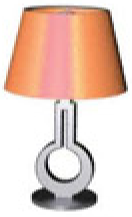
a TV
b lamp
c remote control
d radio
e armchair
f curtains

13.3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

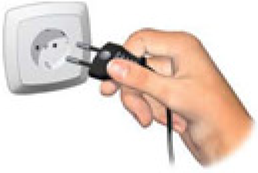
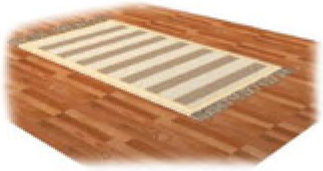
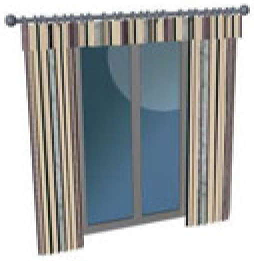
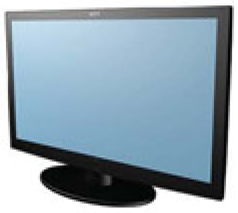
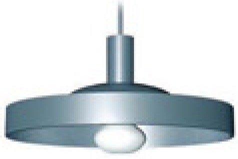
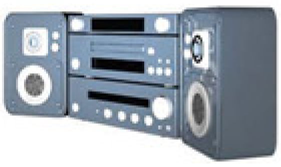
1 This evening let's just relax us at home. *This evening let's just relax at home.*
2 I don't often listen the radio.
3 We need some more bookshelfs in this room.
4 I watched at television all evening yesterday.
5 It's dark now. Please make the curtains.
6 Liam has some very nice furnitures in his house.

13.4 Find 10 more words from this unit in the wordsearch.

F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	B	O	O	K	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

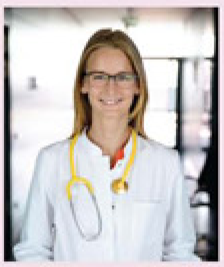







Over to you

Write about your living room at home. You can draw a plan of it first. What furniture is there in the room? What colour are the walls? Are there any pictures on them? What do you do when you are in your living room?

14 Jobs

A What's his/her job?


doctor

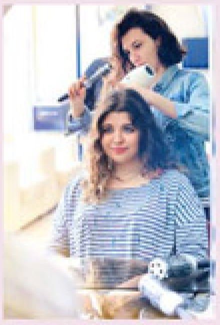
teacher

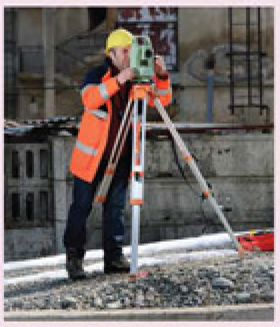
nurse

mechanic

secretary

shop assistant


hairdresser

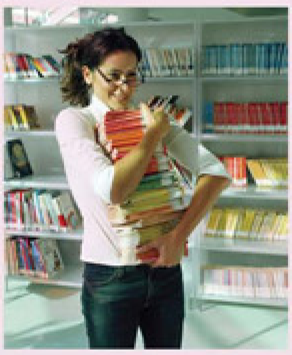

engineer

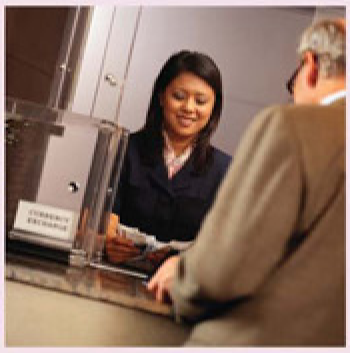
farmer

B Jobs in the town

police officer

traffic warden


librarian


bank clerk /kl k/

C Expressions

Sam What's your **job**?

Ben I'm a **waiter**. I work in a **restaurant**. What **do** you do?

Sam I'm a **taxi driver**.

Ben Is it an interesting **job**?

Sam Yes, I like it. Where do you **work**?

Sophie I work in an **office**. Sometimes it's boring.

My dad works in a **factory** which makes car parts.
I worked in a **shop** at the weekends when I was a student.
I want to work in a **beauty salon** as a **hairdresser**.
I'd like to work in a children's **hospital**.
I'm a writer. I work **at** / **from** home.

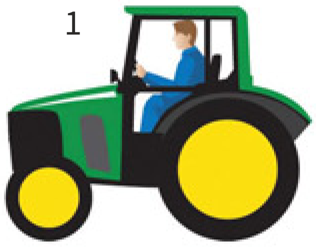
Exercises

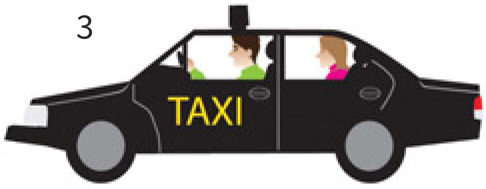
14.1 Where do they work?

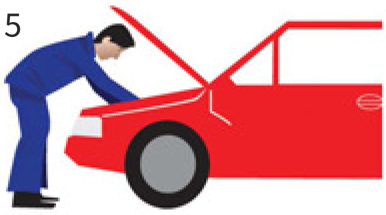
1 A teacher *works in a school / college / university.*
2 A doctor ....
3 A waiter ....
4 A secretary ....
5 A shop assistant ....
6 A hairdresser ....

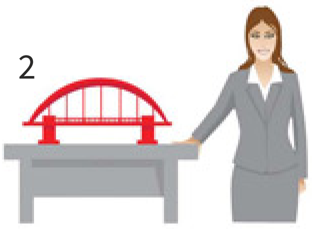
14.2 Match the pictures with the jobs in the box.

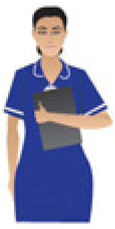
nurse ~~farmer~~ secretary taxi driver engineer mechanic

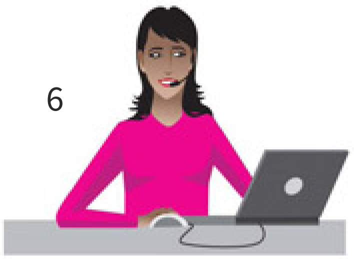
1

farmer

3


5


2


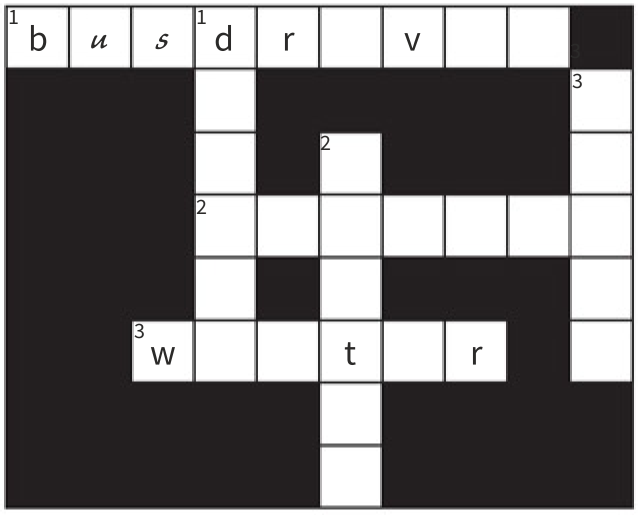
4


6


14.3 Complete the crossword.

Across
1 works on a bus
2 works in a school
3 writes books

Down
1 works in a hospital
2 works in a restaurant
3 works with the doctor



1 b	*u*	*s*	1 d	r		v			■
■	■	■		■	■	■	■	■	3
■	■	■		■	2	■	■	■	
■	■	■	2						
■	■	■		■		■	■	■	
■	■	3 w			t		r	■	
■	■	■	■	■		■	■	■	■
■	■	■	■	■		■	■	■	■

14.4 Complete the sentences.

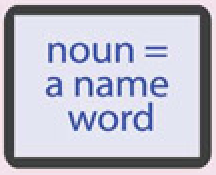
1 He works in a *factory* which makes electrical goods.
2 She's an .... She builds roads and bridges.
3 The traffic .... is checking all the parked cars.
4 The .... told me to return the book at the end of the month.
5 The bank .... changed some money for me.
6 A police .... told me the way to the station.

14.5 Answer the questions for yourself.

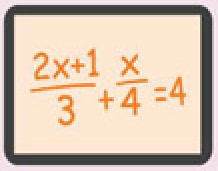
1 What do you do?
2 Where do you work?
3 Is it an interesting job?

15 At school and university

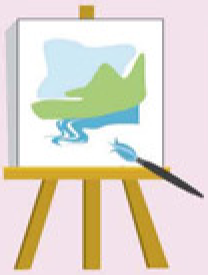
A Subjects



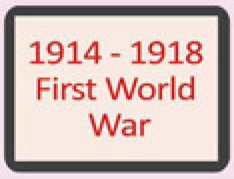
English



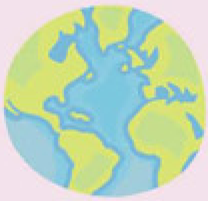
maths



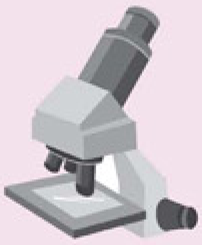
art



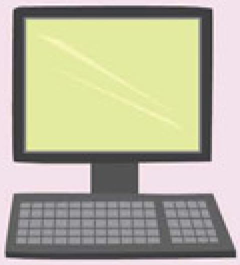
history



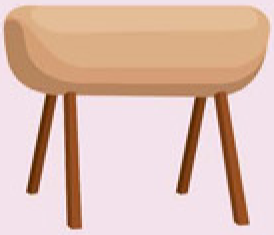
geography



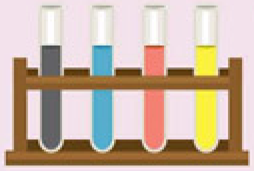
biology



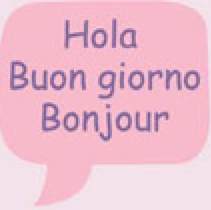
ICT (information communication technology)



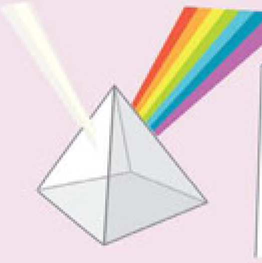
PE (physical education)



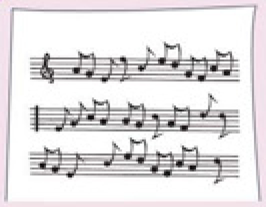
chemistry



modern languages



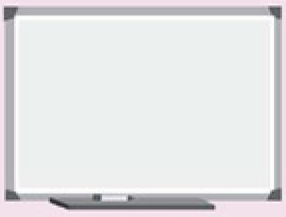
physics



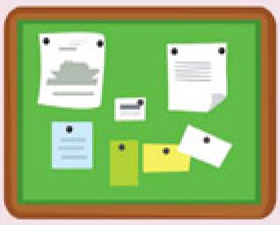
music

B Useful things

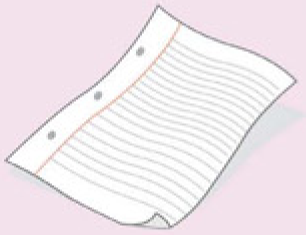
board



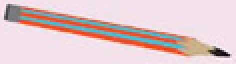
noticeboard



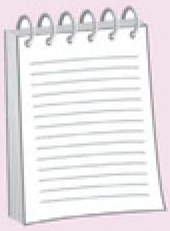
piece of paper



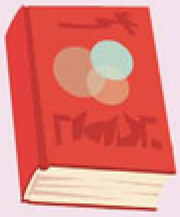
pencil

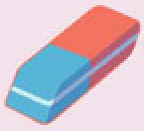


notebook



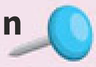
textbook

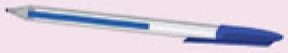




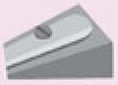
rubber

drawing pin

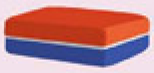




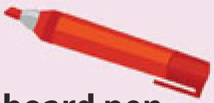
pen



pencil sharpener

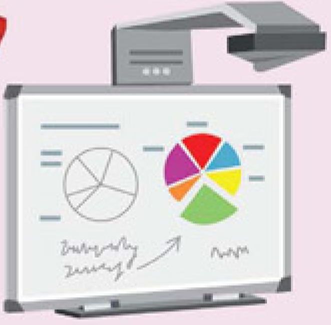


board rubber

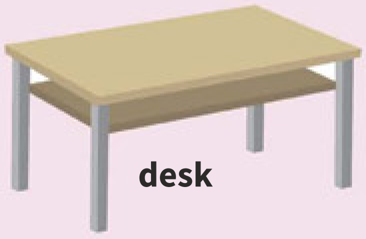


board pen

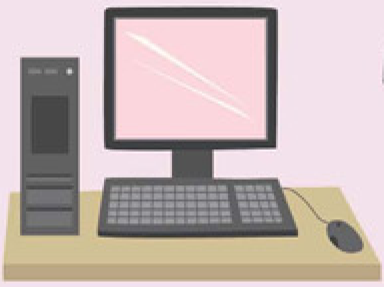
OHP (overhead projector)



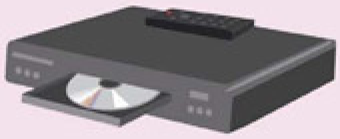
whiteboard



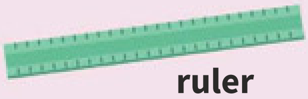
desk



computer



DVD player



ruler

C Expressions

A maths **teacher teaches maths**. Her **students study maths**.
Children **go to school** and students **go to university**.
At school children **learn to read and write**.
Students can **do an** (**English**) **course** in many schools and universities. At the end of a course, you often **take** / **do an exam**. You hope to **pass your exams**. You don't want to **fail your exams**.
If you pass your final exams at university, you **get a degree**.

Common mistakes

After school, students **do homework** [NOT ~~make homework~~ or ~~do homeworks~~]. (See Units 40 and 41 for more expressions with do and make.)

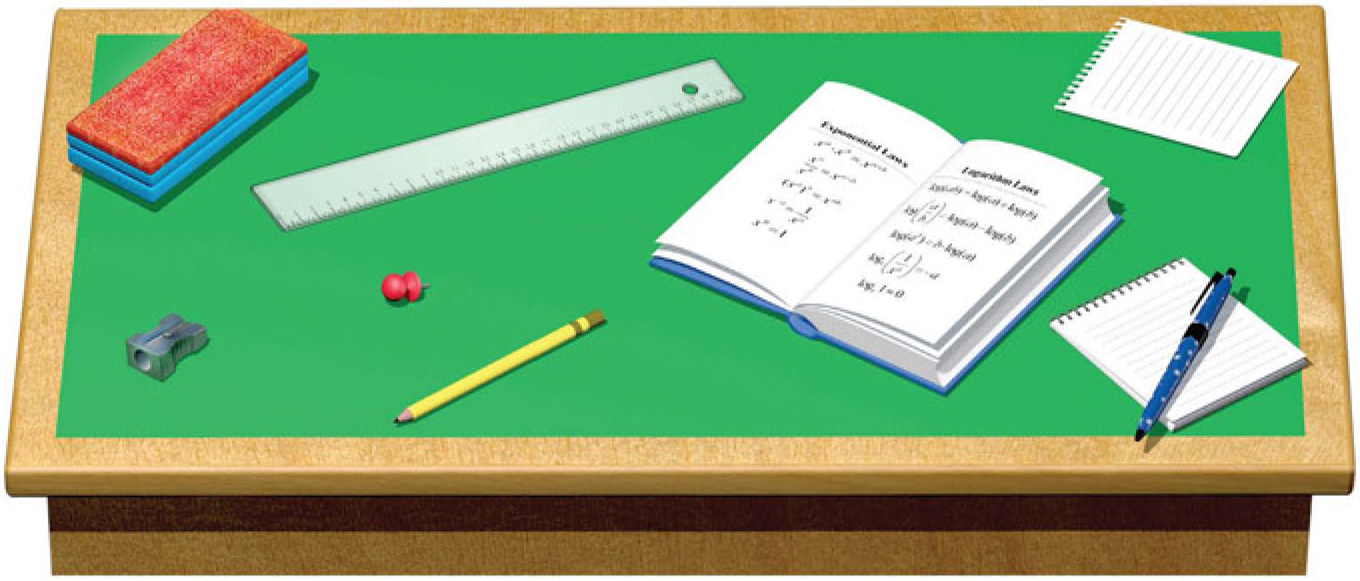
Exercises

15.1 **Match the subject on the left with what you study on the right.**

1 maths
2 physics
3 history
4 geography
5 PE
6 English
7 chemistry
8 biology
9 ICT

a animals and plants
b sport
c $25y + 32x = 51z$
d $E = mc^2$
e H_2O
f the countries of the world
g the 15th century
h computers
i spelling

15.2 **Look at the picture for 30 seconds. Then cover it. How many of the ten objects can you remember? Write them down in English.**



15.3 **Which of the things in B on the opposite page are in the room where you study English? Write them here.**

In the room where I study English I can see ....

....

....

15.4 **Choose a verb from C opposite to fill the gaps below. Put the verb in the correct form.**

Ethan does well at school. He finds it easy to [1] ...learn... and he always [2] .... his homework. He usually [3] .... all his exams. He will [4] .... his final school exams soon. If he [5] .... , he will [6] .... to university next year. If he [7] .... , he will be very sad. Ethan really wants to [8] .... geography at university. He would also like to [9] .... a special geology course. His sister is already at university. Next year she will [10] .... her degree and then she will try to find a job.

15.5 **Which are/were your three favourite subjects? Which subjects (if any) do / did you not like?**

....

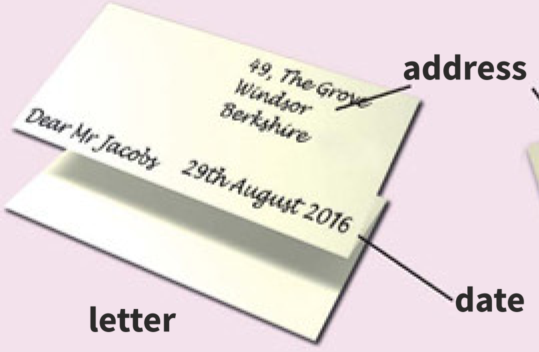
....

Tip

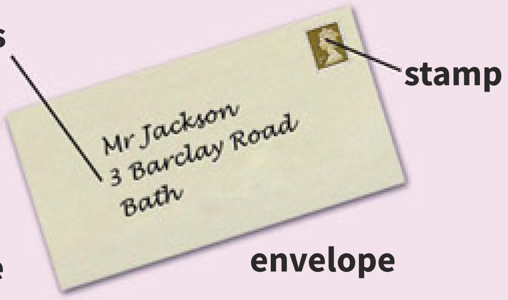
Draw two columns on a piece of paper. In one column write five words from the opposite page which you want to learn. In the second column put a drawing (or a translation or a definition). Cover the first column and look at the second column. Can you remember the English words?

16 Communications

A Letters



letter



envelope

letter box

Don't forget to put a **stamp** on the **envelope**.
Don't forget to **post** the letters.

B Email and Internet

computer

screen

keyboard

mouse

laptop

memory stick

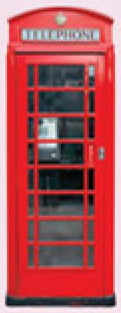
Olivia gets a lot of **emails** from New York.
You have to be careful what information you give people **online**.
What's your **email address**? Moll@cup.com (= Moll **at** C-U-P **dot** com /kɒm/)

C Telephones and mobile devices

mobile device

mobile

telephone



phone box

Juan **makes** a lot of **phone calls**. He phones his girlfriend every day.

I always take my smartphone with me. I never turn it off.
What's your **phone number**? What's your **mobile** number?
066530718 (= oh six six five three oh seven one eight / oh double six five ...)
He's not answering his phone. I'll leave a **voicemail** and I'll **text** him / **send** him **a text** (**message**).

D Expressions

Sue Hello.

Nick Hello. **It's** Nick **here**. Can I **speak to** Ahmed, please?

Sue I'm sorry, he's not here at the moment. Can I **take a message**?

Nick Thanks. Could you just **tell him I called**. I'll **call back** later.

Sue OK. I'll tell him. Goodbye.

Nick Bye.

Tip

Use a search engine to find an example of a letter and an email in English. Write down any useful words or phrases in them.

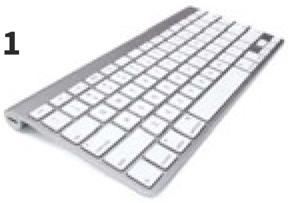
Exercises

16.1 Have you got any of the things on the opposite page? Make a list.

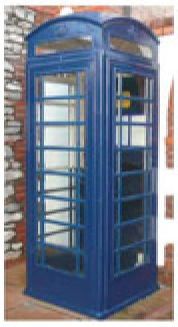
mobile

16.2 What are the names of these things?

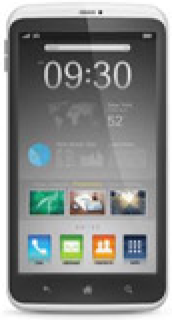
1



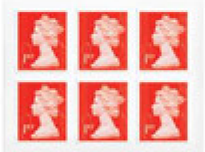
2



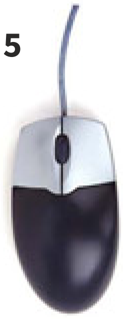
3



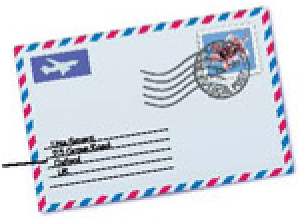
4



5

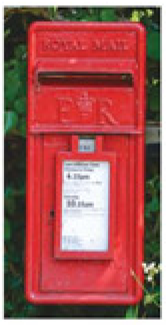


6

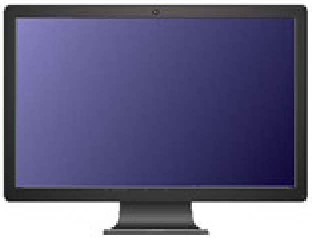


7

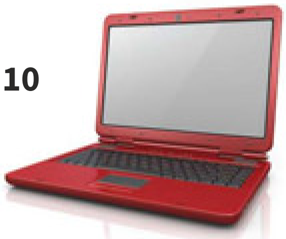
8



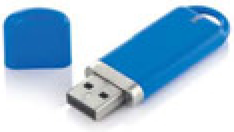
9



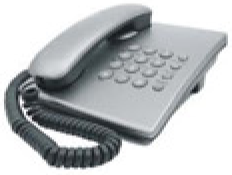
10



11



12



1 *keyboard*..........
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

16.3 Complete this phone conversation.

AMELIA: Hello.
MEENA: Hello. [1] *It's*.................. Meena here. Can I [2] .... to Amal, please?
AMELIA: I'm [3].............................. , he's at work [4] .... the moment. Can I [5] .... a message?
MEENA: It's all right. I'll [6] .... back later.
AMELIA: OK, then. Bye.
MEENA: Bye.

16.4 Write down:

1 two telephone numbers that are important to you.

....

2 two email addresses that are important to you.

....

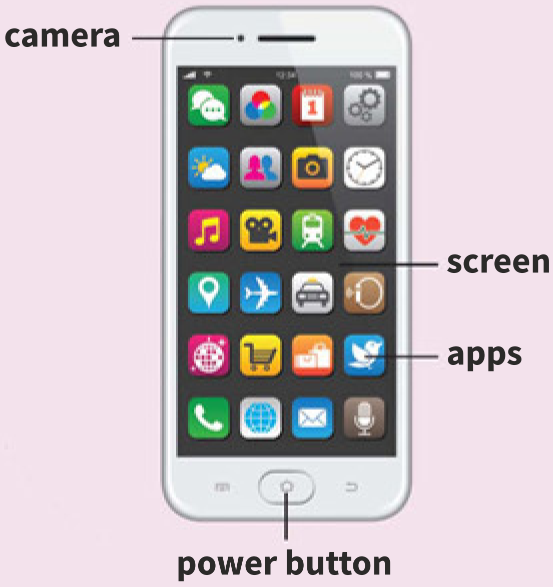
Now read them aloud.

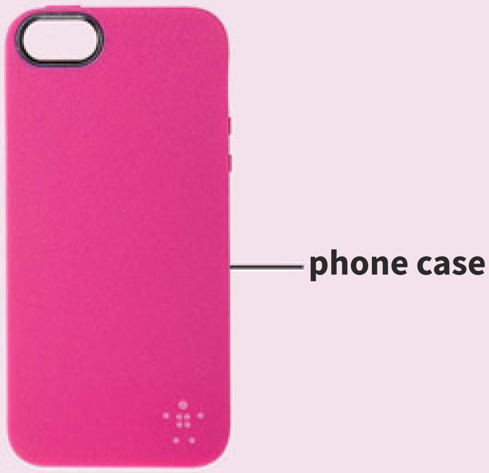
16.5 Answer these questions.

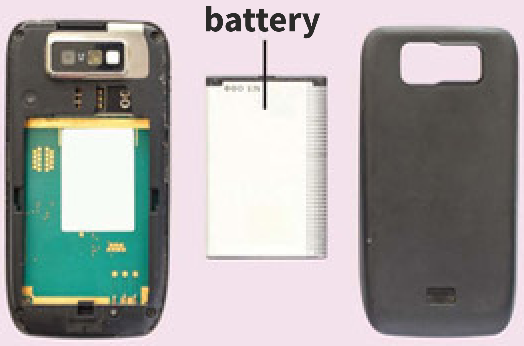
1 Do you prefer to text or phone your friends?
2 Do you send more emails or more text messages?
3 How often do you go online?
4 Do you prefer to use a laptop or a mobile device?
5 Do you often write letters?

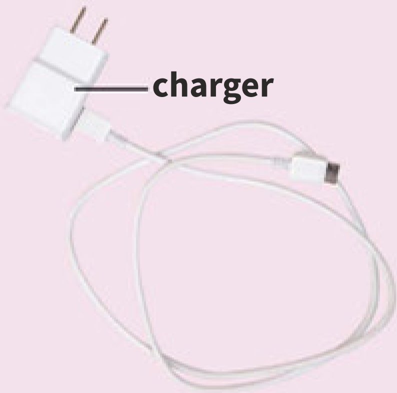
17 Your phone

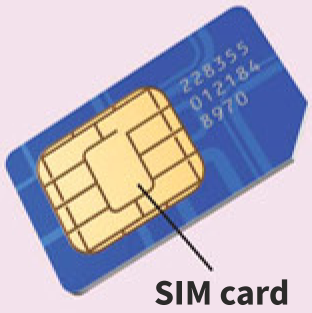
A Parts of a phone











B Using a smartphone

Ramesh **takes** a lot of **selfies** and posts them online.

Lisa didn't answer her phone, so I **left a voicemail**.

Can you **text** me the address of the restaurant? I haven't been there before.

I've just got a **message** from Andy. He wants to know if we're going to the party.

You can **download an app** with a dictionary to help you when you write in English.

While she was on holiday, Kelly **called** her family every day.

selfie

C Expressions

Amy Can you read that message on my phone, please? My hands are wet.

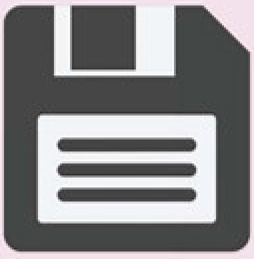
Claire It's **locked**. What's the **PIN**?

Amy You don't need a PIN to **unlock** it. Just **swipe** the screen left to right.

ENTER PIN CODE

PIN

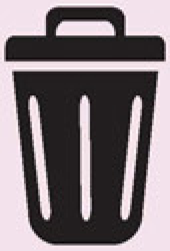
swipe



save

Tim I can't **save** any new photos.

Emily Your phone **memory** is full. You need to **delete** some photos and messages.



delete

Exercises

17.1 Match the things on your phone with what they do.

1 camera
2 SIM card
3 screen
4 phone case
5 power button

a stores the information you need to use your phone
b covers the phone
c starts the phone
d takes photos
e shows pictures and words

17.2 Choose the right words to complete these sentences.

1 Tanya has a new [✓ *app*] / *battery* for texting on the Internet.
2 When your phone's battery is low, you need a *charger* / *camera*.
3 You can use my phone to *voicemail* / *call* Megan.
4 Danny's new phone has a great *screen* / *camera*. It takes amazing photos.
5 I bought a new *battery* / *SIM card* in France, so that it was cheaper to call and use the Internet.
6 I want to buy a new *phone case* / *app*. This one is old and dirty.

17.3 Complete these sentences with words from B.

1 Maria *texted*.................. me last night, but I didn't see her message until this morning.
2 Carlos .... a lot of photos of his new dog and puts them on Facebook.
3 What was the last app that you .... ?
4 Lucy .... her sister. They talked about their holiday at the beach.
5 Victor .... me a voicemail. He asked me to call him back.

17.4 Complete the conversation with words from C.

DEEPA: Can I look at your photos from the concert?
IREENA: Sure. Here's my phone. Let me just put in the PIN to [1] *unlock*.................. it.
DEEPA: That's a great one! Do I [2] .... right to see the next photo?
IREENA: Yes, that's right.
DEEPA: Did you delete the ones from the restaurant?
IREENA: No, I [3].............................. them in a different folder. Here they are.

17.5 Over to you

Answer these questions for yourself.

1 Do you use a PIN to lock your phone?
2 Do you have a phone case? What does it look like?
3 What apps do you use most often?
4 Do you save all the photos you take, or do you delete some of them?
5 Have you taken a selfie recently?
6 Do you prefer to call or text people? Why?

18 Holidays

A Holiday (noun)

We **had a** lovely **holiday** in Egypt in 2014.
I'm not working next week. **I'm on holiday**.
Are you **going on holiday** this summer?

B Types of holidays

We're going on **a package holiday** to Hong Kong. [**flights** and hotel are included]
We're going to have a **winter holiday** this year.
I want to go **camping** this year. [sleep in a tent]
I'm going on a **walking holiday** in the Alps.
A **coach tour** is an easy way to go on holiday. [travelling in a comfortable bus]

C Transport

by plane

by train

by car

by ferry

by coach

D Don't forget to take …

your **passport** (if you are going to another country)
a **visa** [a stamp that you need in your passport to go to some countries]
your **tickets**
some **currency** [money of the country you are going to]
a **camera**
your **luggage** /ˈlʌɡɪdʒ/ (e.g. a **suitcase** or a **rucksack**)

passport

ticket

currency

camera

suitcase

rucksack

E Expressions

A Are you **flying** to France from England?

B No, we're going **by ferry**.

A What are you going to do in Madrid?

B We want to **try the local food** and **enjoy the nightlife** [clubs, etc.].

A **Have a great time!** And **send me a postcard**!

(See **Unit 32: Travelling** and **Unit 49: Moving** for more words about travel.)

Exercises

18.1 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Are you working on Monday?	B: No, I'm ...on........ holiday.
2 A: Are you .... on holiday this year?	B: Yes, I'm going camping.
3 A: Did you have a good .... in Greece?	B: Yes, it was wonderful.
4 A: Are you flying to Italy?	B: No, I'm going .... train.
5 A: I'm going to New York next week.	B: Great! Please .... me a postcard.

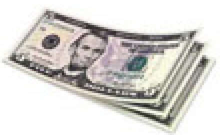
18.2 What type of holiday is each person talking about?

1 It was fun but the tent was very small.	camping........................
2 Everything was included - hotels and flights.	....
3 We were on the coach for seven days. I was very tired.	....
4 We walked about 20 kilometres every day.	....
5 We went to Switzerland in December. There was a lot of snow.	....

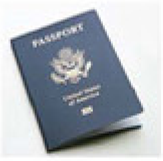
18.3 Look at the different ways of travelling. Put one tick (✓) for sometimes true, two ticks for often true and three ticks for always true.

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry					
car	✓✓✓				
plane					

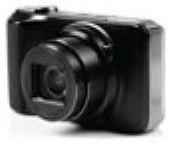
18.4 Write the names of these things you need for a holiday.



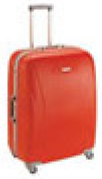
1 currency........................



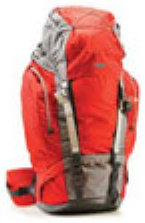
2 ....



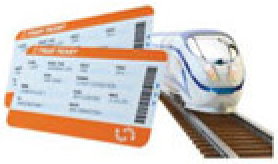
3 ....



4 ....



5 ....

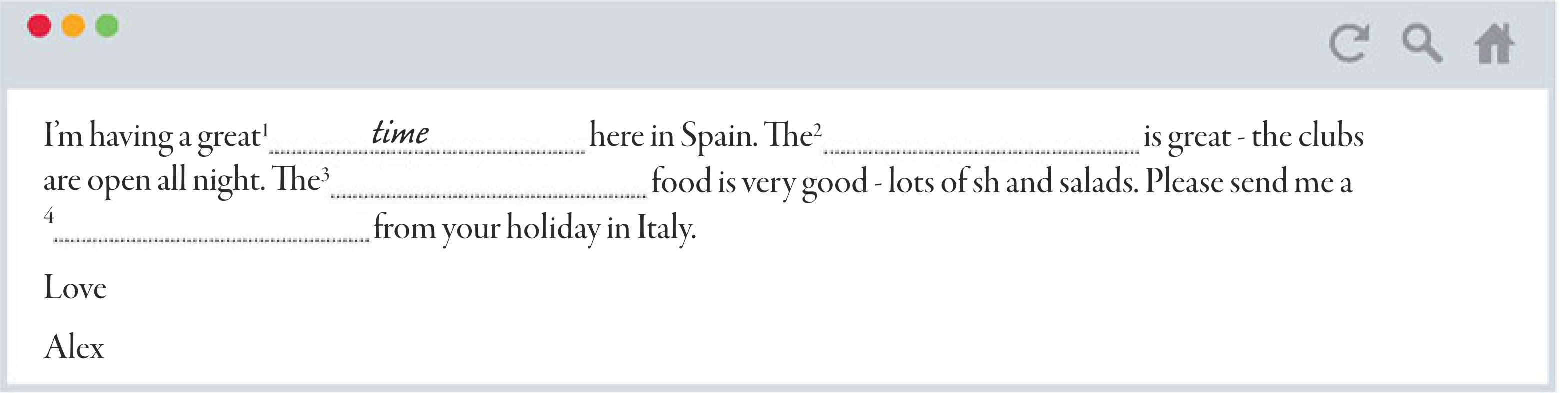


6 ....

18.5 What do we call:

1 something you take photos with? a c amera..............
2 a special stamp in your passport to enter a country? a v ....
3 something you fly in? a p ....
4 something that you carry things on your back in? a r ....
5 what people carry their clothes in when they go on holiday? a s ....

18.6 Fill the gaps in this email.



I'm having a great[1] ....time........ here in Spain. The[2] .... is great - the clubs are open all night. The[3] .... food is very good - lots of fish and salads. Please send me a [4] .... from your holiday in Italy.

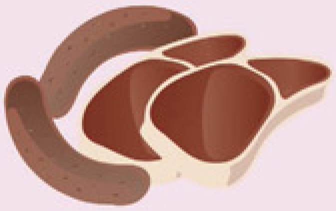
Love

Alex

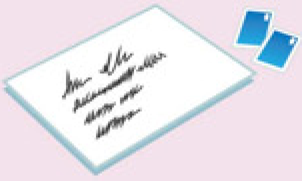
19 Shops and shopping

A Kinds of shops

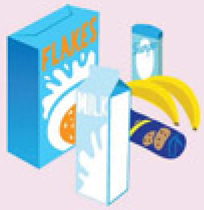
butcher*



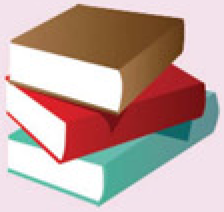
post office



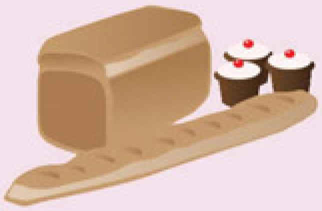
supermarket

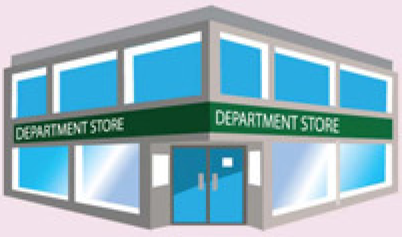


bookshop

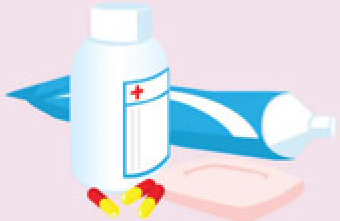


baker*

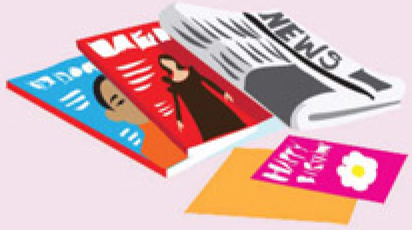




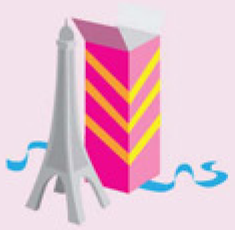
department store



chemist*



newsagent*



gift shop

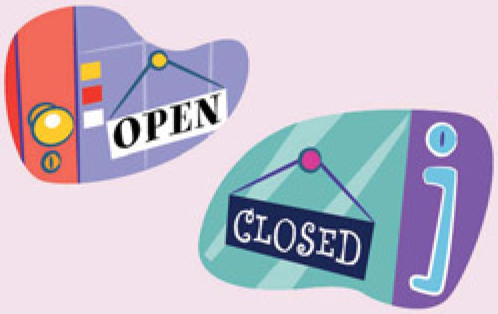
* These words are also for people's jobs. We often add *'s* and say: I'm going to the newsagent's to get a paper. Do you want anything from the butcher's?

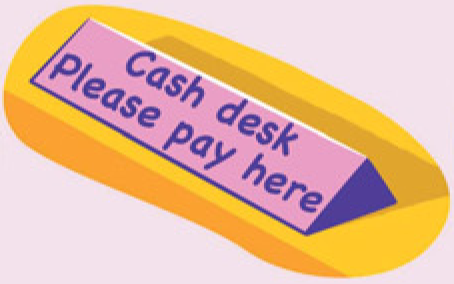
B In the department store

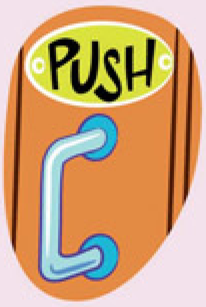
A department store is a large shop which sells a lot of different things - clothes, beauty products, toys, etc.

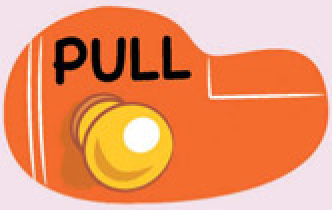
Fourth floor	Toys Restaurant
Third floor	Furniture
Second floor	Men's Wear Children's Department
First floor	Women's Wear
Ground Floor	Beauty
Basement	Electricals Food

C Signs in shops









D Expressions

Shop assistant Can I help you?

Customer Can I **try this shirt on**? (*goes and tries it on*) Have you got a **bigger** / **smaller size** / a **different colour**?

Shop assistant No, I'm sorry. That's the only one.

Customer OK. I'll take it. How much does it **cost**?

Shop assistant £22.

Customer Can I **pay** by **cheque**?

Shop assistant No, **credit card**, debit card or **cash**, please.

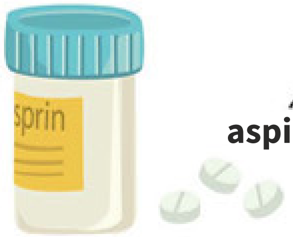
Customer Sorry, I only have a £50 **note**. I don't have any **change** [coins or smaller notes].

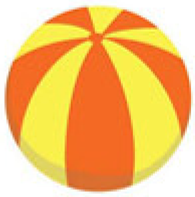
Shop assistant That's OK. Here's your **receipt**. Would you like a (**carrier**) **bag**?

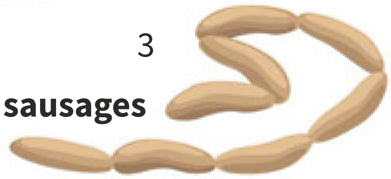
Exercises

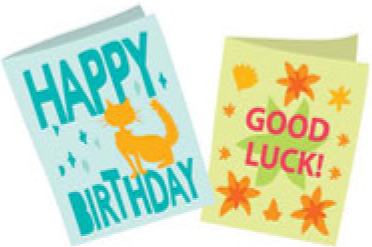
19.1 Match the item with the shop.

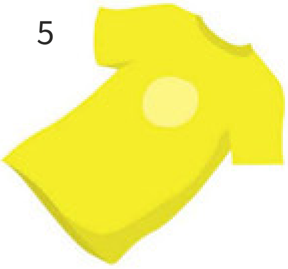
toy shop butcher ~~chemist~~ baker gift shop newsagent

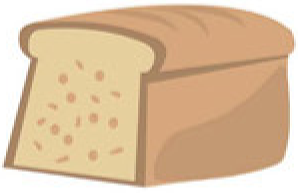
1 
aspirin

2 
beach ball

3 
sausages

4 
greeting cards

5 
souvenir T-shirt

6 
bread

19.2 Where do you need to go?

1 I want to get a newspaper. *the newsagent*
2 I'd like to buy food for a week.
3 I need some stamps.
4 We must get Michael a present.
5 I'd like to buy a book.
6 I want to buy some clothes for myself and my children in one shop.

19.3 Look at the department store plan in B opposite. Which floor will you go to buy:

1 an armchair? *third floor*
2 lipstick? ....
3 a cup of tea? ....
4 a packet of tea? ....
5 a skirt? ....
6 some baby clothes? ....
7 a tie? ....
8 a TV? ....
9 a bed? ....
10 a doll? ....

19.4 Write the words for these definitions.

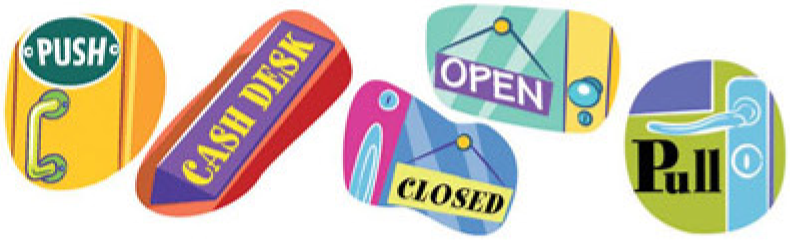
1 a person who sells things in a shop *shop assistant*
2 money (not a cheque or credit/debit card)
3 a piece of paper that is worth £20
4 'plastic money'
5 coins or small notes

Now write definitions in English for these words/phrases.

6 a butcher's
7 the first floor
8 a newsagent's
9 the basement

19.5 Which sign tells you ...

1 that you can give the money for the things you are buying here? *Cash desk*
2 that you can't go into the shop?
3 that the door will open towards you?
4 that the door will open away from you?
5 that you can go into the shop?

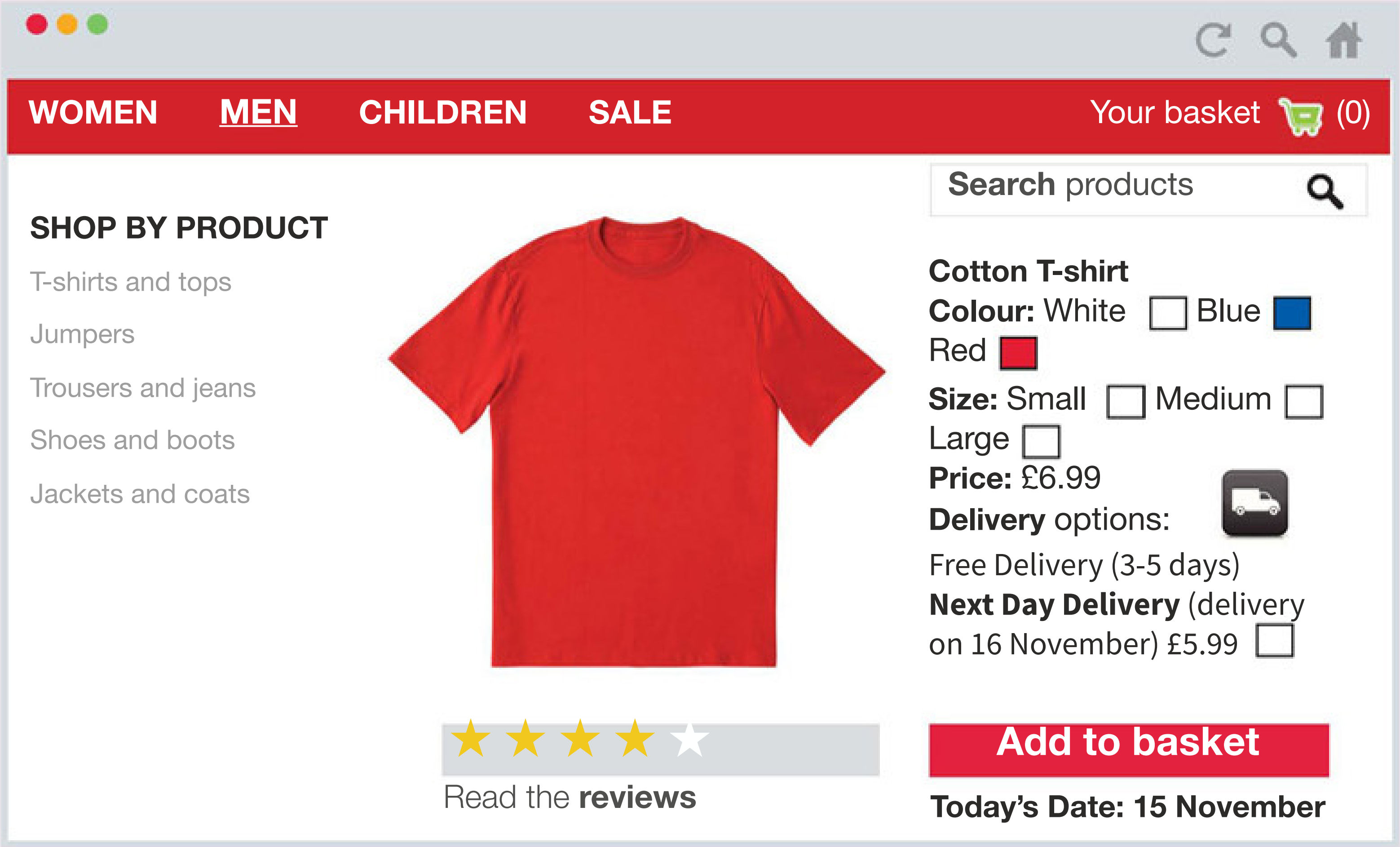


19.6 Fill the gaps in the dialogue.

CUSTOMER: How much does this jacket ^{1} .... ?
SHOP ASSISTANT: £50.
CUSTOMER: I'll take it, please. Can I ^{2} .... by credit card?
SHOP ASSISTANT: Certainly. I'll put your receipt in the ^{3} ....

20 Online shopping

A Buying something



WOMEN MEN CHILDREN SALE

Your basket (0)

Search products

SHOP BY PRODUCT

T-shirts and tops

Jumpers

Trousers and jeans

Shoes and boots

Jackets and coats

Cotton T-shirt
Colour: White ☐ Blue 🟦
Red 🟥
Size: Small ☐ Medium ☐
Large ☐
Price: £6.99
Delivery options:
Free Delivery (3-5 days)
Next Day Delivery (delivery on 16 November) £5.99 ☐

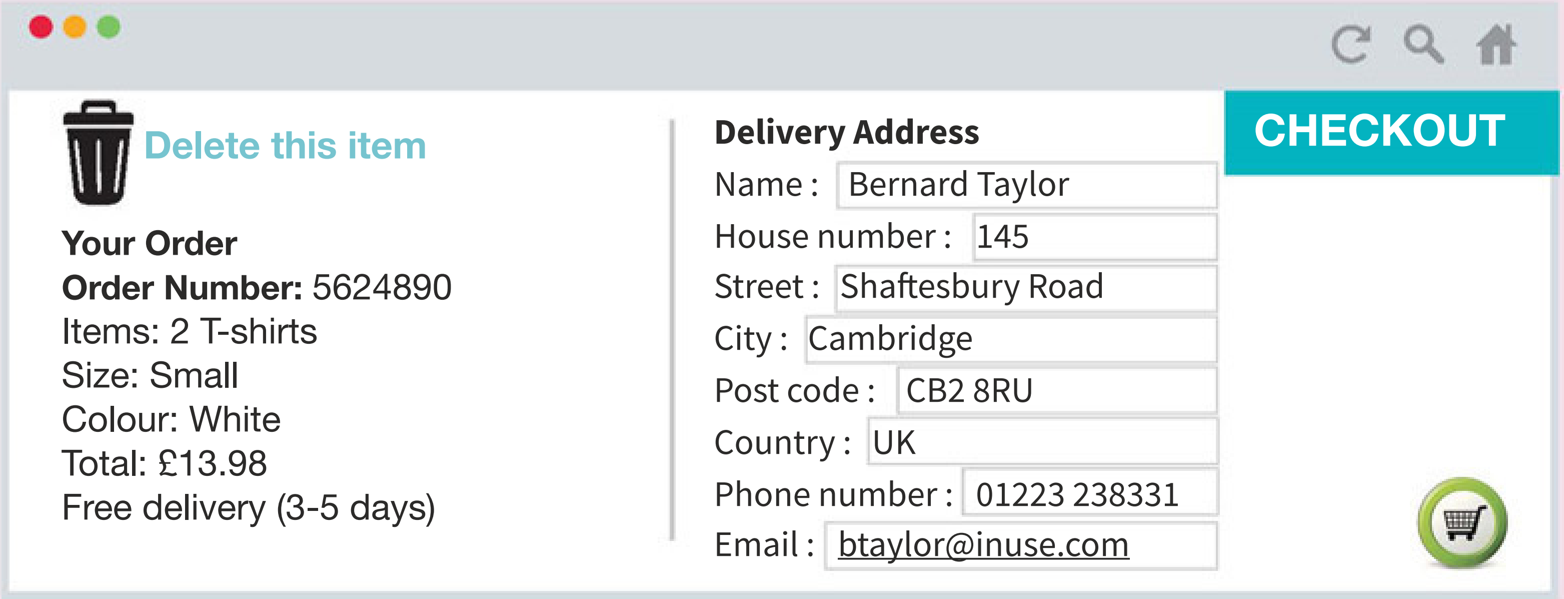
★★★★☆

Read the **reviews**

Add to basket

Today's Date: 15 November

B Your order



Delete this item

Your Order
Order Number: 5624890
Items: 2 T-shirts
Size: Small
Colour: White
Total: £13.98
Free delivery (3-5 days)

Delivery Address
Name : Bernard Taylor
House number : 145
Street : Shaftesbury Road
City : Cambridge
Post code : CB2 8RU
Country : UK
Phone number : 01223 238331
Email : btaylor@inuse.com

CHECKOUT

Language help

A **post code** (**zip code** in the US) is a long number at the end of an address. In the UK, it also contains letters (e.g. BA1 1LZ). A US zip code looks like this: 10509.

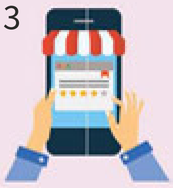
1

2

CreditCard
1234 5678 1234 5678
04/10
CARDHOLDER NAME
CreditCard

C Expressions

1 Lisa likes to **shop online** because it's quick and easy.
2 Most people pay for their online shopping with **credit cards**.
3 Reading **online reviews** can help you choose what to buy.
4 If you are not at home to receive the **delivery**, we will take it to the post office.

3


4

Exercises

20.1

Match the words from A and B with the examples on the right.

1 size
2 price
3 delivery address
4 post code
5 credit card
6 order number

a MR12 6QA
b MasterCard
c 8167990012
d small
e £12.89
f 7 Park Lane, Bristol

20.2

Choose the right word to complete these sentences.

1 When you shop online, you can [✓ *search for*] / *collect* the best price.
2 You can read *sizes* / *reviews* from other people who bought the same thing.
3 If you want to buy something, *add* / *deliver* it to your basket.
4 If you don't want to buy something that is in your basket, you can *delete* / *order* it.
5 Don't forget to check how much you will pay for *delivery* / *order number*.
6 You can use your *credit card* / *post code* to pay for your shopping.

20.3

Complete the dialogue with the words below.

next day	post code	~~delivery~~	order number

TOM: I'm waiting for a [1] delivery................ of apair of shoes.
CUSTOMER CARE: What's your [2] ....?
TOM: It's G99215540000Z.
CUSTOMER CARE: And what's your address and [3] ....?
TOM: 31 Mill Road, WC2 5SN. I bought them yesterday and I paid £5 for [4] .... delivery. Will they be here today?
CUSTOMER CARE: I'm sorry. We're very busy. Your order will be delivered tomorrow.

20.4

Put these steps of buying a computer online in the correct order.

1 F 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 ....

A Wait at home for the delivery
B Add the computer to your basket
C Choose next day delivery
D Pay with a credit card
E Search for a website which sells the computer you want
F Read online reviews and choose which computer you want to buy

20.5

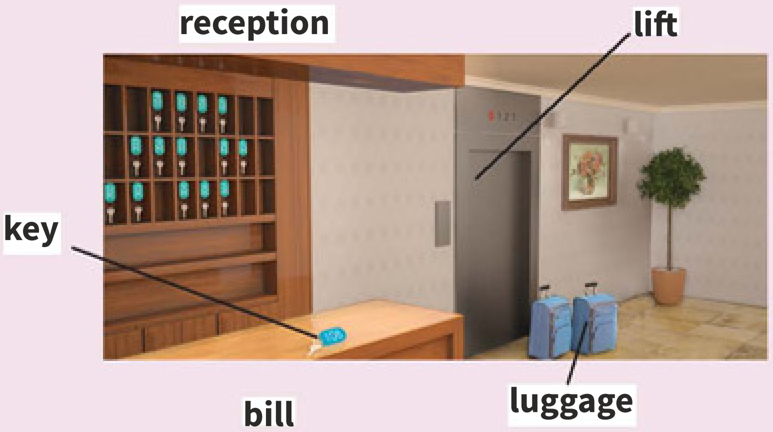
Over to you

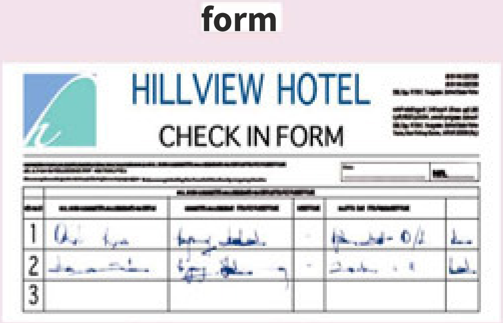
Answer these questions.

1 Do people often shop online in your country?
2 Have you ever bought things online? If yes, what did you buy?
3 Do you usually read the reviews before you buy something?

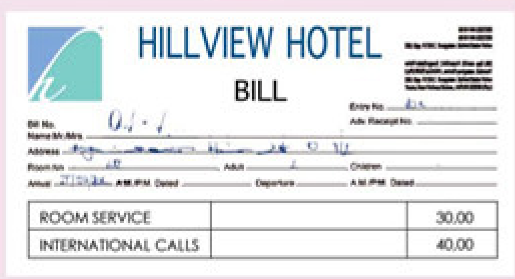
21 In a hotel

A Places and things in the hotel



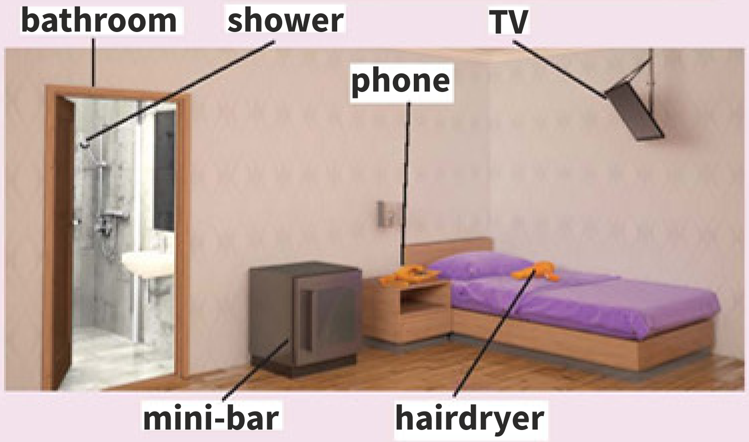


HILLVIEW HOTEL
CHECK IN FORM



HILLVIEW HOTEL
BILL

ROOM SERVICE	30.00
INTERNATIONAL CALLS	40.00



B Expressions in reception

Do you have a **single room** [for one person] / a **double room** [for two people]?
I have a **reservation**. [I booked a room] My name is …
We'd like a **room with a view** of the sea.

The receptionist may say:
Here is your key.
Your room is **on the first floor**. **Take the lift**. It's **over there**.
Would you like **some help with your luggage**?
Can you **fill in this form**, please?
Sign (**your name**) **here**, please. [write your name]
Please **check your bill** [make sure it is correct].

When you leave you say:
Can I **check out**, please?
Can I have the **bill**, please?

C Asking questions about hotel services

How much is a single room with a **bathroom**?

Can I order **room service**?

How do I **get an outside line**? (You want to phone someone who is not in the hotel.)

What is **the code for** Poland?

Can I **have breakfast in my room**, please?

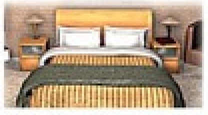
Can I **have a wake-up call** at 6.30, please? (You want to wake up at 6.30.)

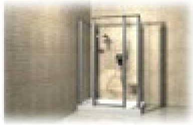
What time is breakfast / lunch / dinner?

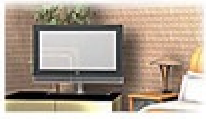
Can I (**ex**)**change some money**, please?

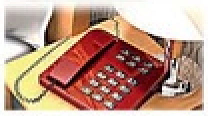
Exercises

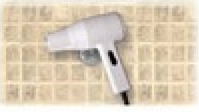
21.1 Look at the pictures and complete the dialogue with words from the opposite page.

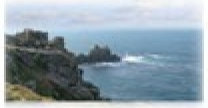
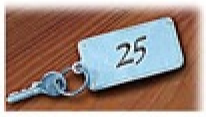
CUSTOMER: Can I have a  1 double............ room for tonight, please?

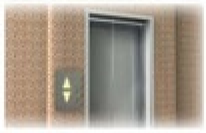
RECEPTIONIST: Would you like a room with a  2............ ?

CUSTOMER: Yes, please. And with a  3............, please.

RECEPTIONIST: All our rooms have a TV, a  4............ and a

 5............ . I can give you room 25. It has a view of the

 6............ . Here is your  7............ . The

 8............ is over there. The room's on the second floor.

21.2 Match what you want on the left with what you need on the right.

You want:	You need:
1 to have a drink in your room	a the lift
2 to go to the top floor	b an outside line
3 to open your door	c a shower
4 to get up at 6 am	d a mini-bar
5 to phone your country	e a hairdryer
6 to watch the news	f a wake-up call
7 to wash your hair	g a TV
8 to dry your hair	h a key

21.3 Choose the right words to complete these sentences.

1 At [✓ *reception*] / *reservation* you can order *room* / *lift* service.
2 We'd like a *two* / *double* room with a *view* / *see* of the garden, please.
3 The lift is *after* / *over* there. Take it to the second *floor* / *room*.
4 Please *fill* / *write* in this *form* / *bill*.
5 I'd like a *sit-up* / *wake-up* call at 7.30 and I'd like to *make* / *have* breakfast in my room, please.
6 I have a *luggage* / *reservation* for a *single* / *one* room with a bathroom.
7 Can I *cash* / *have* the bill, please? I'll *check* / *change* it now.
8 I'm leaving today. Can I *exchange* / *order* some dollars here before I *pay* / *check* out?

21.4 Write down questions that you can ask in a hotel beginning: Can I … ? Use these words.

wake-up call Can I have a wake-up call, please?

breakfast in my room bill double room luggage

21.5 Answer the questions.

1 How much does a hotel room cost in the capital of your country?
2 What is the code for Britain if you phone from your country?
3 What time is breakfast usually in a hotel in your country?
4 Is it most important for you to have a hairdryer, a TV or a mini-bar in a hotel room?

22 Eating out

A Places where you can eat

café: you can **have a cup of tea** / **coffee** and a **snack** there (e.g. a sandwich or a cake). They sometimes serve **meals** too (e.g. lunch, dinner).

restaurant: you go there for a meal; more expensive than a café.

bar / **pub**: bars and pubs serve **alcohol** and **soft drinks** [non-alcoholic drinks, e.g. fruit juice]; you can usually have a meal or a snack there too.

fast food restaurant: you can get a quick hot meal there, for example burger and chips.

take-away: you buy a snack or a meal there and take it home to eat.

B In a restaurant

Menu

STARTERS

Soup of the day (v)
Mixed salad (v)

MAIN COURSES

Steak with chips or new potatoes
Fish and chips
Vegetable curry (v)
Salmon fillet with green beans
Burger with chips and mushrooms

DESSERTS

Chocolate ice cream
Apple pie
Fruit salad

(v = vegetarian)

C Expressions

Waiter Are you **ready to order**?

Customer Yes, **I'd like** the steak, please.

Waiter **Would you like** it with chips or new potatoes?

Customer With chips, please.

Waiter **How would you like** your steak - **rare**, **medium** or **well-done**?

Customer Well-done, please.

Waiter And **what would you like to drink?**

Customer **I'll have** a coke, please.

(later)

Waiter **Is everything all right?**

Customer Thank you, it's **delicious**. [very good]

(later)

Customer **Could I have the bill**, please?

Waiter Yes, of course.

Exercises

22.1 Look at A opposite. Where would you go to …

1 buy a meal and take it home to eat? *a take-away*
2 have a romantic dinner for two? ....
3 eat a quick lunch? ....
4 have a cake and a cup of coffee? ....
5 drink a glass of wine with friends? ....

22.2 Write down the name of a place of this type in your town.

1 fast food restaurant: *McDonald's*
2 café: ....
3 take-away: ....
4 restaurant: ....
5 bar: ....

22.3 Choose one of the words in the box which can go with each of the words in each group.

steak curry pie ~~soup~~ salad

1 You can have tomato / vegetable / chicken *soup*.................... as a starter.
2 I'd like the beef / chicken / vegetable .... as a main course.
3 I'll have the mixed / tomato / fruit ....
4 Can I have the apple / chicken ...., please.
5 Do you like your .... well-done, medium or rare?

22.4 Correct the six mistakes in this dialogue.

WAITER: Are you ready ~~for~~ order? *to*
CUSTOMER: Yes. I like vegetable soup and steak, please.
WAITER: What would you like your steak? Rare, medium or done good?
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
WAITER: What you would like to drink?
CUSTOMER: A orange juice, please.

22.5 Cover the menu opposite. Write the food you can remember. Look at the menu again and check your answers.

22.6 Answer these questions.

1 What would you choose to eat from the menu opposite?
2 What can vegetarians eat from the menu?
3 Do you like eating out?
4 How often do you go to a restaurant?

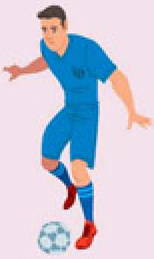
Over to you

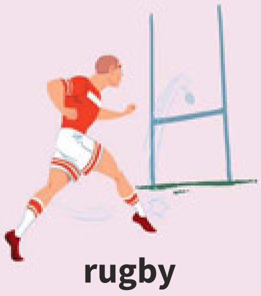
Sometimes restaurants in other countries have English menus for tourists. Look at one of these. Write down any useful words you find.

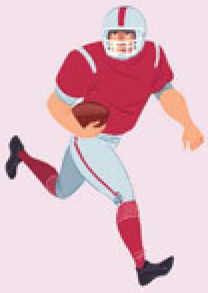
23 Sports

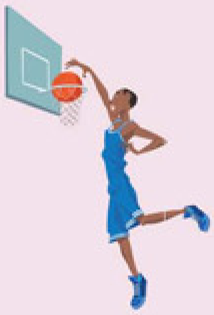
A Ball games

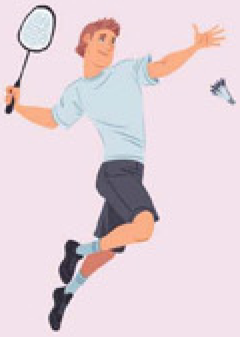
We **play** all these sports.

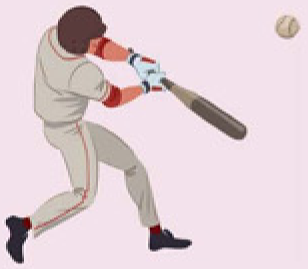

football

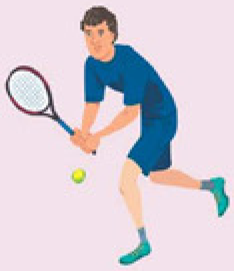

rugby

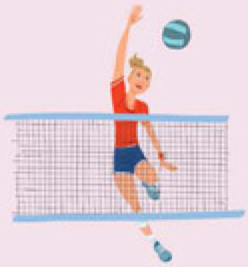

American football


basketball


badminton


baseball


tennis


volleyball

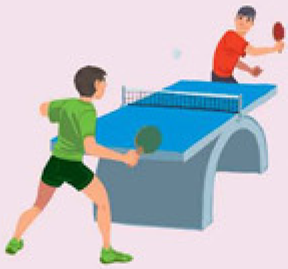
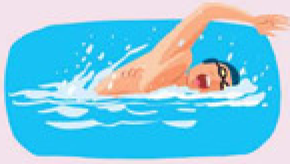
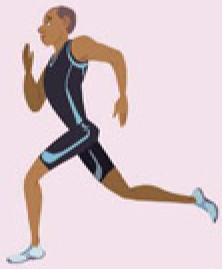
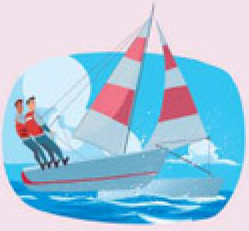


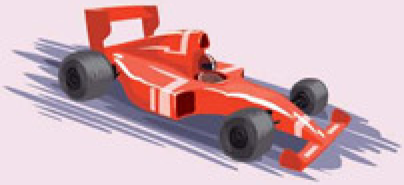
table tennis

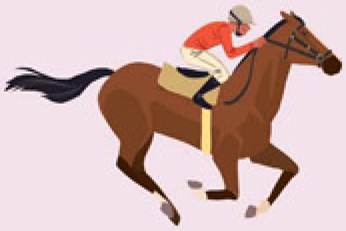
B Other popular sports

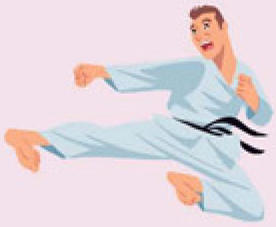

swimming

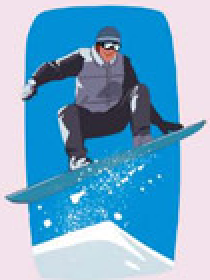

running

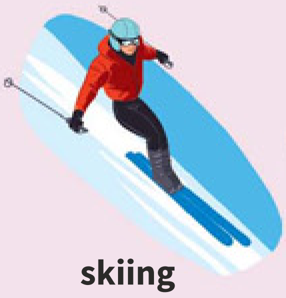

sailing

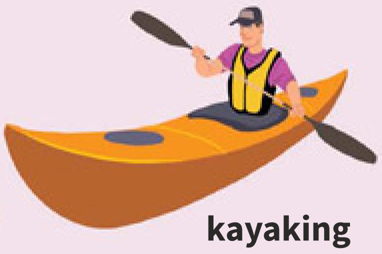

motor racing


horse racing


judo / karate


snowboarding


skiing


kayaking

We can use **go** with all the sports listed in B, apart from judo and karate. I **go** running every day. I **went** skiing last year. We use **do** with judo and karate. She **does** judo.
(See **Unit 39: Go / went / gone**.)

C Where we do sports

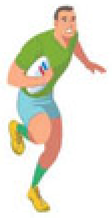
We play tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball on a **tennis** / **badminton** / **volleyball** / **basketball court.**
We play football / rugby on a **football** / **rugby pitch**.
We swim in a **swimming pool**.
Many towns have a **sports centre** - you can do lots of different sports there.

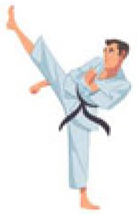
D Expressions

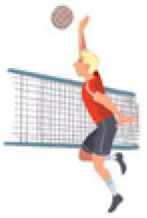
Do you do any sports?
Yes, **I go** swimming / running / sailing / kayaking.
Do you play football / tennis / badminton?
I **play** tennis. Which sports do you play?
What's your favourite sport?
I like motor racing **best.**

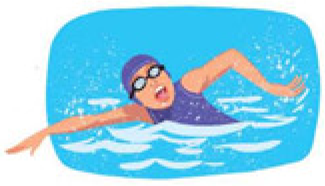
Exercises

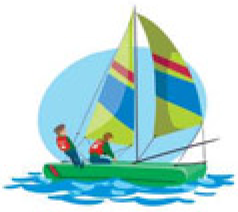
23.1 Cover the opposite page. What are these sports?

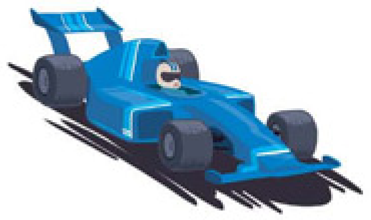

1 *rugby*..................................


3 ....

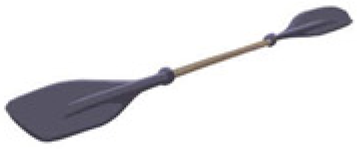

5 ....

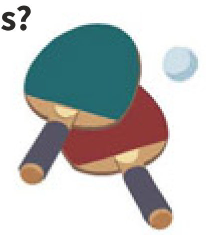

2 ....

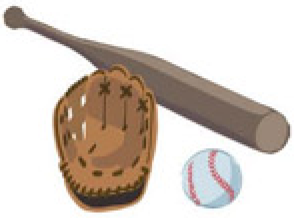

4 ....

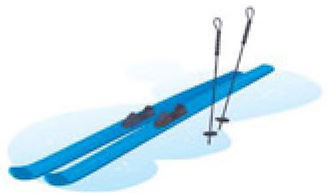

6 ....

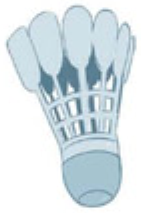
23.2 Which sports use these things?

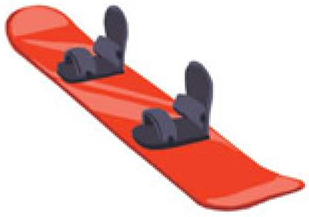

1 *kayaking*..................................

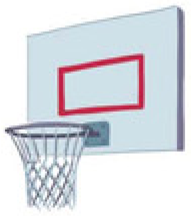

3 ....

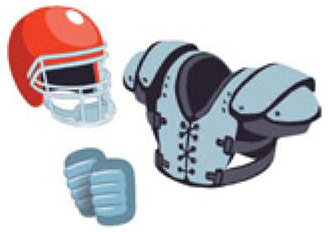

5 ....


7 ....


2 ....


4 ....


6 ....


8 ....

23.3 Ask questions for these answers.

1 *Where do people play tennis?*..................................
On a tennis court.

2 Do you ....
Yes, but only American football.

3 ....
No, I don't do any at all. I prefer watching TV.

4 Do you ....
Yes, I go to the swimming pool every Friday.

5 What ....
I like running best.

6 Where ....
On a rugby pitch.

23.4 Look at the different sports in this unit.

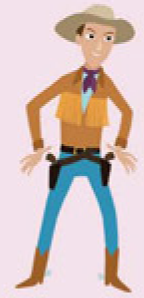
1 Write the names of the sports you have done. ....
2 Where did you do them? ....
3 Which ones do you like? ....
4 Which do you not like? ....
5 Which ones would you like to do? ....

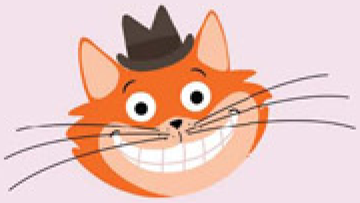
Over to you

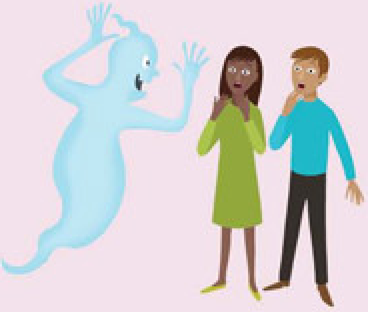
Make a page in your vocabulary book for 'sports'. Look at the sports pages of an English-language newspaper. Write down the names of sports you do not know. Look them up in a dictionary.

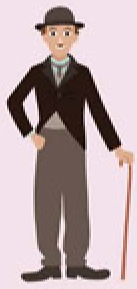
24 Cinema

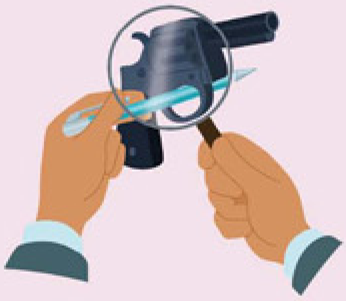
A Types of films

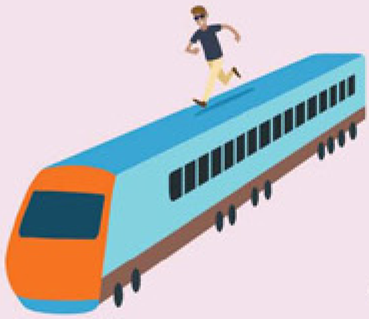

a western

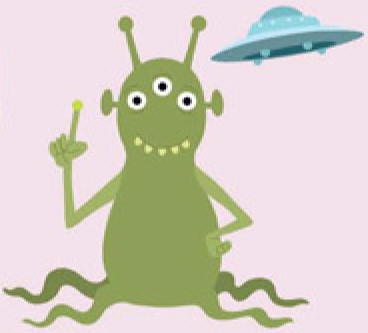

a cartoon

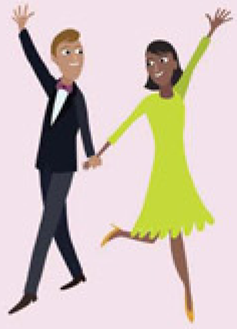

a horror film

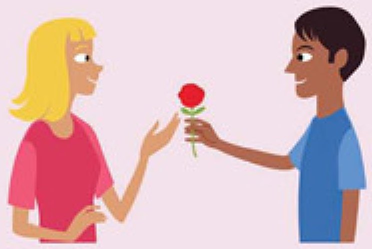

a comedy


a thriller


an action film


a science fiction film


a musical


a romantic comedy

B People in films

Monica Bellucci is a **film star**.
She was **in** the new James Bond film.

Daniel Radcliffe **played** Harry Potter in the Harry Potter films.

I like films by Italian **directors**.

C Expressions

A Have you **seen** the latest James Bond film?

B Yes, I saw it **on TV**.

A Did you like the new Batman film?

B Yes, **I loved it** / **enjoyed it**.
No, it was **boring**.

A Do you like **westerns**?

B No, I like **science fiction films** best.

A The best **action film** I've seen was Jason Bourne with Matt Damon.

B If I see a **horror film**, I can't sleep.

Common mistakes

What's on at the cinema this week? [NOT ~~What's on the cinema this week~~?]

There's a comedy with Jennifer Aniston.

Common mistakes

Do you go to the cinema often?
[NOT ~~Do you go to cinema often~~?]

Yes, I go every week.
No, I watch DVDs at home.

Exercises

24.1 What types of films are these?

1 Some cowboys rob a train. *western*
2 A flying saucer lands from Mars.
3 A dead person comes back to life.
4 James Bond saves the world.
5 Mickey Mouse goes on a picnic.
6 A man falls in love with his teacher.
7 A dead body is found in the river.
8 There are lots of songs and dancing.

24.2 Write the name of a film of each type.

1 science fiction *Interstellar*
2 romantic comedy ……………………
3 thriller ……………………
4 western ……………………
5 musical ……………………
6 cartoon ……………………

24.3 Word puzzle. Can you make words for other types of films with the letters of ROMANTIC?

T H *R* I L L E *R*
…… **O** …… …… …… R
C …… **M** …… …… Y
A …… T …… …… N
S …… …… …… **N** C …… F …… …… …… …… …… N
W …… …… **T** …… …… N
M …… …… **I** C …… L
C A …… …… O O ……

24.4 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 Do you prefer going *to the* …… cinema or watching TV?
2 We …………… a DVD last night.
3 Who …………… James Bond in *Skyfall*?
4 Was Rachel Weisz …………… *The Constant Gardener*?
5 Lots of big …………… live in Hollywood.
6 Steven Spielberg is a famous American film ……………

24.5 Answer these questions.

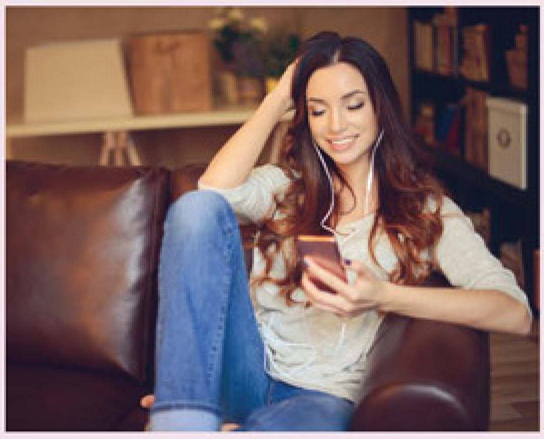
1 What is your favourite type of film?
2 Who is your favourite film star?
3 Do you prefer going to the cinema or watching DVDs?
4 What was the last film you saw?
5 How can you find out what is on at the cinema where you live or study?

25 Free time at home

A TV, radio, music, film

I **watch TV** every evening.
Did you **watch / see** the film about President Kennedy?
What **programmes** do you like best on TV and radio?
I like **watching** films on TV. (You can also say: I like to watch …)
At the weekend, we usually **watch a DVD**.

I like **listening to** music on the radio. (You can also say: I like to listen …)
I often **listen to** music on my phone when I'm relaxing.
I need some new **headphones** for my phone.

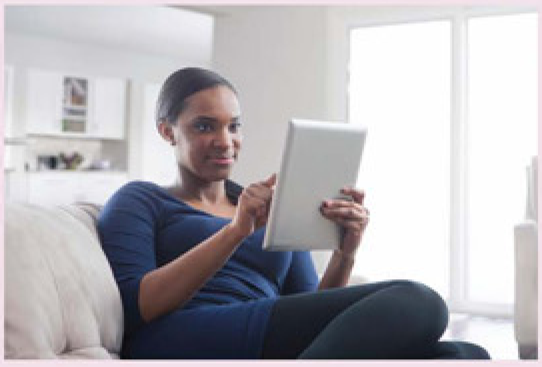


B Hobbies

A lot of young people **play video games** every day.
I **download** music and films from **the Internet**.
I **chat to my friends online** every evening.
I really like **cooking**.
Do you like **gardening**? /ˈɡɑːdnɪŋ/
We **grow flowers** and **vegetables** in our garden.

C Reading

I read a lot at home.
What do you read?
I read **novels** [long stories]. My sister likes **comics**.
I like **books about** nature and different countries.
I like **magazines about** music and sport.
Do you read a **newspaper** every day?



D Expressions

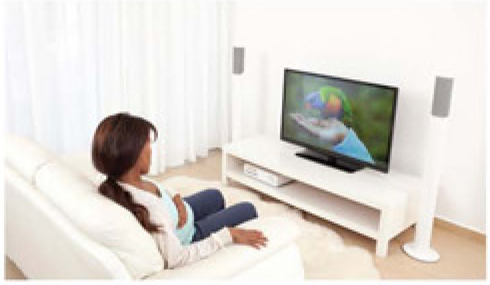
We sometimes **have friends round**
[we ask them to come to our house / flat].
I often **have friends to dinner**.
My best friend **comes to stay** sometimes.
[sleeps in my house / flat]
I **talk to** my friends **on the phone** every evening.
Sometimes, I just **do nothing**.
Grandpa likes to **have a sleep** after lunch.

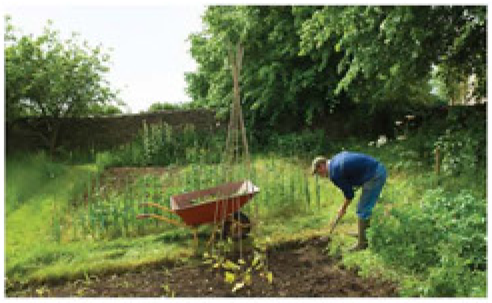
Common mistakes

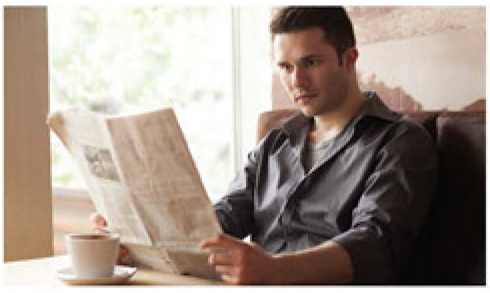
We watch TV [NOT ~~see TV~~] and we listen to the radio [NOT ~~hear or listen the radio~~].

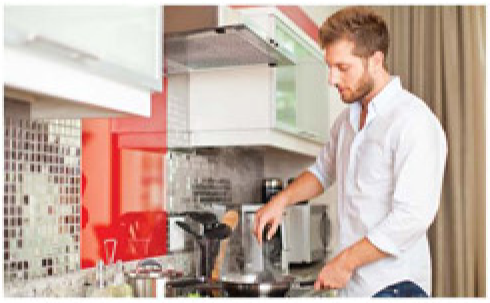
Exercises

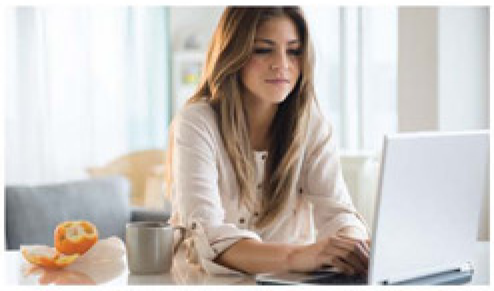
25.1 What are these people doing?

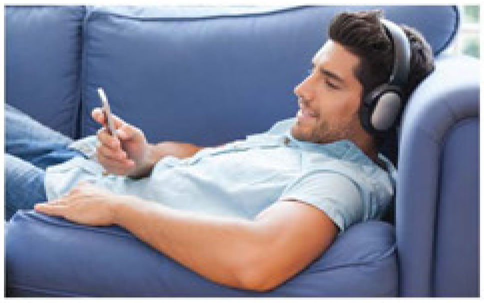

1 She's *watching TV.*


2 He's ....


3 He's .... a
....


4 He's ....


5 She's ....
....


6 He's ....
to ....

25.2 Fill in the missing verbs.

1 I usually *listen* to music on my laptop at home.
2 I like .... magazines more than newspapers.
3 I .... to my sister on the phone every Sunday.
4 A lot of people like to .... a sleep after lunch.
5 Do you ever .... friends to dinner?
6 The children .... video games every evening.
7 I want to .... some music from the Internet this evening.
8 Did you .... the programme about Namibia yesterday?
9 My dad .... vegetables in his garden.
10 Shall we .... a DVD tonight?

25.3 Answer these questions.

1 When you have friends round, what do you like to do?
2 Who comes to stay at your house / flat?
3 What do you like to read most?
4 How often do you talk to your friends on the phone?
5 Do you have a garden? Do you like gardening?
6 How often do you chat to your friends online?
7 Do you often download music or films from the Internet?
8 What is your favourite video game?
9 When do you use headphones?

25.4 Interesting or boring? Number these activities from 5 (= very interesting) to 1 (= very boring).

gardening cooking reading using the Internet watching DVDs
listening to music doing nothing chatting online

26 Music and musical instruments

A Music, musical and musician

Music is an uncountable noun. We do not use it in the plural.
The band played fantastic **music** for more than two hours [NOT ~~fantastic musics~~].

Musical is an adjective.
There is a shop on King Street that sells **musical** instruments [NOT ~~music instruments~~].

A **musician** (noun) is a person.
My brother is a very good **musician**. He plays three instruments.

B Musical instruments

piano

cello

guitar

flute

violin

trumpet

clarinet

drums

C Playing musical instruments

Ava **plays the clarinet**. Her brother **plays the drums**.
Krishnan **is learning the guitar**. His friend, Isabella, **has piano lessons**.
Mia is a very good **flute-player**. She **plays in an orchestra**. Her friend, Nuria, is a good **trumpet-player.**
Lucas is an excellent **violinist**. His sister is a good **pianist**.
Can you **play a musical instrument**?

D Listening to music

Charlotte **loves classical music**. (for example, Beethoven, Mozart) [NOT ~~classic music~~]
Harper **can't stand opera** [dislikes it very much]. She prefers **pop** music.
I like **folk music**, **jazz** and **rock**.
I often **listen to music** on the train.
I **downloaded some new songs** yesterday. Do you want to hear them?

Common mistakes

A **band** means a group of musicians.

Nuala had a really good band at her 21st birthday party. [NOT 'a really good ~~music~~ band']

A **concert** means an event with music.

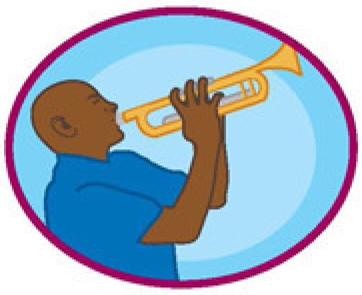
We're going to a concert tonight. [NOT 'a ~~music~~ concert']

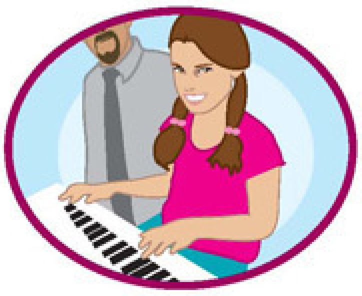
Exercises

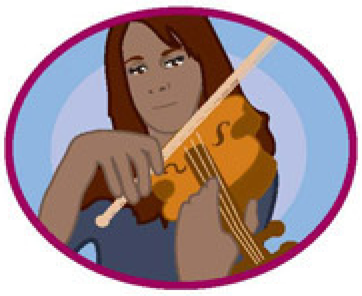
26.1 Choose the correct word: *music*, *musical* or *musician*.

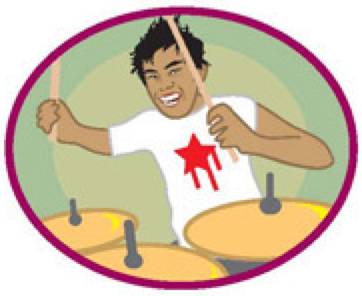
1 What are your favourite types of music.................... ?
2 My brother thinks he's a good ...., but he's very bad!
3 Can you play a .... instrument?
4 I love different types of ...., for example, jazz, rock and classical.
5 Which .... instrument would you like to learn?
6 Are there any .... in your family?

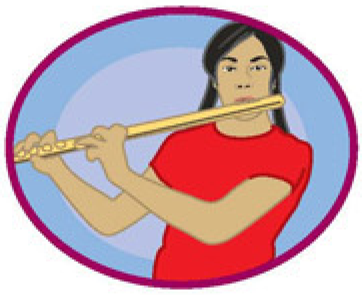
26.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

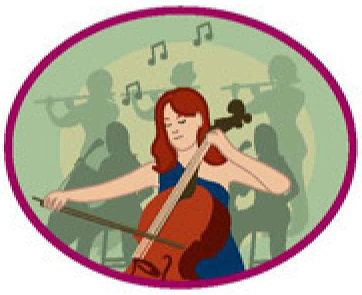

Mason

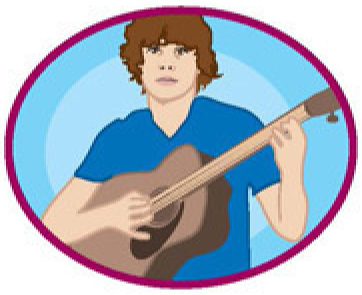

Emily

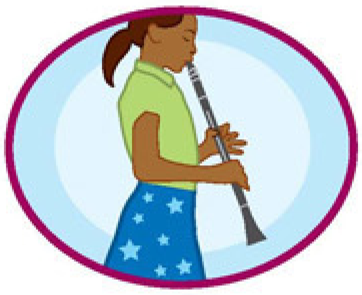

Madison


Noah


Emma


Abigail


William


Ella

1 Madison plays the violin....................
2 .... plays the cello in an ....
3 Noah loves playing the ....
4 Emily is having a .... lesson.
5 Mason is a very good ....-player.
6 Ella plays the .... every evening.
7 William .... the ....
8 Emma is learning the .... She will be a good flute- .... one day.
9 .... is a violinist.
10 .... wants to be a pianist.

26.3 Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

1 I love a) classic [✓ b) classical] c) classist music. Beethoven is my favourite.
2 My brother a) can't stand b) can stand c) can't stay folk music but I love it.
3 I have some tickets for a a) concert music b) music concert c) concert at the Town Hall. Would you like one?
4 I always a) listen in b) listen to c) listen music when I'm studying.
5 My sister plays in a a) music band b) band music c) band with three other girls from her school.

26.4 Answer these questions.

1 How often do you download music?
2 Which musical instrument on the opposite page do you like best?
3 Can you play a musical instrument?
4 Which musical instrument would you like to learn?
5 Do you prefer classical music or pop music?

27 Countries and nationalities

A Continents and countries

continent	country	continent	country
North America	Canada	Australia	Australia
	the USA / the US		New Zealand
South America	Argentina	Asia	China
	Brazil		India
	Chile		Japan
	Colombia		Pakistan
	Peru		Thailand
Europe	Germany	Africa	Egypt
	Italy		Morocco
	Poland		South Africa
	Spain		Tunisia
	the UK	Antarctica	

It is not possible to show all the countries of the world on a small page. If your country is not included, check its English name with your teacher or on the Internet.

Common mistakes

All the nouns and adjectives for continents, countries and nationalies always begin with a capital letter, for example Africa [NOT ~~africa~~].

B Nationalities

notes	adjective
most country adjectives end in *(i)an*	**American, Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Colombian, Egyptian, German, Indian, Italian, Moroccan, Peruvian, South African, Tunisian**
many country adjectives end in *ish*	**British, English, Finnish, Irish, Polish, Scottish, Spanish**
a few country adjectives end in *ese*	**Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese**
exceptions	**Pakistani, Thai, French**

Tip

Remember that words for languages are often the same as the 'people' adjective, e.g. **French**, **Spanish**, **Japanese** and **Thai**. One exception is **Arabic**.

Exercises

27.1 Which countries do these letters make?

1 HINAC *China*
2 ZIRALB
3 PINSA
4 OCRMOOC
5 ANJAP
6 DALTHINA

27.2 Match these capital cities to their countries and make sentences.

1 Tokyo *Tokyo is the capital of Japan.*
2 Rome
3 Canberra
4 Bogotá
5 Cairo
6 London
7 Berlin
8 Warsaw
9 Buenos Aires
10 Madrid

Argentina Australia Colombia
Egypt Germany Italy ~~Japan~~
Poland Spain the UK

27.3 Which country is different? (Think of the languages they speak there.) Write sentences.

1 Australia, Canada, England, Iceland *In England, Canada and Australia they speak English but in Iceland they speak Icelandic.*
2 Brazil, Chile, Mexico, Spain
3 Austria, Germany, Italy, Switzerland
4 China, Egypt, Morocco, Saudi Arabia
5 Canada, France, Scotland, Switzerland

27.4 What is the adjective for these countries?

1 Indian *Indian*
2 Thailand
3 Germany
4 Egypt
5 Argentina
6 Spain
7 Peru
8 China
9 Australia
10 Poland

27.5 Write down:

1 the name of your country.
2 the names of the countries next to your country.
3 the name of your language.
4 the name for people from your country.

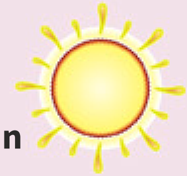
Over to you

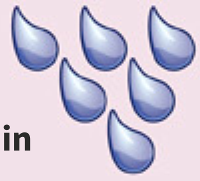
In which continents are these places? Use the Internet to help you.

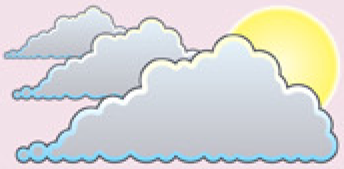
Mount Everest *Asia*
The Sahara
The Amazon
Wagga Wagga
The Volga
Mount Kilimanjaro
The Mississippi
Mount Fuji
Lake Titicaca

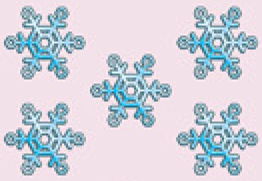
28 Weather

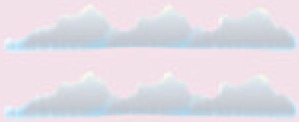
A Types of weather

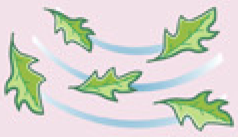

sun

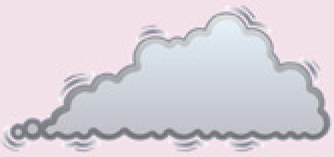

rain

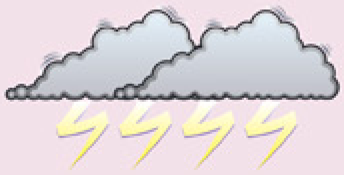

cloud


snow


fog


wind


thunder


lightning

B Adjectives and verbs

noun	adjective
sun	sunny
rain	rainy
wind	windy
cloud	cloudy
snow	snowy
fog	foggy
thunder	thundery
lightning	-

C Other useful weather words

It is very **hot** in Mexico - it is often **45 degrees** there in summer.
It is very **cold** in the Arctic - it is often **minus 50 degrees** there.
It can be very **wet** in London - carry an umbrella when you go sightseeing there.
It is very **dry** in the Sahara - it doesn't often rain there.
A **hurricane** is a very strong wind.
A **storm** is when there is a strong wind and rain together.
A **thunderstorm** is when there is thunder, lightning, rain and sometimes wind together.

D Expressions

It's a sunny day in Tokyo today, but **it's cloudy** in Hong Kong.
It's foggy in Sydney and **it's snowing** / **it's snowy** in Moscow.
It's raining in Barcelona but **the sun is shining** in Granada.

It's a lovely day.
It's a horrible day, isn't it!

What's the weather like in your country in June?
It's usually warm and sunny.

Common mistakes

We say **It's windy / cloudy / foggy / sunny** [NOT It's ~~winding~~ / ~~clouding~~ / ~~fogging~~ / ~~sunning~~].

Tip

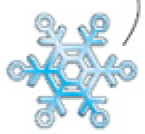
Watch the weather forecast in English on TV or online as often as you can.

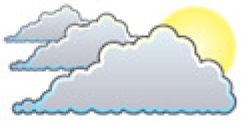
Exercises

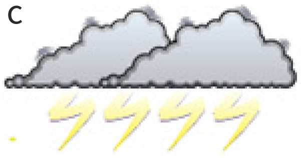
28.1

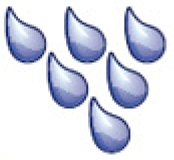
Match the words and the symbols.

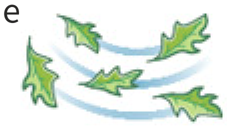
1 **snow** 2 **sun** 3 **rain** 4 **fog** 5 **lightning** 6 **wind** 7 **cloud**

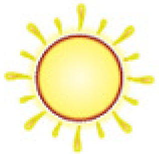
a


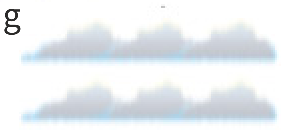
b


c


d


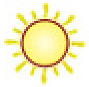
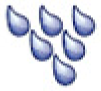
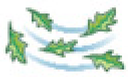
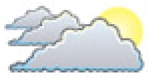
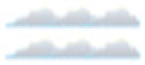
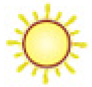
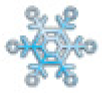
e


f


g


28.2

Look at the chart. Write sentences about the cities in the chart.

	Hanoi
	Hong Kong
	La Paz
	Paris
	Tashkent
	Seoul
	Washington

1 It is *sunny in Hanoi.* ....

2 It is *raining in Hong Kong.* ....

3 It is ....

4 It ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

28.3

Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

1 The sun *shone* .... every day last month.
2 When it .... , I take my umbrella.
3 What's the .... like in your country in January?
4 When it .... , we can go skiing.
5 You see .... before you hear thunder.
6 It is 24 .... here today.
7 It is dangerous to be in a small boat at sea in a ....
8 It is very .... in Siberia in winter.

28.4

Are these sentences true about the weather in your country? If not, correct them.

1 It often snows in December. *It sometimes snows in December.*
2 It is usually 40 degrees in summer and minus 20 degrees in winter.
3 There are thunderstorms every day in August.
4 It is very wet in spring.
5 We never have hurricanes.
6 Summer is usually hot and dry.

28.5

What do you like to do or not like to do in these types of weather?

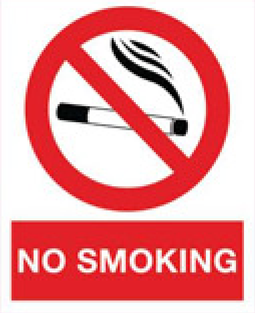
1 fog *I don't like to drive.*
2 sunny weather
3 a rainy day
4 snow
5 a windy day

29 In the town

A Places in the town

Train station / **railway station** - you can **get a train** here.
Bus station - you can **get a bus** here.
Shops - you can buy things here. (See **Unit 19: Shops and shopping**.)
Shopping centre - area of town with a lot of shops.
Tourist information office - tourists can **get information** here.
Museum - you can see interesting old things here.
Bank - you can **change money** here or get money from **a cash machine.**
Post office - you can **post letters and parcels** here.
Library /'la br ri/ - you can **read books** and **newspapers** here.
Town hall - local government officers work here.
Car park - you can **park your car** here.
Pedestrian area /'e ri / - you can only walk here, you can't come here by car.

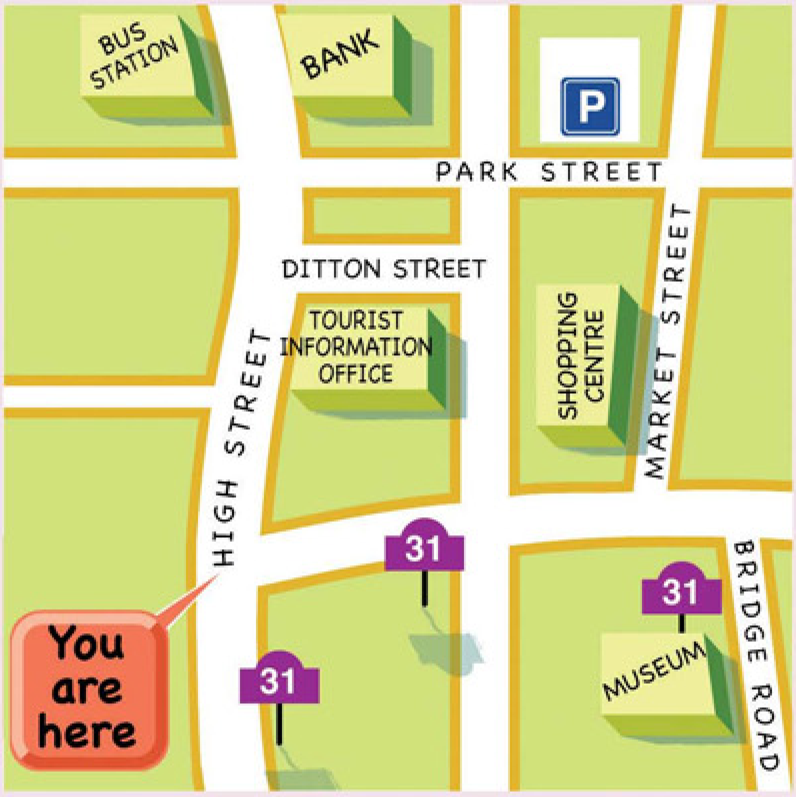
B Notices in towns



OUT OF ORDER

Please Keep off the grass

C Asking for and giving directions


BUS STATION
BANK
P
PARK STREET
DITTON STREET
TOURIST INFORMATION OFFICE
SHOPPING CENTRE
MARKET STREET
HIGH STREET
31
31
31
MUSEUM
BRIDGE ROAD
You are here

A: **Where is** the bus station?
B: **Go left** here and it's **at the end of the road.**

A: **How do I get to** Market Street?
B: **Take the first right** and then the second left.

A: **Is there** a shopping centre near here?
B: Yes, **turn right** here. The entrance is on Market Street **on the left**.

A: **Can I** park here?
B: No, but **there's a** car park on Park Street.

A: **Excuse me, I'm looking for** the museum.
B: It's on Bridge Road. **Take the number** 31 **bus** and **get off at the** second **stop**.

A: **Can you tell me the way to** the nearest bank, please? I need a **cash machine.**
B: No problem. Go left here and there's one **on the other side of the road.**

Exercises

29.1 Answer the questions.

1 Where can I get a bus to London? *at the bus station*
2 Where can I get information about hotels?
3 Where can I change money?
4 Where can I park my car?
5 Where can I see old and interesting things?
6 Where can I get a train?
7 Where can I go to a lot of different shops?
8 Where can I go to post a parcel?

29.2 Which notice from B opposite will help you?

1 The cash machine doesn't give you any money. *Out of order*
2 You are in the shopping centre and you want to leave.
3 You want to sit in a place where there are no cigarettes.
4 You want to know if people can go on the grass.
5 You want to go into the museum.

29.3 Complete these sentences.

1 Turn right at the *end*........................ of the road.
2 The bus .... is over there .... the left.
3 For the Town Hall .... the number 14 bus.
4 .... is a post office on the other .... of the road.
5 You can find a cash .... at the bank in High Street.
6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist .... office.
7 Can you tell me the .... to the railway ...., please?
8 .... me. I'm looking .... a car park.

29.4 What words are these?

1 sumuem *museum*
2 nowt hlal
3 brilyra
4 rac prak
5 ywrlaai nttoisa
6 dtaeepsrin raae
7 scah enicmah
8 tsop ffcoie
9 phoss
10 sub post

29.5 Look at the map in C opposite. How do you get from the tourist information office to the shopping centre? Write directions.

29.6 Does your town have these places? Where are they? Write sentences.

1 a train station *There's a train station. It's at the end of Station Road.*
2 a bus station
3 a shopping centre
4 a library
5 a town hall
6 a pedestrian area
7 a tourist information office
8 a museum
9 a post office

Tip

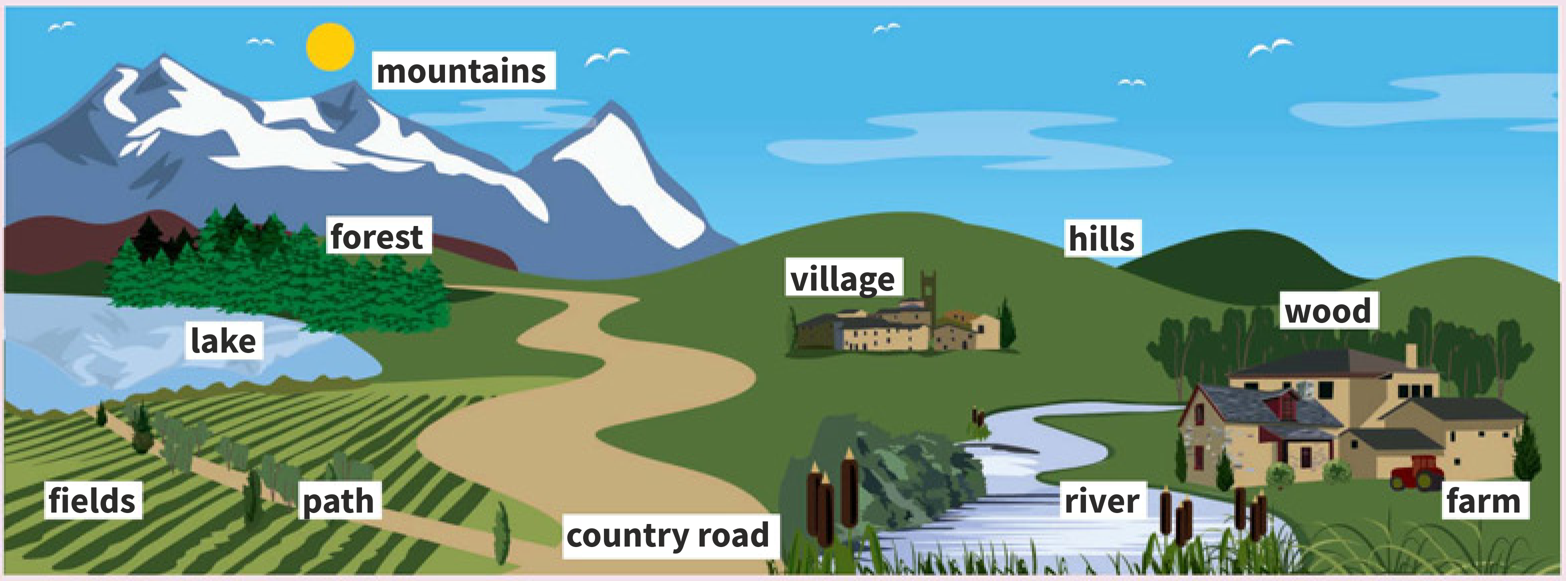
Keep a notebook in your pocket. Many towns in different countries have notices in English to help tourists. Write down any English words and expressions that you see in your town.

30 In the countryside

The **countryside** and the **country** both mean 'not the city'. **Country** can also mean a nation (e.g. France, China).

A

Things we can see in the countryside



B

Living and working in the countryside

In the countryside, people usually live in a **small town** (e.g. 6,000 people) or **village** /vɪlɪdʒ/ (e.g. 700 people).

A **farmer** lives **on a farm** and works in the fields.

My friend lives in a **cottage** /'kɒtɪdʒ/ [small house in a village or the countryside].

C

Nature /'neɪtʃə/ and conservation /kɒnsə'veɪʃən/

Nature means 'everything in the natural world'. (= animals, birds, plants, etc.)

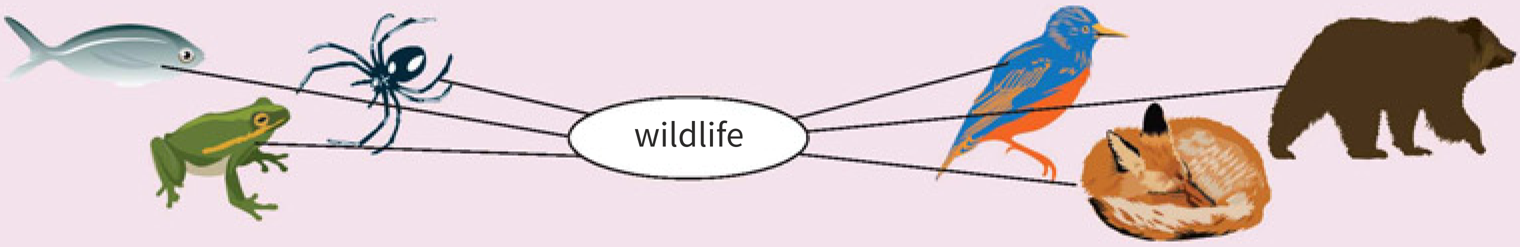
There is wonderful **wildlife** in the north of the country. [animals, birds, fish and insects]

Near the village there is **a conservation area** [place where wildlife and nature are protected].

Common mistakes

I love **nature** [NOT I love ~~the~~ nature]. I like walking **in the countryside** [NOT I like walking in the ~~nature~~].
'Nature' is not a place.

In the south of the country, there is a **national park** [very big national conservation area].

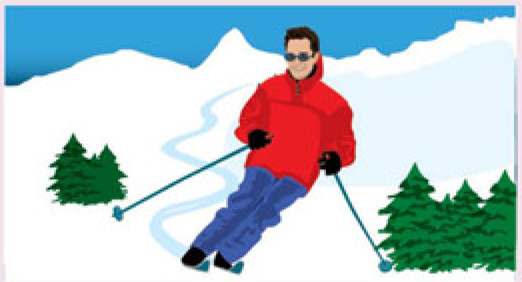


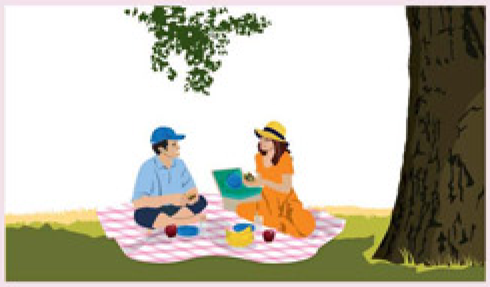
D

Things to do in the countryside

You can take food and drink and **have a picnic**.

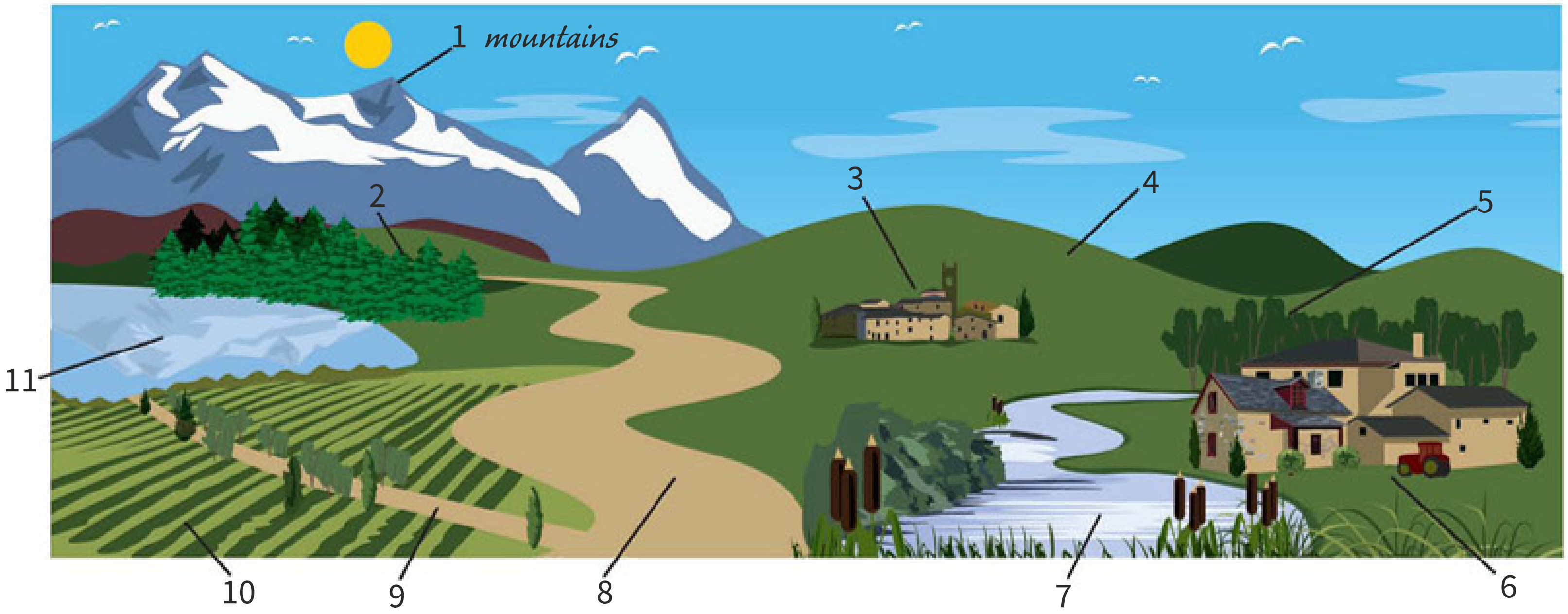
You can **go walking** / **skiing** in the mountains.





Exercises

30.1 Cover the opposite page. How many names of things in the countryside can you remember?



30.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 My brother is a farmer. He lives on a *farm*..................
2 It's not a big house; it's just a ....
3 The farm is near a .... which has 800 people.
4 Twenty kilometres from the village there is a small .... It has 9,000 people.

30.3 Match the beginning of the sentences on the left with the ends of the sentences on the right.

1 We went swimming
2 We went walking
3 We went skiing
4 We saw some wonderful wildlife
5 We had a picnic

a sitting by the river.
b in the national park.
c in the lake. The water was warm.
d along a five-kilometre path.
e down the mountain.

30.4 Put *the* in the sentences if necessary.

1 My parents live in *the*.................................. countryside.
2 He loves .... nature.
3 She wants to live in .... country.
4 They are interested in .... wildlife.

30.5 Describe the typical countryside where you come from. Write eight sentences about it. Use these questions to help you.

1 Are there any woods or forests? *There are some big forests.*
2 Are there any hills or mountains?
3 Are there any lakes or rivers?
4 Are there many villages or small towns?
5 Are there farms?
6 Are there paths where you can walk?
7 Can you go skiing?
8 Can you see wildlife?

31 Animals

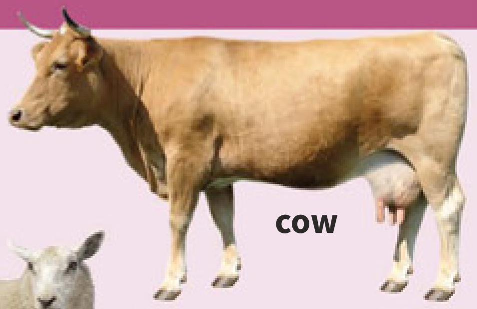
A Farm animals

horse

chicken / hen

pig

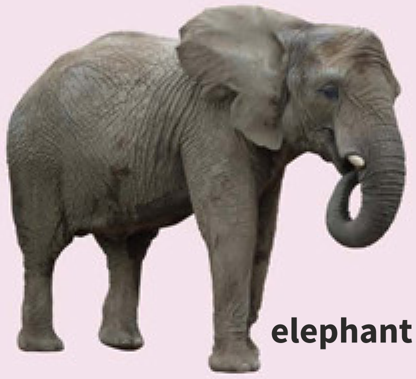
sheep


cow

goat

animal	produce	baby
horse	hair, meat	foal
cow	milk, leather, meat (beef)	calf
sheep	wool, meat (lamb)	lamb
pig	meat (pork, bacon, ham)	piglet
chicken / hen	eggs, meat (chicken)	chick
goat	milk, meat	kid

B Wild or zoo animals


elephant

monkey

snake

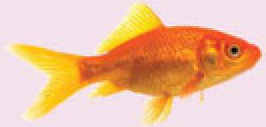
tiger

lion

giraffe

C Pets

These animals are often **pets**.


fish

cat

rabbit

parrot

A parrot is a **bird**.

dog

tortoise

D Expressions

Take your dog **for a walk** every day**.**
You must **feed your animals** and **give them water** every day.
Do you have any pets?

Exercises

31.1 Complete these sentences.

1 A *tortoise*........ goes to sleep in winter.
2 A .... has a very long neck.
3 .... and .... are birds.
4 .... and .... are large cats.
5 You can ride a .... and an ....
6 .... swim and .... fly.
7 .... are farm birds.
8 .... are very good at hopping and jumping.
9 Don't forget to .... the cat and to .... it some water.
10 I .... my dog for a walk every day before school.

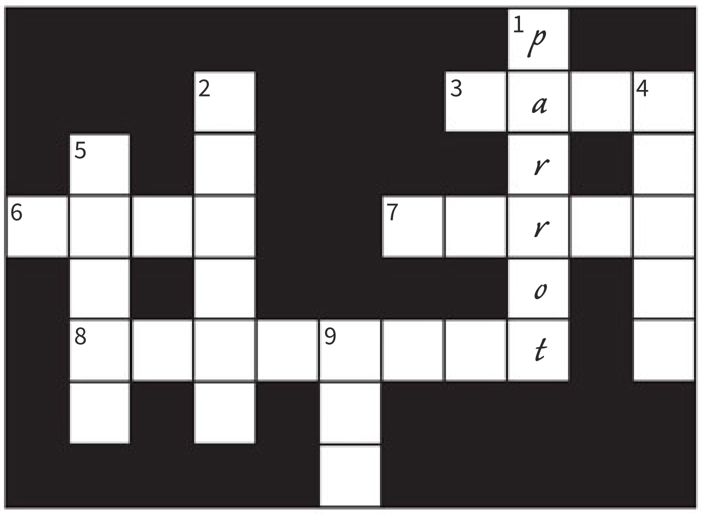
31.2 Match the animal with its meat and with its baby.

animal	*meat*	*baby*
goat	lamb	calf
sheep	chicken	piglet
cow	pork	lamb
hen	beef	kid
pig	goat	chick

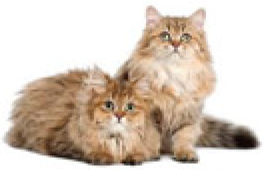
31.3 Look at the animals opposite. Find three animals which:

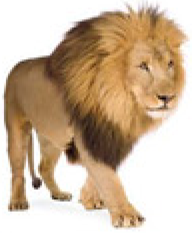
1 eat meat. *lions,*..
2 give us things that we wear. ....
3 produce their babies in eggs. ....
4 we can eat. ....

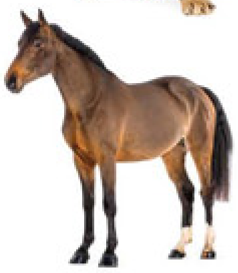
31.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

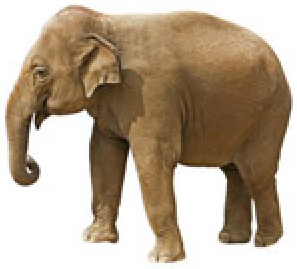


Across

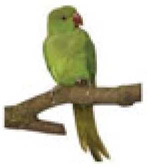
3


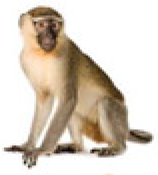
6


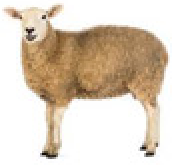
7


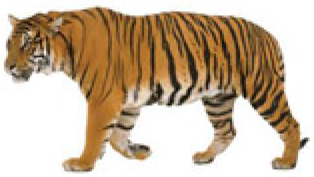
8


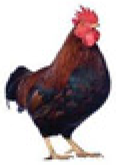
Down

1


2


4


5


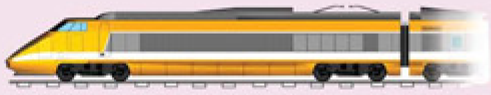
9


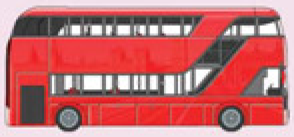
31.5 There are 18 different animals in the pictures on the opposite page. Close the book. How many of these animals can you remember?

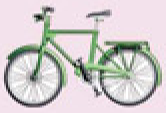
32 Travelling

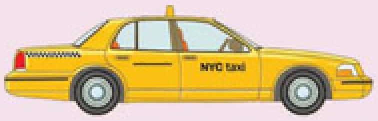
A

Types of transport

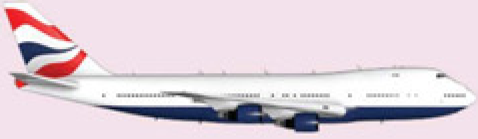

train

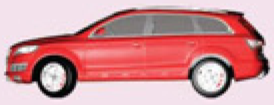

bus

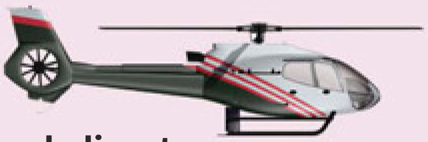

bicycle / bike

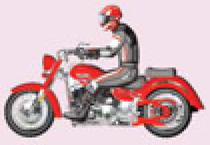


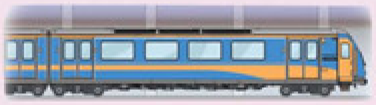
taxi

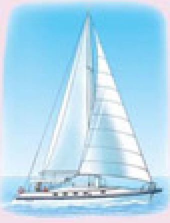

(aero)plane

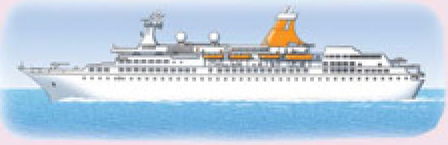

car


helicopter


motorbike / motorcycle

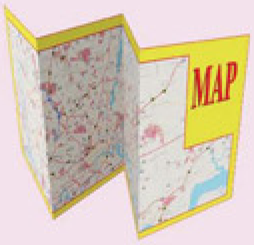

underground


boat

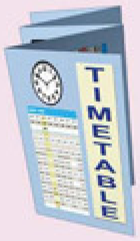

ship

B

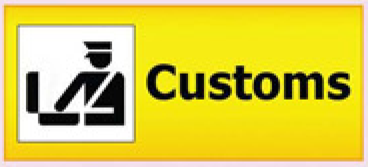
Useful travel words



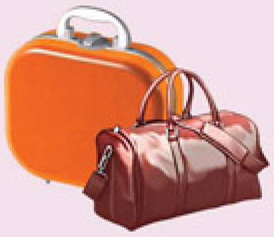
map

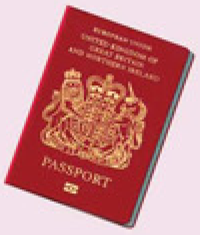


timetable



customs


luggage



passport

Can I have a **single** / **return** (ticket) to Barcelona, please?
(single = Madrid to Barcelona; return = Madrid to Barcelona and back to Madrid)
I'd like to **book** / **reserve a seat in advance** [to make sure you have a seat].

Common mistakes

Was the journey long? [NOT Was the ~~travel~~ long?]

C

By train

The train **arriving at** platform 3 is the 16:50 train to Paris.
The Edinburgh train **departs** / **leaves from** platform 6. (*departs* is formal)
Is there a **restaurant car** on this train?
A: Do I have to **change trains** for Toulouse? [get off one train and get onto another]
B: No, it's a **direct** train.

D

By plane

You have to **check in** two hours before the plane **takes off** [leaves the ground].
Online check-in is also possible. / You can **check in online.**
Give your **boarding card** to the **flight attendant** when you get on the plane.
Have a good **flight**.
The plane **lands** in New York at 14:30.
After landing you have to **go through customs**.

Common mistakes

I went through customs but nobody checked my passport [NOT ~~controlled~~ my passport].

E

By car

We **hired a car** for a week. We had to **fill** it **up with petrol**.
Can I **give** you a **lift**? I'm going into town.
(See **Unit 18: Holidays** and **Unit 49: Moving** for more useful words about travelling.)

Exercises

32.1 Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right.

1 land	a a place to eat on a train
2 direct	b bags and suitcases
3 restaurant car	c it says when trains depart and arrive
4 ship	d you do not have to change to a different plane / train / bus
5 timetable	e planes do this at airports
6 platform	f it travels on water, e.g. the *Titanic*
7 luggage	g where you stand when you are waiting for a train

32.2 Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

1 A single ticket takes you to a place and back again. *False. A return ticket takes you to a place and back again.*

2 At customs, people check what you bring into the country.

3 Planes land at the beginning of a journey.

4 You need a boarding card to get off a plane.

5 Hiring a car is the same as buying a car.

6 If you give someone a lift they travel in your car.

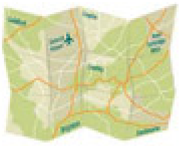
32.3 Here are directions from the airport to John's house.

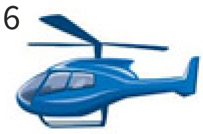
When you arrive at the airport, take a number 10 bus to the station. Then take a train to Bigtown. The journey takes half an hour and you get off the train at the second stop. Take a taxi from the station to John's house.

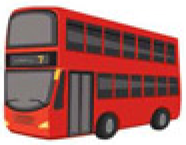
Now write directions from the train station to your house.

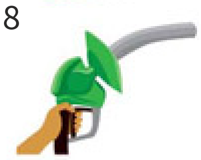
32.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

Across

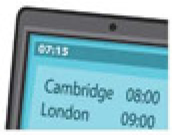
3


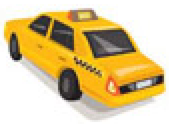
6


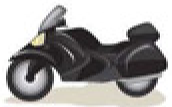
7


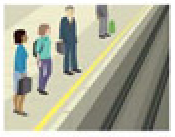
8


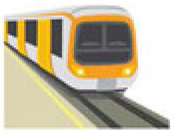
Down

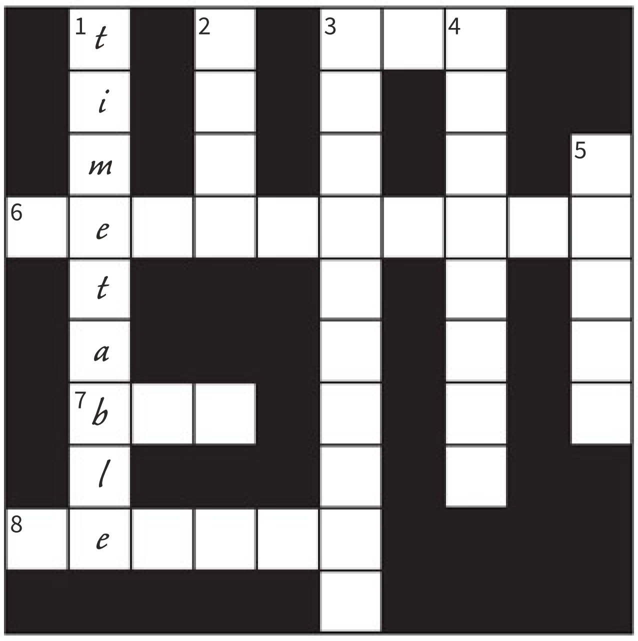
1


2


3


4


5




Over to you

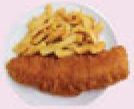
Make cards to test yourself. Write the word on one side of the card and a picture (or a definition or translation) on the other side. Look at the pictures (or definitions or translations). Can you remember the English words?

33 UK culture

A Special days

festival	date	what people do
Christmas	25th December	send Christmas cards, give presents, spend time with their families, decorate a **Christmas tree**, eat a lot
New Year's Eve / Hogmanay (Scotland)	31st December	sing and dance, toast the New Year
New Year's Day	1st January	a **bank holiday** [day when most organisations are closed]
Valentine's Day	14th February	send cards to boyfriend / girlfriend / husband / wife
Easter	dates vary	give children **Easter eggs** [chocolate eggs]
Halloween	31st October	children dress up, children knock at doors and ask for sweets
Bonfire Night	5th November	have a **bonfire** and **fireworks**

B Food



Traditional UK food is **fish and chips** and **roast beef and roast potatoes** [cooked in the **oven**] with **Yorkshire pudding** [dish made of flour, milk and eggs].

Chicken tikka masala [a kind of **curry**] comes from India, but is very popular in the UK**.**

C Education

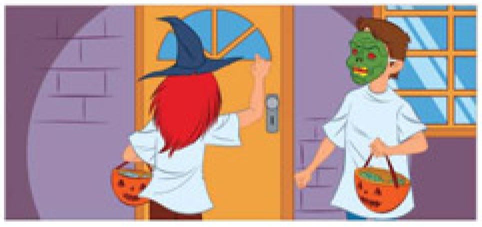
type of school	what it is
nursery school	for children aged 2-4
primary school	for children aged 5-11
secondary school	for children aged 12-18
state school	parents don't pay for children to go here
private school	parents pay for children to go here

D Politics

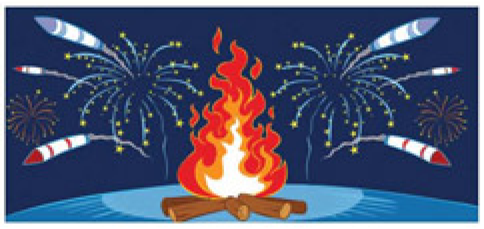
The UK has a **royal family**, with a **king** or a **queen**.
Political decisions are made at the **Houses of Parliament.**
The **Prime Minister** is the political leader of the UK.

Exercises

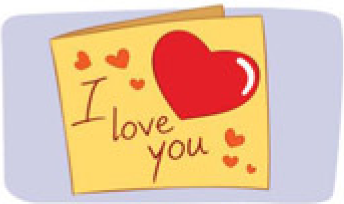
33.1 Which festivals do these pictures show?



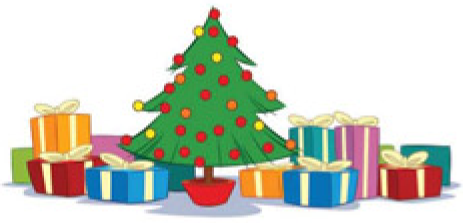
1 *Halloween* ....



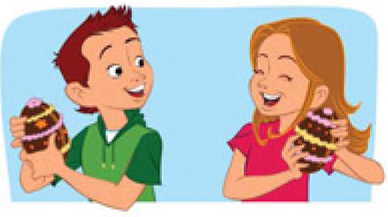
3 ....



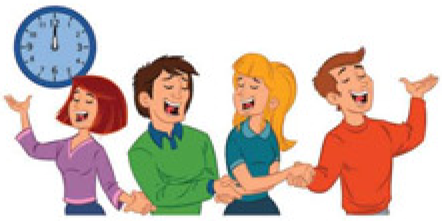
5 ....



2 ....

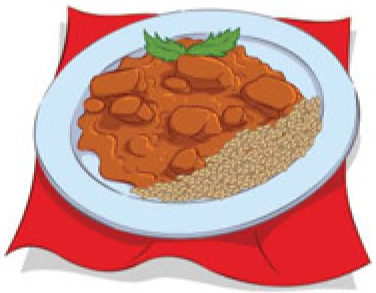


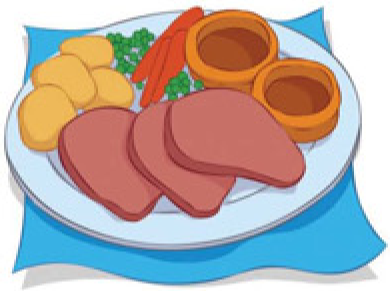
4 ....

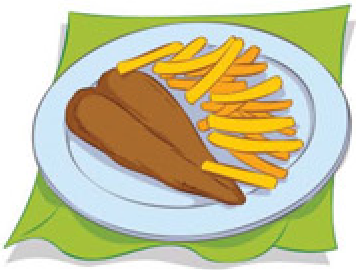


6 ....

33.2 Look at the pictures. Find 10 more words connected with food in the puzzle.







C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

33.3 Answer these questions about traditional UK food.

1 What do British people traditionally eat with fish? *chips*
2 Where does chicken tikka masala come from?
3 What is chicken tikka masala a kind of?
4 Do British people eat Yorkshire pudding after their main course?
5 In or on which part of the cooker do you make roast beef and roast potatoes?

33.4 Which kind of school do these British children go to?

1 Lily is seven. Her parents pay for her to go to school. *a private primary school*
2 Gabriel is 14. His school is free.
3 James and Ellie are three.
4 Mehmet is ten. His parents don't pay for him to go to school.
5 Nick is 16. His parents pay for him to go to school.

33.5 Answer these questions about politics in the UK.

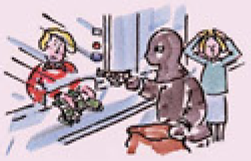
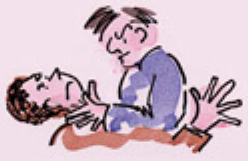
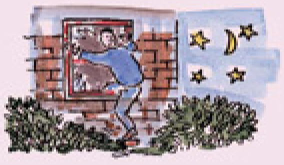
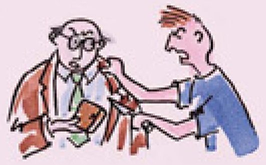
1 Who is Prime Minister at the moment?
2 Where does the Prime Minister work?
3 Who is head of the royal family at the moment?

Tip

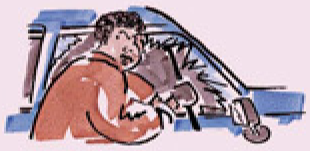
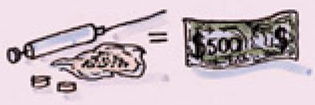
Learn about UK life by using the BBC Learning English website which has up-to-date articles and news stories: http://www.bbc.co.uk/learningenglish/

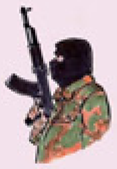
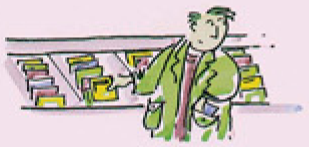
34 Crime

A Crimes and criminals

crime	**robbery**	**murder** /ˈmɜːdə/	**burglary** /ˈbɜːgləri/	**mugging** [attacking a person in a public place and stealing their money]
person	**a robber**	**a murderer**	**a burglar**	**a mugger**
verb	**to rob** somebody or a place (e.g. a bank)	**to murder** somebody	**to break into** a house / flat (break / broke / broken)	**to mug** somebody

crime	**car theft**	**drug dealing**	**terrorism**	**shoplifting**
person	**a car thief** /θiːf/	**a drug dealer**	**a terrorist**	**a shoplifter**
verb	**to steal** a car (steal / stole / stolen)	**to sell drugs** (sell / sold / sold)	**to attack** somebody or a place	**to steal** things from a shop

There was a **burglary** at the school last night.
John West **murdered** his wife.
There are a lot of **muggings** in the city centre.

The bank **was robbed** yesterday. My sister **was robbed** last week.

Common mistakes

A thief **steals** something (**steal** / **stole** / **stolen**).
Somebody **stole** my bicycle. [NOT Somebody ~~robbed~~ my bicycle.]

I **was robbed** last night. [NOT I was ~~stolen~~.]

B The law /lɔː/

A student **was arrested for** shoplifting this morning.
The police came to the school and spoke to his teacher.
The student has to **go to court** next week.
If he is **guilty** he will have to **pay a fine**. /ˈgɪlti/
If he is **innocent** he can go home. /ˈɪnəsənt/
I don't think he will **go to prison**.

C Other crime problems

Some **vandals** broke the windows in the telephone box.
[A vandal breaks and smashes things.]
We have a lot of **vandalism** in my town.
A lot of people **take drugs** nowadays.
Is **football hooliganism** a problem in your country? /ˈhuːlɪgənɪzm/
[A **football hooligan** is a person who goes to a football match and makes trouble.]

Exercises

34.1 What do we call someone …

1 who steals cars? *a car thief*
2 who kills someone?
3 who steals things from shops?
4 who robs people's houses and flats?
5 who attacks someone in the street and steals their money?
6 who sells illegal drugs?

34.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 There were a lot of football h *ooligans*.................. near the stadium.
2 The police officer arr .... her for shoplifting.
3 Some van .... destroyed all the flowers in the park.
4 He had to pay a fi .... of £50 for parking his car in the wrong place.
5 There are a lot of bur .... in this part of the city, so always close the windows.
6 The police made a mistake; she was inn .... She did not steal the money.
7 A group of terr .... have attacked the airport.
8 He murdered his wife. He was in pr .... for 20 years.

34.3 True or false?

1 A burglar goes into someone's house and steals things. *True*
2 Vandals take people's money.
3 A murderer kills someone.
4 A car thief is someone who drives very badly or dangerously.
5 If you are guilty it means you are the person who did the crime.

34.4 Choose the right word to complete each sentence.

1 My brother was [✓ *robbed*] / *stolen* yesterday.
2 Someone *robbed* / *stole* my bike last night.
3 My local bank has been *robbed* / *stolen*.
4 Who has *robbed* / *stolen* my pen?
5 Someone *robbed* / *stole* our TV when we were on holiday.
6 Where were you when your keys were *robbed* / *stolen*?

Over to you

Give your opinion. What do you think should happen to these people?

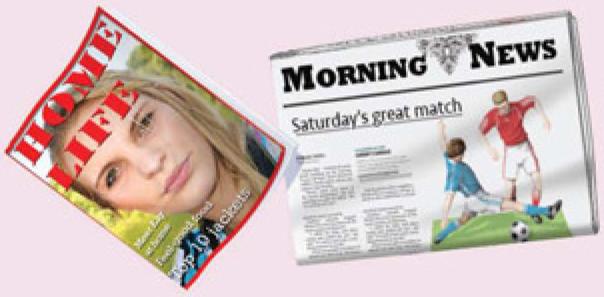
1 A man murdered his wife and three children. *He should go to prison for 30 years.*
2 A student with no money stole a book from a bookshop.
3 A woman sold some drugs to a teenager.
4 Some terrorists attacked a bus and killed five people.
5 A woman parked her car and blocked the traffic.
6 A teenager damaged some trees in the park.

35 The media

A Radio and TV programmes

The **news** is on TV at 6 o'clock every night. [important things that happen]
Do you watch **soaps** / **soap operas**? *Home and Away* is my favourite. [Soaps are stories about people's lives. They are often on TV every day.]
I like **nature programmes** best. [programmes about animals, birds, etc.]
I watched a **documentary** last night about drugs and crime. [programme looking at a social problem or question]
In **talk shows**, people talk about themselves or discuss topics with an interviewer.
The children watch **cartoons** on Saturday mornings. (For example, Disney films with animals that talk. See **Unit 24: Cinema**.)
My brother likes watching **reality TV** [programmes that film real people living their lives, not actors].
I always watch **sports programmes**.

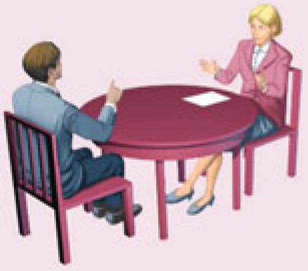
B Newspapers and magazines

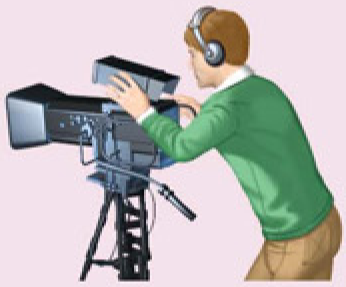


In most countries there are **morning** (**news**)**papers** and **evening** (**news**)**papers**.
Every month, I buy a **magazine**.
My mother buys **women's magazines**.
I like **news magazines** like *Newsweek* and *Time*.
In most magazines and newspapers there are lots of **adverts** / **advertisements** [something that tries to persuade people to buy something].

Other types of magazines: **sports magazines** / **computer magazines** / **teenage magazines**. (See **Unit 25: Free time at home**.)

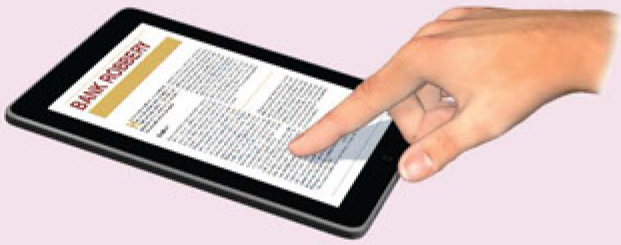
C People and the media





There was **an interview with** the US President on TV last night.
The **reporters** are outside the film star's house. [people who go out and get the news stories where they happen]
My sister is a **journalist**; she writes for *The Oxford Times* newspaper. [person who writes articles]

D Expressions



You can **read newspapers** or **watch TV online**.
What's your **favourite TV programme**?
What's on TV tonight?
Is it OK if I **change the channel**?

Common mistakes

The news is on now. [NOT The news ~~are~~ on now.]

Exercises

35.1 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 Ten million people watch this *programme* every week. It's very popular.
2 The news .... on channel 3 at 9 o'clock every night.
3 There was a .... about traffic problems in cities on TV last night.
4 I saw a .... programme about birds in Antarctica.
5 My sister is 13; she reads a.................................. magazine every week. She likes the stories about boys.
6 With my mobile I can read the sports news ....
7 I'd like to watch the news now. Is it OK if I .... the channel?
8 Did you see the .... with the Prime Minister last night?

35.2 Match the left-hand column with the type of programme on the right.

1 Talking about family problems
2 Film of elephants in Africa
3 Football cup final
4 Reports from all over the world
5 Maria decides not to marry Philip
6 Ten people in a house - they cannot leave or talk to anyone outside

a International news
b Sports programme
c Reality TV programme
d Soap (opera)
e Nature programme
f Talk show

35.3 What do you call ...

1 a person who goes out and gets stories for newspapers? *a reporter*
2 a person who writes articles in newspapers and magazines?
3 a newspaper you can buy every day after about 5 pm?
4 a programme with stories made from lots of pictures?
5 a programme on TV about animals, birds, etc?
6 something in a magazine or on TV that tries to sell something?
7 something like CNN or Sky Sports?
8 a meeting when a reporter asks a person questions for TV or a newspaper?

35.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

1 Do you read a morning or an evening newspaper?
2 Do you read newspapers online?
3 What kinds of magazine do you read?
4 What will you watch on TV tonight?
5 What is your favourite TV channel?
6 How many hours of TV do you watch every day?
7 What are your favourite kinds of TV programmes?
8 Do you ever watch TV online?
9 Do you like watching adverts on TV?

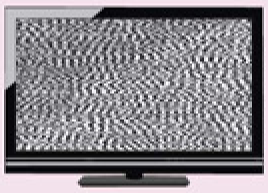
Over to you

Go to www.bbc.co.uk/learningenglish Listen to programmes and download podcasts that interest you.

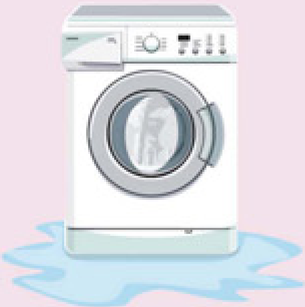
36 Problems at home and work

A At home

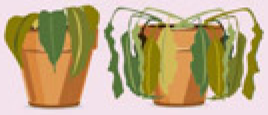
The TV **isn't working**. Can you **repair** it?



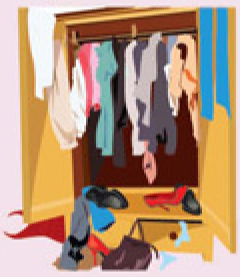
The washing machine is **broken**. We need to **mend** it.



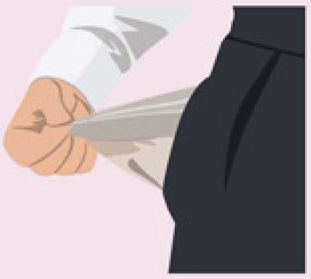
The plants **are dying**.
Did you forget to **water** them?



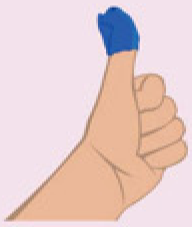
The room is **untidy**. We must **tidy** it.



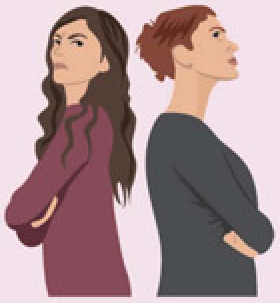
I've **lost** my keys. Will you help me **look for** them?



You've **cut** your finger.
You should **put on a plaster**.

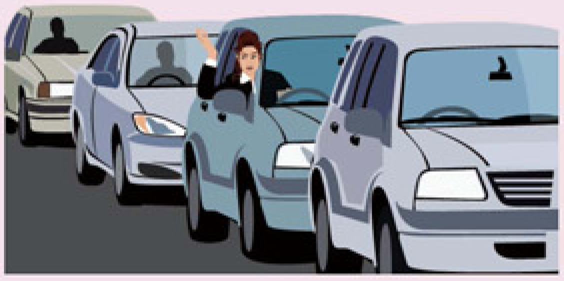


You've **had a row** /ra / **with** a friend. Will you **apologise** [say 'I'm sorry']?

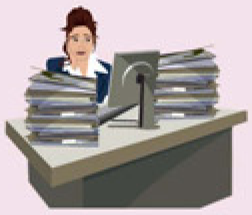


B At work

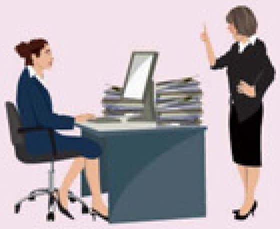
Chloe **had a bad day** at work yesterday. She was **late for** work.



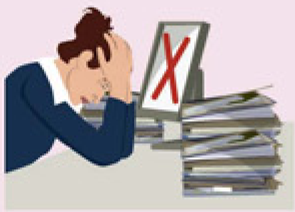
She had **too much work** to do.



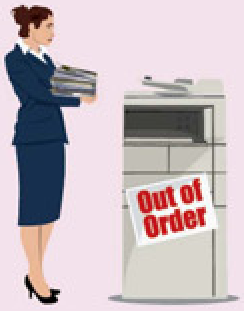
Her colleague was **in a bad mood**.



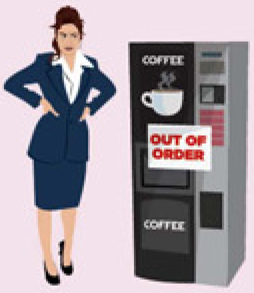
Her **computer crashed**.



The photocopier was **out of order**.



The coffee machine **wasn't working**.



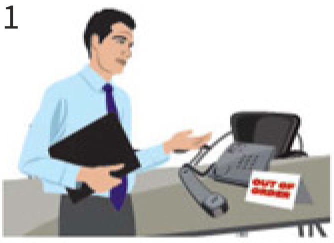
Tip

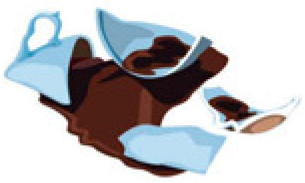
When you need to make a list of things to do, make it in English, e.g.

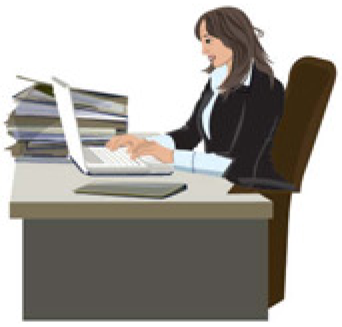
Mend my bike *Water the plants*
Tidy my desk

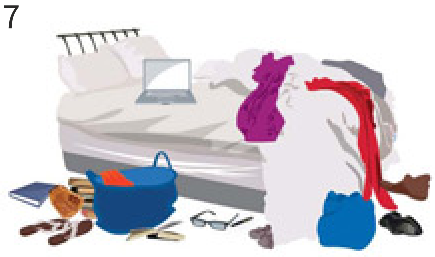
Exercises

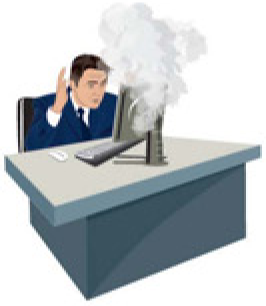
36.1 Look at the pictures. What is the problem?

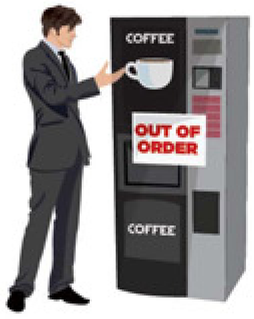
1


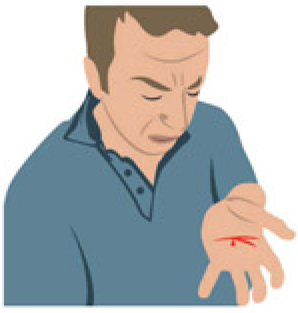
3


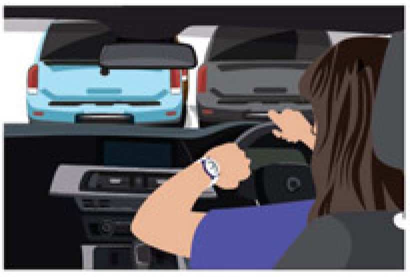
5


7


2


4


6


8


1 *The phone isn't working*
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

36.2 Write down three nouns that can go with these words:

1 broken *window / cup / glass*
2 cut ....
3 untidy ....
4 late for ....
5 a .... that isn't working
6 too much ....

36.3 Have you ever had these problems? Number each one 0-3 (0 = never, 1 = once or twice, 2 = quite often, 3 = frequently).

1 a TV that doesn't work *2*
2 dying plants
3 a cut finger
4 being late for work or school
5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood
6 a coffee machine that isn't working
7 a broken washing machine
8 an untidy bedroom
9 a row with a friend
10 your computer crashes
11 lost keys
12 too much work

36.4 Look at Chloe's problems in B. What could she do?

She was late for work - get up earlier

36.5 Can you think of four problems that you or a friend have had recently? Write them down in English. Use a dictionary to help you.

....
....

37 Global problems

A Natural disasters

There was a **hurricane** / **snowstorm** / **forest fire** there last year.
hurricane: a very strong wind
snowstorm: a lot of snow and wind at the same time
forest fire: when it is very dry and trees catch fire

San Francisco has had a lot of **earthquakes** [when the earth moves].
There were serious **floods** in the north yesterday. [too much water]
The river often **floods** after heavy rain. [water goes over the river banks]

B Man-made problems

There are too many people in some places. Cities are too **crowded**.
Many people are:
poor: they do not have enough money
hungry: they do not have enough food
homeless: they do not have a place to live
unemployed: they do not have a job

There is a lot of **pollution** in many places. [when the air, water or earth is dirty and bad for people, plants and animals]
The river is **polluted** and a lot of fish have died.
The **air pollution** is very bad today.

The American **War** of Independence started in 1775 and ended in 1783. [fighting between two or more countries or nationalities] It lasted for eight years.

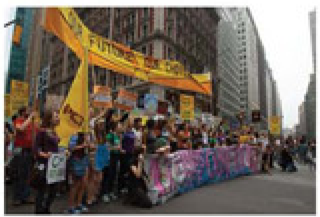
The teachers are **on strike** today. [when people refuse to work because, for example, they want more money]

He had a **car crash** on the way to work.

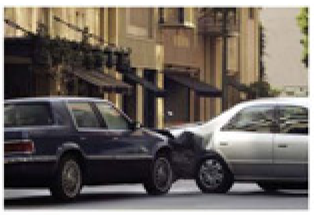
The **traffic jams** in the city are terrible in the **rush hour** [times when everyone is going to work].

Exercises

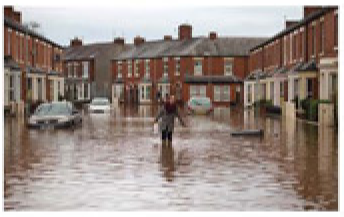
37.1 What problems can you see in the pictures?



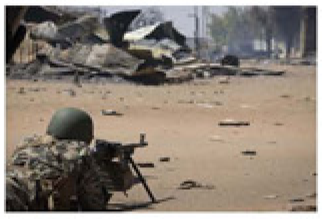
1 *strike* ....



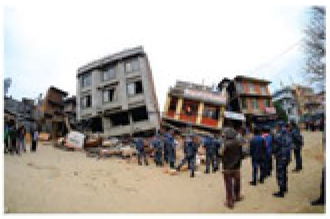
2 ....



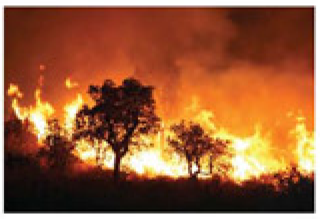
3 ....



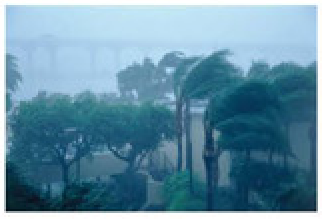
4 ....



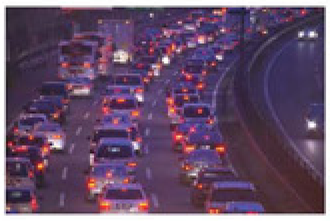
5 ....



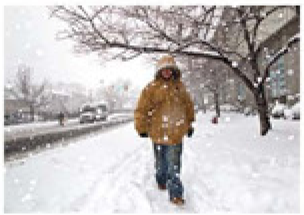
6 ....



7 ....



8 ....



9 ....

37.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 air	a fire
2 traffic	b people
3 rush	c pollution
4 forest	d quake
5 crowded	e jam
6 homeless	f hour
7 car	g cities
8 earth	h crash

37.3 Find the words that match these definitions.

1 a very strong wind *a hurricane*
2 so many cars on the road that they can't easily move
3 a street with a large number of people
4 when two cars hit one another
5 without work
6 the time of day when there is most traffic
7 without enough to eat
8 when a lot of trees burn

37.4 Look at the opposite page and find …

1 two problems on the roads. *traffic jam, car crash*
2 two things that pollute the air. ....
3 two problems that can be political. ....
4 three problems that are caused by the weather. ....
5 four adjectives that can describe people. ....

37.5 Fill the gaps with a word from the opposite page.

1 Cars make air *pollution* worse in towns.
2 Their wages were very low so the workers went on ....
3 My great-grandfather died in the First World ....
4 Jack had a .... last year but fortunately no one was hurt.
5 Japan often has .... and Siberia often has ....
6 When people are .... they sometimes sleep on the streets.
7 I hate driving in the city in the ....
8 The water is so .... that people cannot drink it.

Tip

Try to listen to or watch the news in English every day.
Make a note of new words about global problems that you find.

38

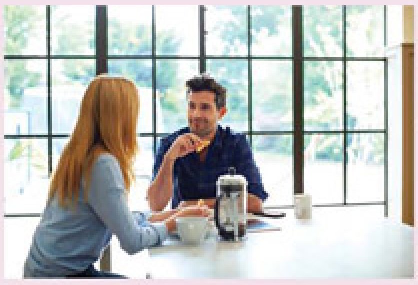
Have / had / had

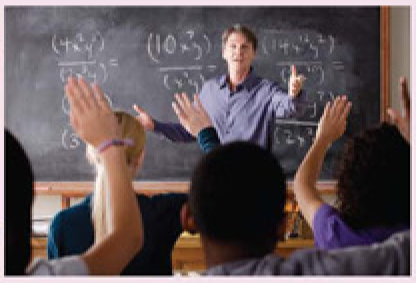
A

What can you have?

You can ...

have breakfast **lunch** **dinner** **a meal**
have a party **a meeting** **a game** (of football, etc.)
have a lesson **an exam** **homework**
have a cup of tea / coffee **a drink** **an ice cream** **some cheese**
have a shower /ˈʃaʊə/ **a bath** **a swim**





B

Expressions with have

Is that your camera? Can I **have a look** [look at it]?
Is that your bicycle? Can I **have a go** [ride it]?
Goodbye! **Have a good journey** [somebody is going away]!
Do you **have a moment** [have some time]? Can I **have a word with** you? [speak to you]
We always **have a good time** in our English lessons. [fun; we enjoy them]
I'm going to **have my hair cut**. See you later. Can you meet me at the hairdresser's?
I want to learn to ski but I **don't have the time**.

C

Have + got (speaking / informal) = have (writing / formal)

I've **got** three sisters. **Have** you **got** any brothers and sisters?
My house is big. **It's got** five bedrooms and three bathrooms.
We'**ve got** ten minutes before the train goes.
Have you **got** a pen?
(*in a shop*) A: Do you sell postcards? B: Yes, but we **haven't got** any at the moment.
I'**ve got** a problem. Can I have a word with you?
I'**ve got a cold** / **a headache**. /ˈhedeɪk/

D

Have got to (speaking / informal) = have to (writing / formal)

We use **have** (**got**) **to** when the situation means you are obliged to do something.
The museum's not free. You **have to** / you'**ve got to** pay $10 to go in.
All students **have to do** an exam.
My sister needs the car, so I'**ve got to** walk to school every day this week.

Common mistakes

In the past, we use **had to**, without 'got'. When I was a student, I **had to** write an essay every week [NOT I had ~~got~~ to write an essay].

Tip

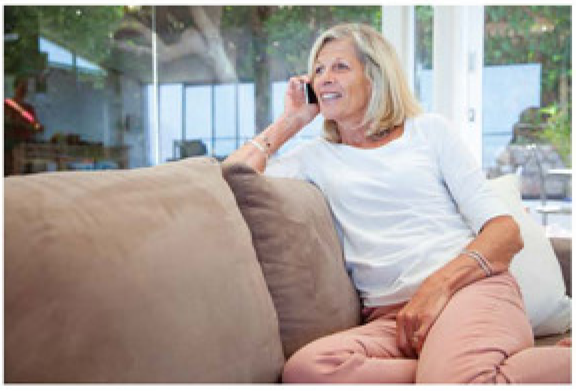
Group expressions together which belong to the same topic, for example, **have** + words for meals (*breakfast, lunch, dinner*), **have** + 'study' words (*an exam, a test, a lesson, a class*), etc.

Exercises

38.1 **Fill the gaps in the sentences. Use words from A and B opposite.**

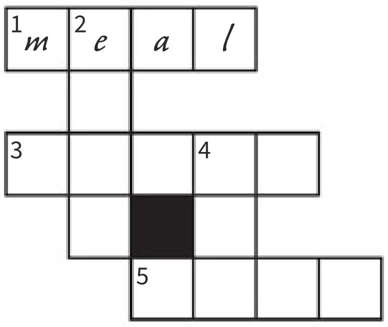
1 I always have coffee.................... in the morning.
2 I have a tennis .... every Saturday morning. My teacher is excellent.
3 Do you want to have a game of .... ?
4 Evelyn's having a .... on Saturday. Are you going?
5 Do you want to have a .... ? The bathroom's just here.
6 I have an .... tomorrow, so I have to study tonight.
7 We must have a .... to talk about these problems.
8 I'm going to the cafeteria to have a .... Do you want to come?
9 The hotel has a swimming pool, so we can have a .... every day.
10 We can have .... before the film, or we can eat after it.

38.2 **Correct the mistakes.**



1 Please phone Grandma when you have ~~the~~ moment. a
2 Scarlett has gone to the hairdresser's to have cut her hair.
3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a going?
4 I want to have some words with my teacher after the lesson.
5 Mum didn't have the times to go to the shop today.
6 They don't have got any cake in the café today.

38.3 **Complete the crossword.**



Across
1 You have it in a restaurant.
3 People often have one on their birthday.
5 Do you want to have a .... of tennis?

Down
2 You have it at school or university.
4 If you don't like coffee, you can have ....

38.4 **What do you say?**

1 (*someone is thirsty*) Why don't you have a ....drink.................... ?
2 (*someone is going away*) Bye! Have a .... !
3 (*someone sneezes* [*Atishoo!*] *and has a red nose*) Oh! Have you got a .... ?
4 (*someone has a new camera*) Is that new? Can I have a .... ?

38.5 **Answer the questions.**

1 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
2 What time do you have English lessons?
3 What do you have for lunch?
4 Do you have to go to lessons every day?
5 How many pens have you got with you now?
6 Do you always have a good time in your English classes?

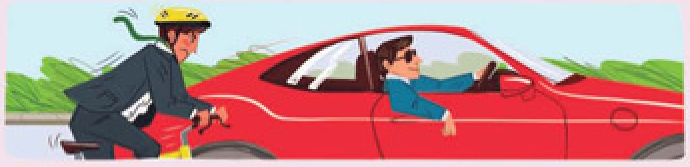
39 Go / went / gone

A

Go

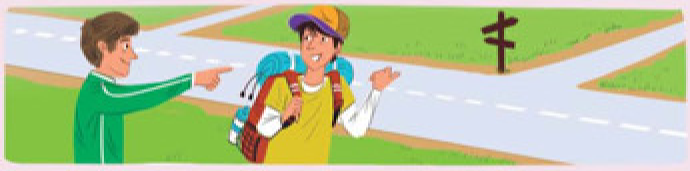
Go means to move from one place to another**.**

I **go** to work **by** bike. My brother **goes by** car.
We **went** to Paris last summer.
Is this train **going** to Granada?



Shall we **go** to the swimming pool today?

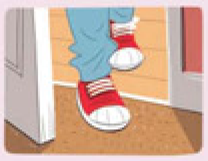
Where **does** this road **go**?



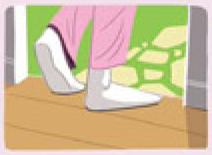
B

Go + prepositions

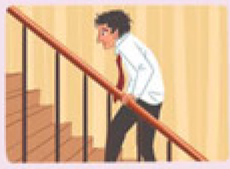
Ethan **went in**(**to**) his room and shut the door.



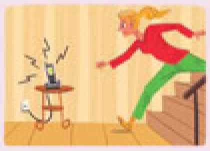
Yuko **went out of** the house and **into** the garden.



Jacob was tired. He **went up** the stairs slowly**.**



The phone was ringing. She **went down** the stairs quickly**.**



C

Future plans

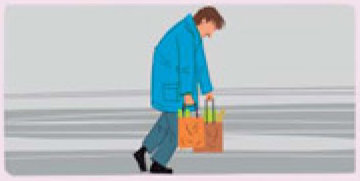
Be going to is often used to talk about future plans**.**

Jan is **going to study** maths at university.
We're **going to visit** my aunt in New York soon.
I'm **going to learn** five new words every day.

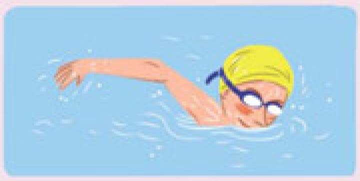
D

Expressions Go + *-ing* for activities

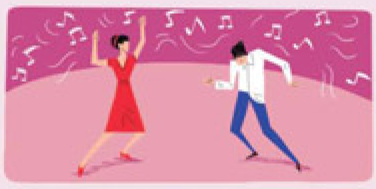
Go is often used with ***-ing*** for different activities**.**



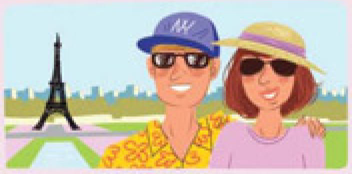
I hate **going shopping**.



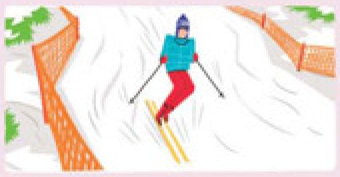
I usually **go swimming** in the morning.



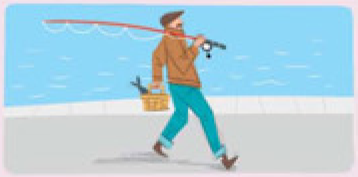
Let's **go dancing**.



Do you like **going sightseeing** when you are on holiday?



Hans **goes skiing** every winter.



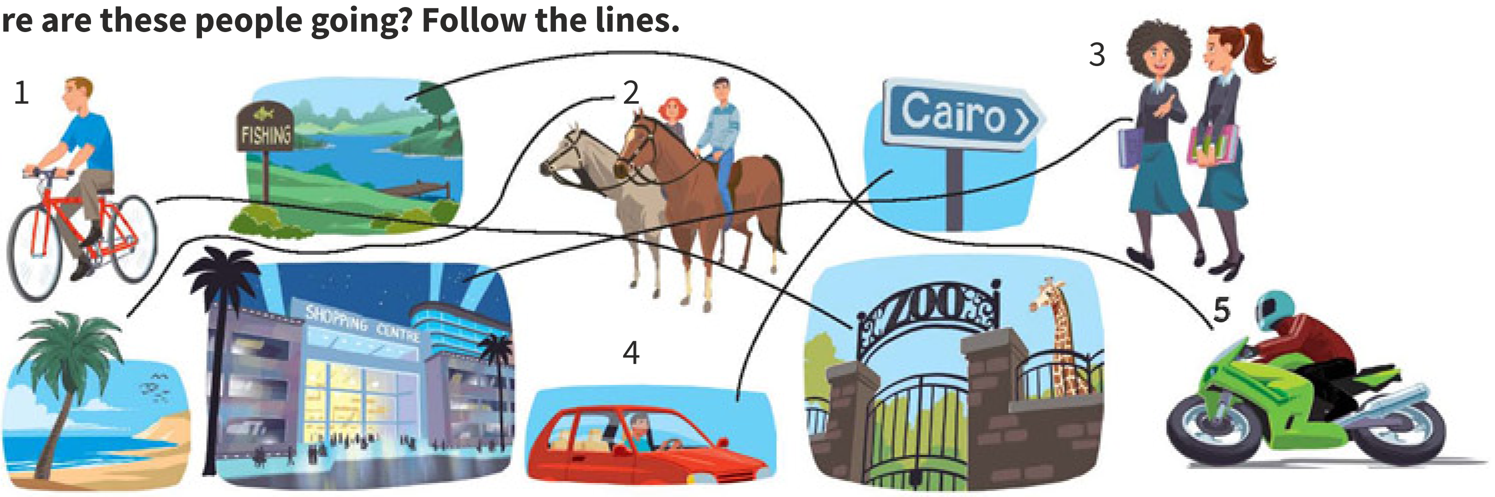
Carter is **going fishing** today**.**

Common mistakes

Let's **go swimming** and then **go shopping**. [NOT Let's ~~go to / for swimming~~ and then ~~go to / for shopping~~.]
I **go there** every week. I don't want to **go anywhere / somewhere** else. [NOT I ~~go to there~~ every week. I don't want to ~~go to anywhere / somewhere~~ else.]
I must **go home** at 10 o'clock. [NOT I must **go** ~~to / at~~ **home** at 10 o'clock.]

Exercises

39.1 **Where are these people going? Follow the lines.**



1 Mateo *is going to the zoo.*
2 The Sharps
3 Zoe and Penelope
4 Asad
5 Lars

39.2 **Write about Victoria's New Year Resolutions.**

This year I'm going to:

stop eating chocolate
pass my driving test
learn Spanish
watch less TV
keep my room tidy

1 This year *Victoria is going to stop eating chocolate.*
2 This year
3 This year
4 This year
5 This year

39.3 **Look at the activities in D opposite. Which do you do on holiday? Write sentences.**

I usually go shopping on holiday.

39.4 **Where do trains, buses and roads go to from your town?**

From Cambridge, trains go to London and to Norwich.

39.5 **Are these sentences correct? If not, correct them.**

1 It's time to go at home now.
X It's time to go home now.
2 Mum is going for shopping this afternoon.
3 I'm going to London by car tomorrow.
4 I love Paris. Did you go to there last year?
5 Alexei is going to home at 4 o'clock.
6 We always go to the same café. Let's go to somewhere different today.
7 Excuse me, please. Where does this bus go?
8 I go to swimming every Sunday morning.
9 We're going sightsee today.
10 Jo went down to the top of the hill.
11 Let's go to fish today.
12 She went out off the shop.
13 Please go away. I'm tired.
14 Would you like to go to home now?

Over to you

Look in an English magazine or newspaper. Find five examples of *go*. Write them down in your vocabulary notebook.

40

Do / did / done

A

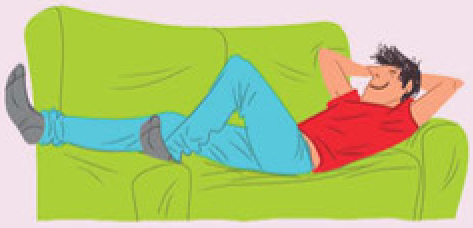
Do as auxiliary

questions	**Do** you **like** tennis?	**Did** they **like** the film?
short answers	Yes, I **do**.	Yes, they **did**.
	So **does** Matteo.	So **did** I.
negatives	He **doesn't play** well.	Leo **didn't see** it.

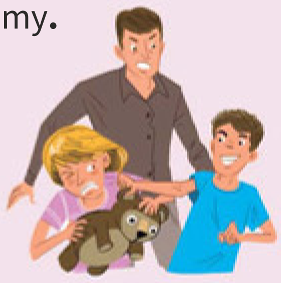
B

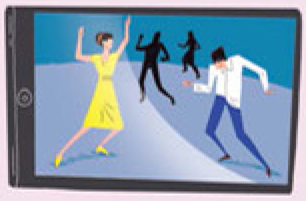
What are you doing?

Do as a general verb:
On Saturdays I
usually **do** nothing.
I just relax.



Don't do that, Tommy**.**





What **are** the people in the picture **doing**?
They're dancing.

C

What do you do?

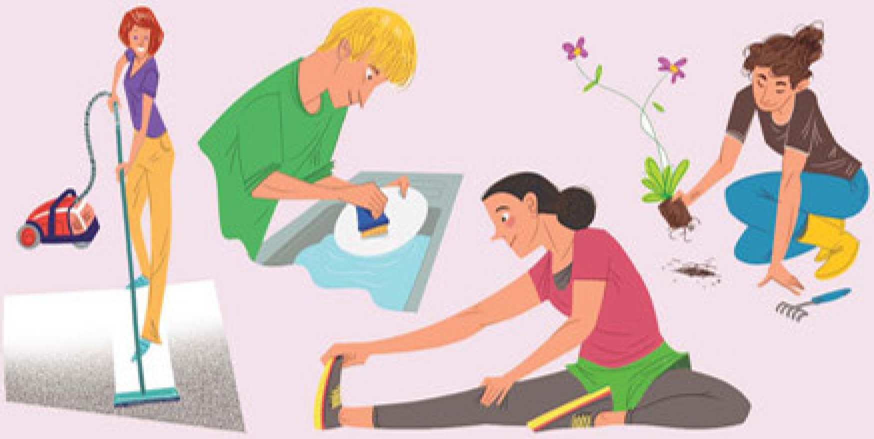
A: What **do** you **do**? [What is your job?]
B: I'm a student. / I'm a hairdresser.

A: What **does** your wife **do**? [What's your wife's job?]
B: She's a doctor. / She's a teacher.
(See **Unit 14: Jobs**.)

D

Do + activity

do the housework
do the gardening
do the washing
do the washing-up
do your homework
do some exercises
do business with
do your best



A: Did you **do the washing** this morning?
B: No, I'm going to **do** it later.

Our company **does a lot of business with** the US.

The homework is very difficult - just **do your best**.

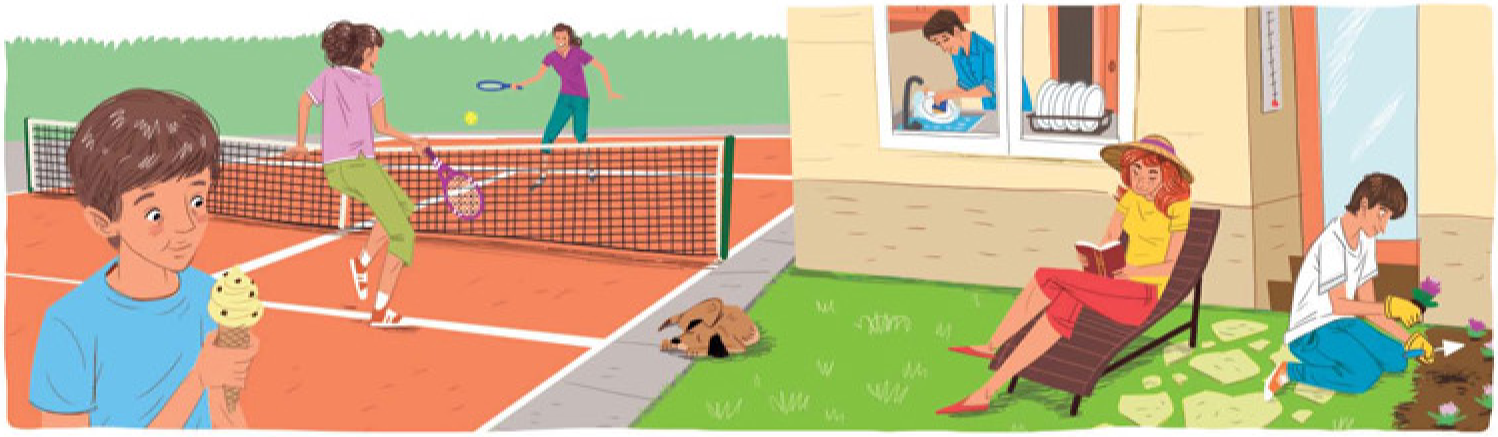
Tip

Make a note of any expressions with *do* that you find when you are reading in English.

(See **Unit 41** for the contrast between *do* and *make*.)

Exercises

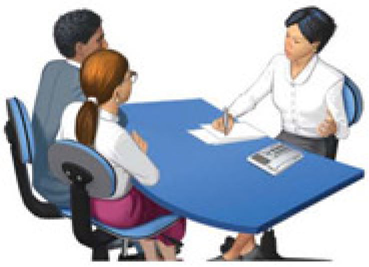
40.1 Write questions and answers about the people in the picture.



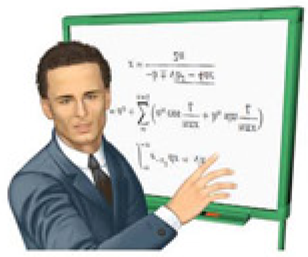
1 (the boy) *What is the boy doing? He's eating an ice cream.*
2 (the girls)
3 (the dog)
4 (the man in the house)
5 (the woman)
6 (the man in the garden)

40.2 Write questions and answers about the jobs of the people in the pictures.

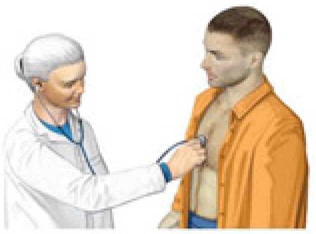
1 Lara Brown



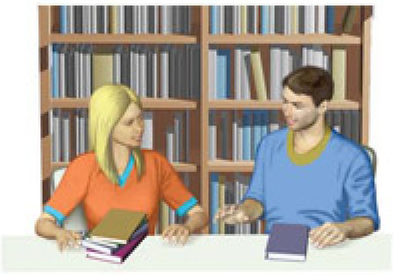
2 Lee Atkins



3 Sophie Hicks



4 Cooper and Hailey



1 *What does Lara Brown do? She's a secretary.*
2
3
4

40.3 Write questions about what the people in Exercise 40.2 did this morning. Answer the questions using the correct form of the phrases in the box.

talk to five patients ~~teach three lessons~~ write an essay go to a meeting

1 *What did Lee Atkins do? He taught three lessons.*
2
3
4

40.4 Look at the *do* expressions in D. Write sentences using these activities.

I do a lot of housework but I never do the gardening.

40.5 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

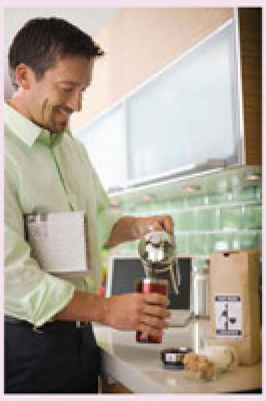
ANNA: Where did you ~~went~~ on your holidays? To Wales? *go*
PAVEL: No, we don't go to Wales this year. We went to Scotland.
ANNA: Do your grandmother lives in Scotland?
PAVEL: No, she don't but my uncle do.

41 Make / made / made

A

Make …

Dad is **making some coffee**.



Mum is **making dinner**.

I'll **make some tea** / **hot chocolate**. /ˈtʃɒklət/
I **make breakfast** / **lunch** / **dinner** every day.

He's **making a photocopy**.

She's **making a film** / **video**.

B

It makes me (feel) …

Going by train always **makes me** (**feel**) tired.
My friend called me stupid. It **made me** (**feel**) angry.
That film **made me** (**feel**) sad.

C

Expressions

You use **make** NOT ~~do~~ in these expressions:
I **made a mistake** in the exercise.
I want to **make an appointment** with the doctor. [fix a time to see him/her]
When I get up I **make my bed**.
The children are **making a noise**.
Yes, and they are **making a mess** in the living room!
I love your new dress - you **made a** good **choice**.

Common mistakes

You **do** homework [NOT ~~make homework~~]. You **take** or **do** an **exam** [NOT ~~make an exam~~].
You **take** a **photo** [NOT ~~make a photo~~]. You **do** the **washing** [NOT ~~make the washing~~].

Exercises

41.1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *make*.

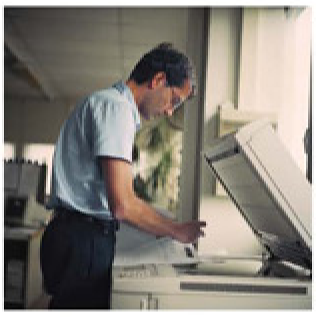
1 I always *make*.................. a lot of mistakes when I speak English.
2 Our neighbours had a party last night. They .... a lot of noise.
3 I am .... dinner for my parents this evening.
4 What do you think, the silver car or the white one? We must .... our choice today.
5 I .... an appointment with the doctor for you. It's at 5 o'clock.
6 Craig is in the kitchen. He is .... a cup of tea.

41.2 Complete the sentences with *make(s) / made me feel* + an adjective from the box.

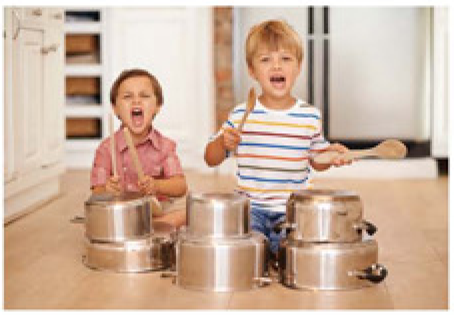
sick tired ~~sad~~ happy angry

1 That film about the war *made me feel sad*..............................
2 Long lessons always ....
3 She was horrible to me; it ....
4 It's a lovely song. It ....
5 That meal was horrible. It ....

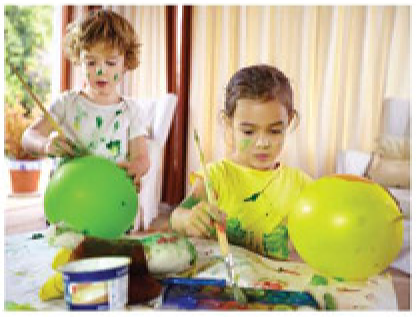
41.3 What are these people doing? Complete the sentences using *make*.



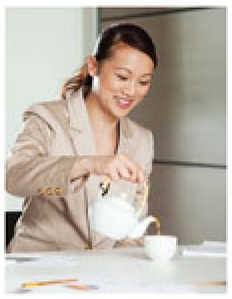
1 He's *making a photocopy*..........



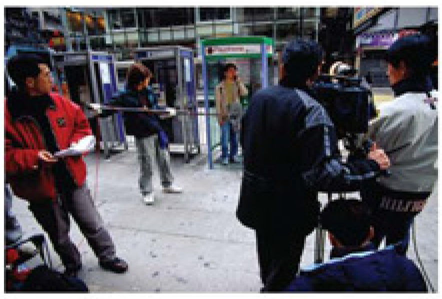
3 The little boys are ....
....



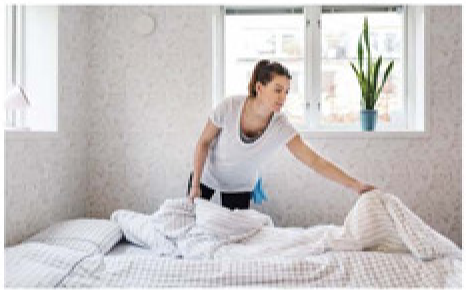
5 The children are ....
....



2 She's ....
....



4 They're ....
....



6 She is ....
....

41.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

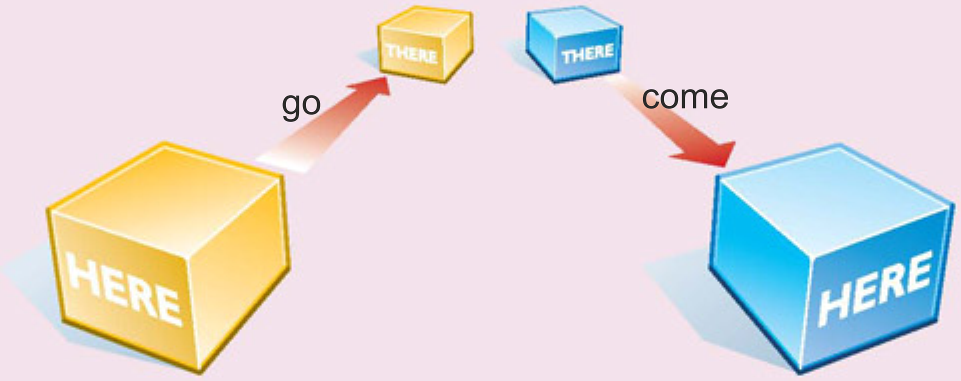
1 I have to ~~make~~ my homework. *I have to do my homework.*
2 Can I make a photo of you?
3 He's 25 but he never makes his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
4 Are you making an exam tomorrow?
5 Have you made your homework yet?

Over to you

Make a page for expressions with *make* and do in your vocabulary notebook. Make two columns - one with the heading *make* and the other with the heading *do*. Write down all the *make* and *do* expressions you know in the appropriate columns. Add new expressions to the page as you meet them.

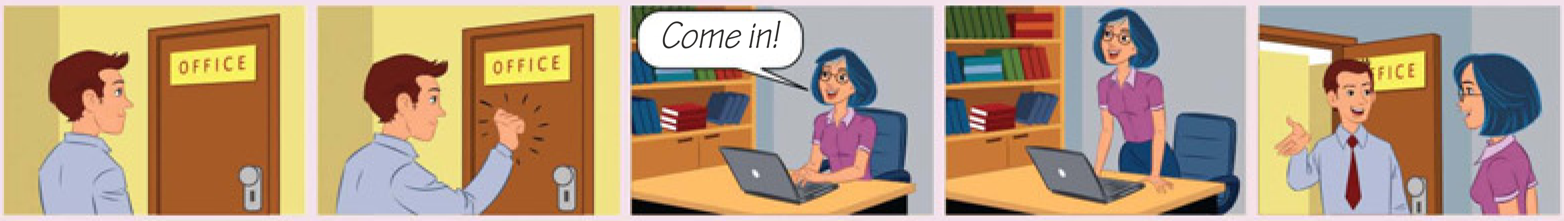
42 Come / came / come

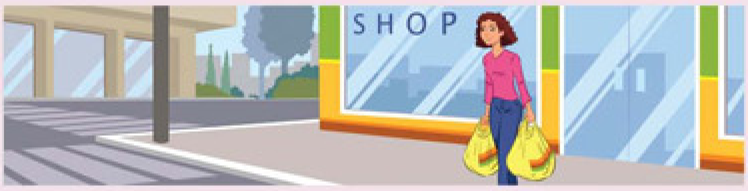
Come and **go** are different:



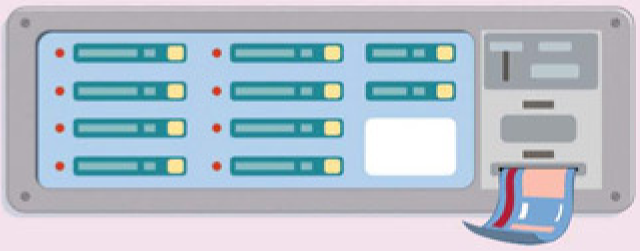
A Come in / out

We say '**Come in!**' when someone knocks at the door of a room.
Then the person who knocked **comes into** the room.





Come out (**of**) is often the opposite of **come in** (**to**).
A woman **came out of** the shop with two big bags. (I was in the street.)
You put your money in and the ticket **comes out of** the machine**.**



B Come back and come home

Come back means 'return to this place here'**.**
She went away for three days. She **came back** yesterday. (She is here again.)

Come back is often used with **from.**
They **came back from** Italy yesterday.

Come home is similar; 'home' is 'here' for the person speaking**.**

MUM: What time did you **come home** last night?
SADIE: Oh, about 3 o'clock.
MUM: What! That's much too late!

C Other important uses of come

A: What country do you **come from**?
B: I'm from Poland. / I **come from** Poland. / I'm Polish.

We're going clubbing tonight. Do you want to **come along** [come with us]?

Come and see me some time. [visit me]

Common mistakes

I come from Poland [NOT ~~I'm coming~~ from Poland].

Tip

Write down any prepositions you find with *come* every time you see them.

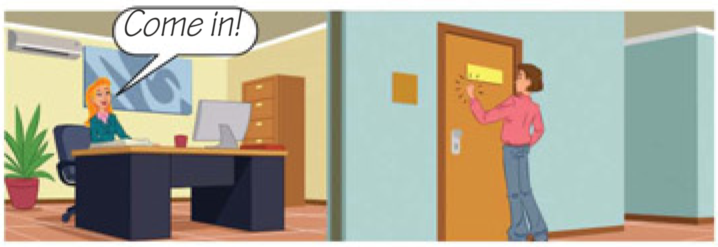
Exercises

42.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences.

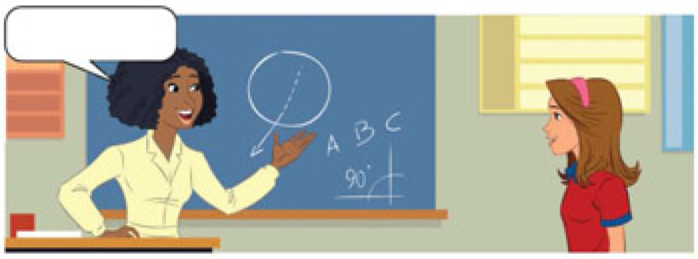
1 I put money in, but the ticket didn't come out of.................. the machine.
2 A: I'm going to Thailand tomorrow.
B: Oh! When are you coming .... ?
A: In two weeks.
3 The teacher came .... the classroom and started the lesson.
4 A: Where do you come .... ?
B: I'm Spanish.
5 Come and .... me at 5 o'clock; we can talk about it then.
6 The children come .... school at 4 o'clock.

42.2 What do you think these people are saying? Use words from the box.

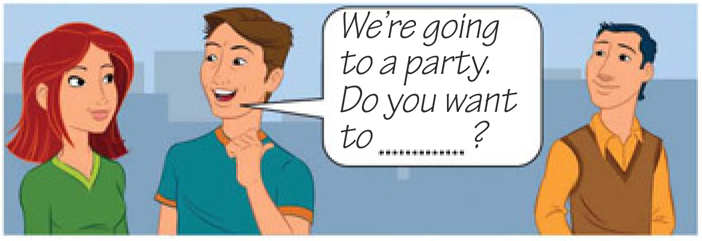
come from ~~come in~~ come along come here



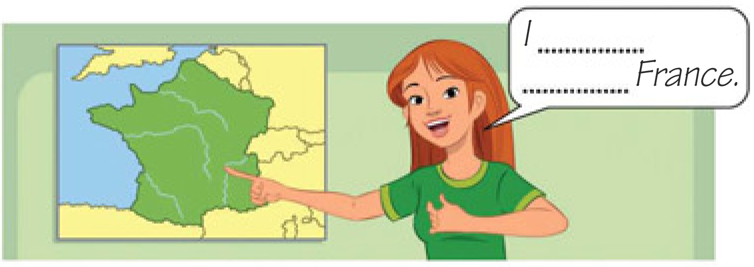
1 Come in!...



2 ....


We're going to a party. Do you want to .... ?

3 ....



4 ....

42.3 Fill the gaps using *come* in the correct form.

1 Did you come.................. for your letters? They're on the table.
2 She .... back yesterday.
3 He .... here every Tuesday.
4 .... you .... to the party tonight?
5 Pierre .... from a small town in Luxembourg.

42.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

1 What time do you come home every day?
2 What country do you come from?
3 What do you do when you come into your classroom?

Over to you

Look up these verbs in a dictionary. Write down the meaning and one example for each verb. After a week, cover the verbs and examples, look at the meanings and see if you can remember the verbs.

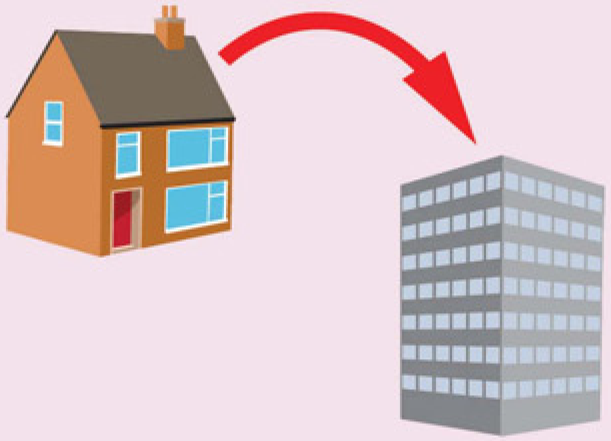
Verb	Meaning	Example
come round	....	....
come across	....	....
come up	....	....

43 Take / took / taken

A Take with time (it + take + person + time)

It **takes** Alan 20 minutes to get to work.
Alan's house → 20 minutes → Alan's office

It **takes** Grace 45 minutes to get to work.
Grace's flat → 45 minutes → Grace's office



I go to school / university every day. It **takes** me 30 minutes.
I do homework every day. It **took** /tʊk/ me two hours yesterday.

A: **How long does it take** to get to the station?
B: Fifteen minutes in a taxi.

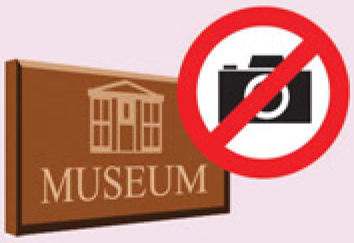
A: **How long did it take you** to learn the Greek alphabet?
B: A week or two.

B Take something with you

Are you going out? **Take** an umbrella. It's raining.

Are you going to the beach? **Take** some water with you.

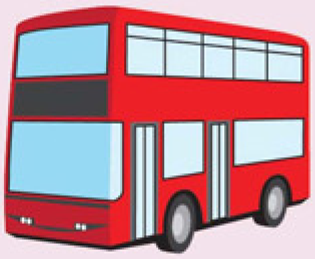
Sorry, you can't **take** your camera into the museum.



C Expressions

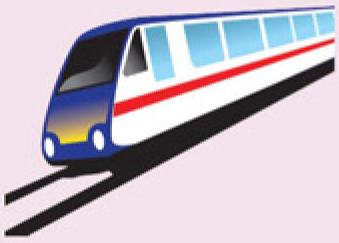
Can I **take a photo** / **photograph** here? /'fəʊtəʊ/ /'fəʊtəgrɑːf/

A: Are you **taking an** English **course**? B: Yes.
A: Do you have to **take an exam**? B: Yes, at the end of the course.
I want to **take some** Japanese **lessons**.



How do you get to work? I **take the bus**.
In London you can **take the underground** to the London Eye.

We **took a taxi** from the airport to our hotel.
How does Nick get to work? He **takes the train**.



Tip

Make a page in your notebook for take and put in new words that go with it when you see them (e.g. take a picture, take a look at, take a chance).

Exercises

43.1 Fill the gaps for yourself.

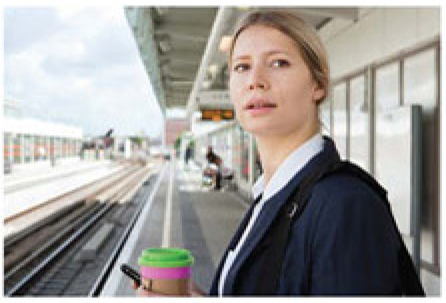
1 It *takes* .... me .... minutes to get to school / university / work.
2 It takes me .... minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.
3 It takes me .... minutes to get to my best friend's house.
4 .... takes me .... to do one unit of this book.

43.2 Complete the sentences using *take* and an expression from the box.

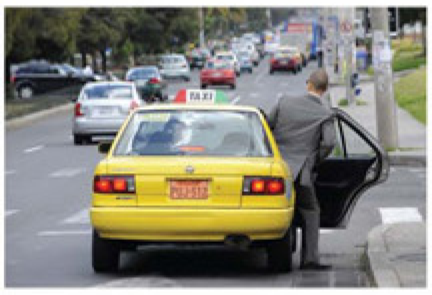
a course some water the train ~~an exam~~

1 At the end of the course, you have to *take an exam.*
2 You can fly from London to Paris or you can ....
3 You want to learn Russian? Why don't you .... ?
4 If you go out on a hot day, you need to ....

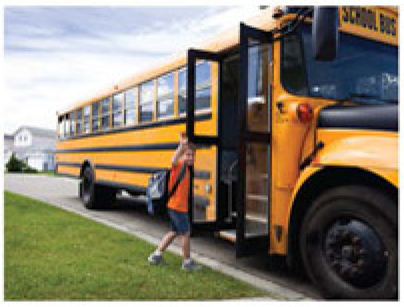
43.3 Look at the pictures. Answer the questions using *take*.



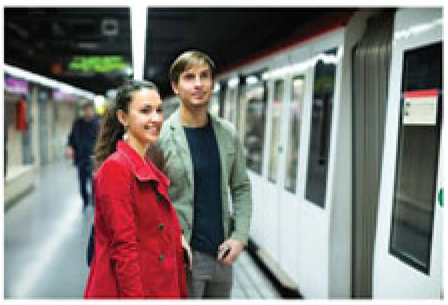
1 How does Natalie go to work?
She takes the train.



2 How can I get to the airport?
You ....



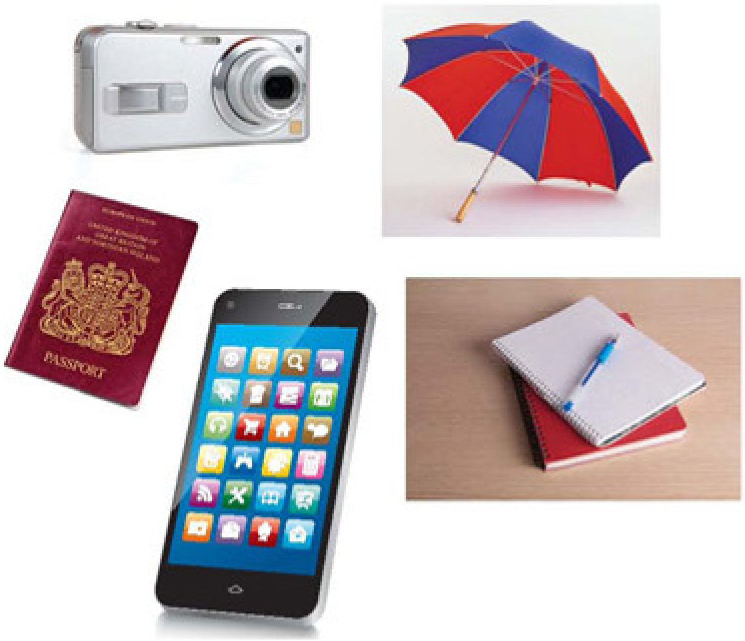
3 How does Christopher go to school?
He ....



4 How do Santiago and Lucia get home every day?
They ....

43.4 What do you take with you when ...

1 you want to take photographs? *I take my camera.*
2 it's raining?
3 you go to another country?
4 you go to your English lessons?
5 you need to text someone?

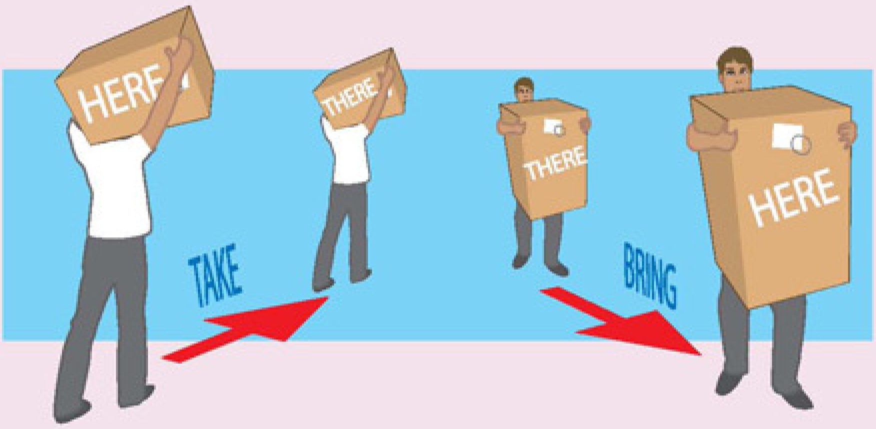


43.5 How long did it take you to do this unit?

44 Bring / brought / brought

A Bring and take

take (like go) = from *here* to *there*
bring (like come) = from *there* to *here*

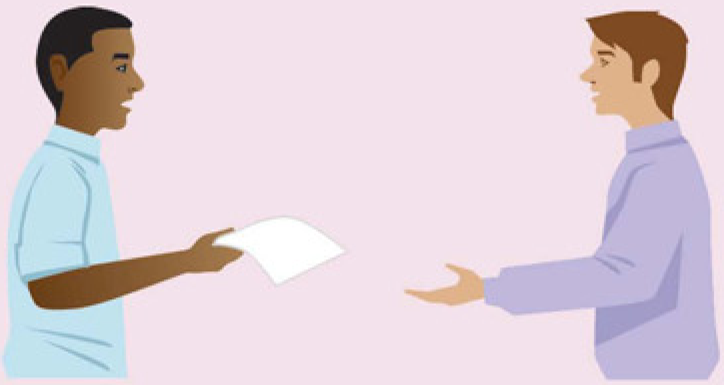


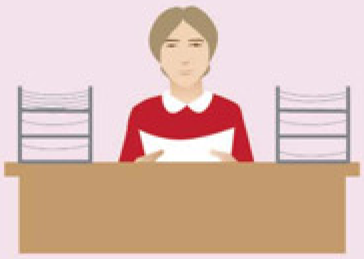
Are you going to school? **Take** your books. (= *from here* to the school)

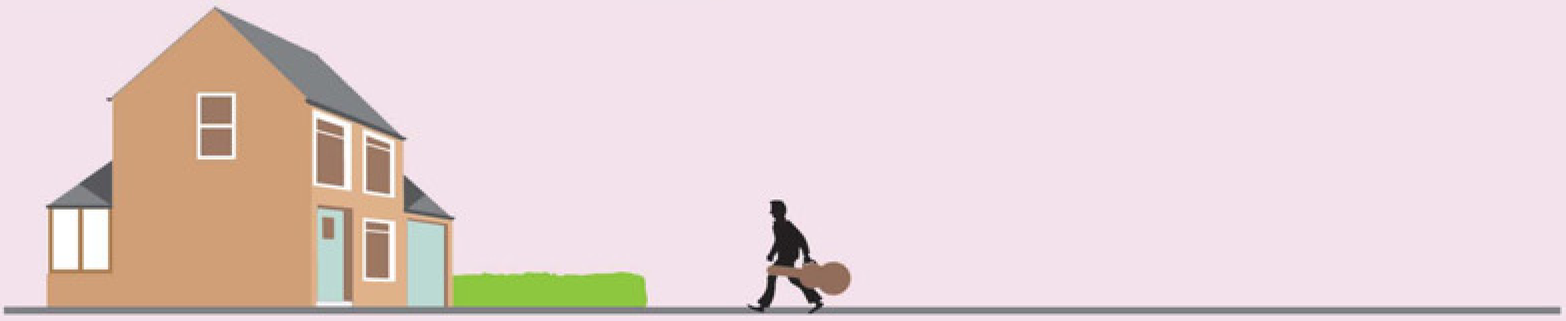
Are you going to the kitchen? Can you **bring** me a glass? (= from the kitchen *to here*)

Please **take** this form to the secretary. (= the secretary is *there*)

Come to my house tomorrow and **bring** your guitar. (= for me, my house is *here*)



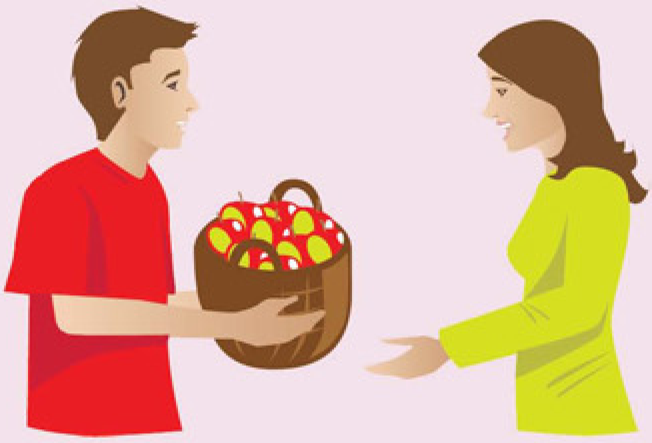


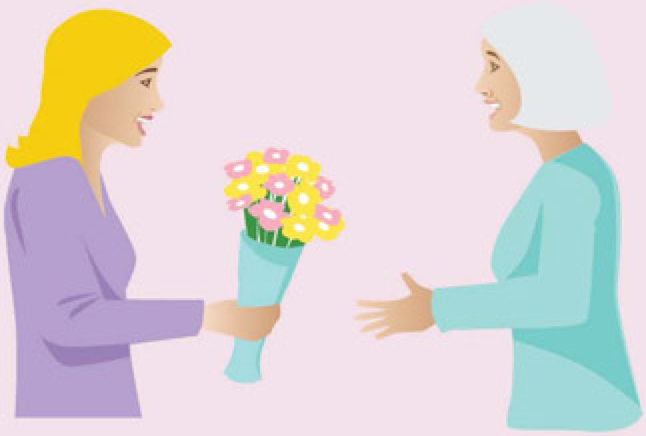


B Bring somebody something

A: I've **brought** /brɔːt/ you some apples from my garden. B: Oh, thank you!

When she visits me, she always **brings** me flowers.





C Bring something back

It's raining. You can take my umbrella and **bring** it **back** tomorrow.

JULES: This book is interesting.
MARGAUX: Please **take** it with you and read it.
JULES: Thanks. I'll **bring** it **back** on Friday.
MARGAUX: OK. No problem.

Exercises

44.1 **Fill the gaps with *bring* or *take*.**

1 Are you going to the shops? Take.......................... an umbrella. It's raining.
2 'Don't forget to .... your books tomorrow!' the teacher said to the class.
3 Are you going to the kitchen? Can you .... me some water?
4 .... your camera with you when you go to Thailand. It's beautiful there.
5 Are you going to the office? Can you .... these papers, please?
6 I'll .... you a present from New York.

44.2 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

1 Yesterday he brought me
2 You must take
3 Come to my house and
4 Go to the post office and take
5 Everybody is going to bring

a these letters, please.
b bring your guitar.
c some flowers.
d food to the party.
e your passport when you travel.

44.3 **Fill the gaps with the correct form of *bring* or *take*.**

1 She always brings.................... me presents. Yesterday she .... me some chocolates.
2 Hello, I've .... you some flowers. I hope you like them!
3 Can you .... this present when you go and see Sonia?
4 She is going to .... my book, read it tonight and .... it back tomorrow.

44.4 **Fill the gaps with *bring back* or *take*.**

1 Can I take.......................... this magazine to read tonight? I'll .... it .... tomorrow.
2 When she went to Belgium, she .... me .... some chocolates.
3 Please .... my umbrella. You can .... it .... tomorrow.

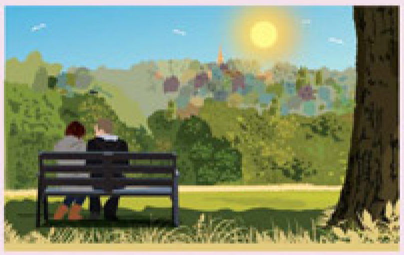
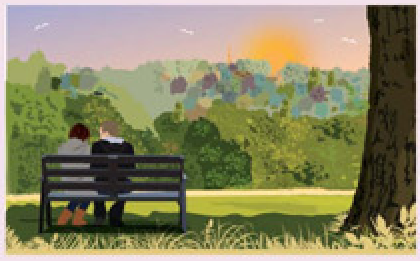
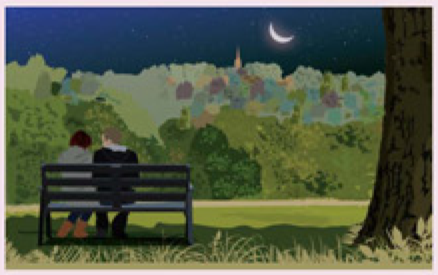
44.5 **Where are you now?**

If you are at an English lesson now, answer a).
If you are not at an English lesson, answer b).

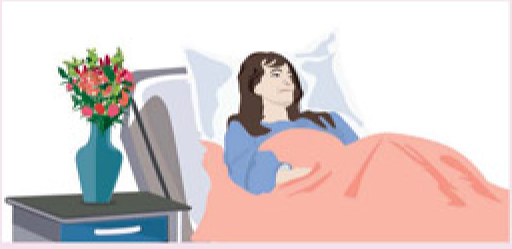
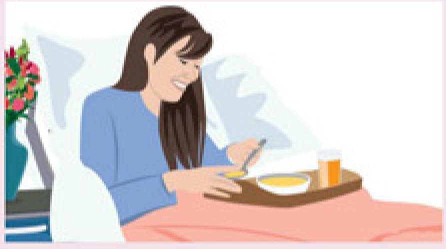
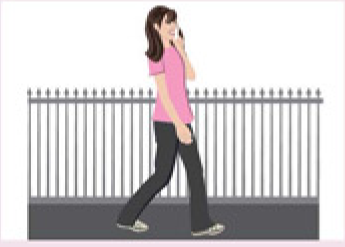
a Name three things you always bring to the lesson.
b Name three things you always take to the lesson.

45 Get / got / got

A Get with adjectives: for changes

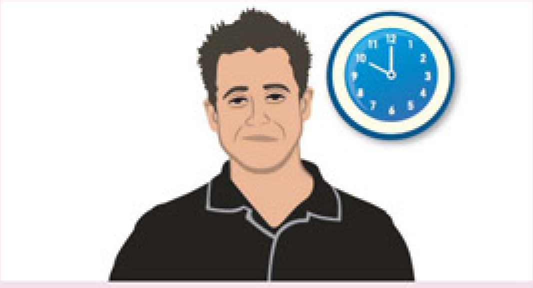




It's light. ⟶ It's **getting** dark. ⟶ It's dark.

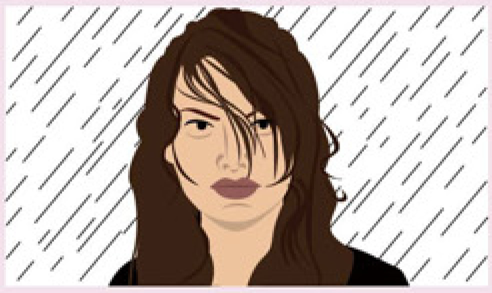




She's ill. ⟶ She's **getting** better. ⟶ She's better. / She's well.

I'm **getting** tired. I want to go to bed.

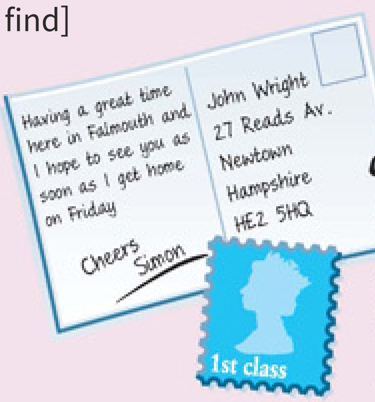


It's raining! I'm **getting** wet!



B Get with nouns

If you **don't have** something you can **get** it. [get = buy or find]
I want to send a postcard. I have to **get** a stamp.
I'm going to the shop to **get** a newspaper.
Do you want a drink? I can **get** some coffee.
Where can I **get** a taxi?
I've finished my studies. Now I want to **get** a job.
My friend is ill! Please **get** a doctor.


Having a great time here in Falmouth and I hope to see you as soon as I get home on Friday
Cheers Simon
John Wright
27 Reads Av.
Newtown
Hampshire
HE2 5HQ
1st class

C Expressions

Maria and David are **getting married** in April.

A: When you **get to** New York, call me. [arrive at, reach]
B: OK, give me your number.

A: How can I **get to** the airport?
B: Take the airport bus at the bus station.

I'll see you when you **get back** from Hong Kong. [return, come home]

(See also **get up** in **Unit 47**.)

Common mistakes

When I **get home**, I have my lunch [NOT When I get ~~to~~ home].
I **get there** at 6 o'clock, so please ring me at 6.30 [NOT I get ~~to~~ there].

Exercises

45.1 Complete these sentences using a, b or c.

1 I studied too much and I got a) hot [✓ b) tired] c) sick.
2 I ate too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
3 I sat in the sun too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
4 In winter in the north it gets a) tired b) dark c) wet very early.
5 Vincent got very a) dark b) better c) wet in the rain.

45.2 Complete these sentences using the correct form of *get* and a word from the box.

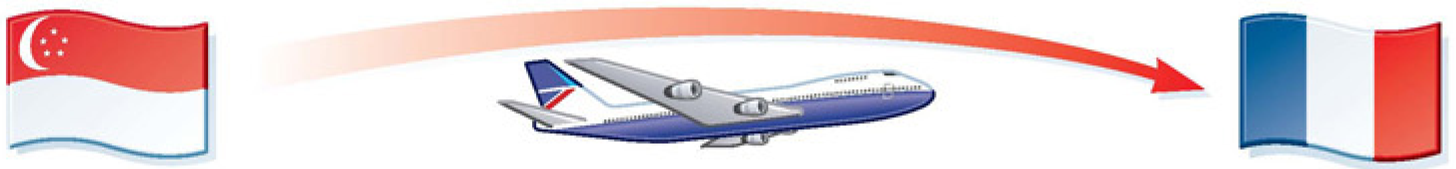
better light ~~dark~~ cold wet

1 The sun is going down. It *'s getting dark.*
2 When the sun comes up it ……………………
3 She's in hospital but she ……………………
4 It's raining! I ……………………!
5 Please close the window. I ……………………

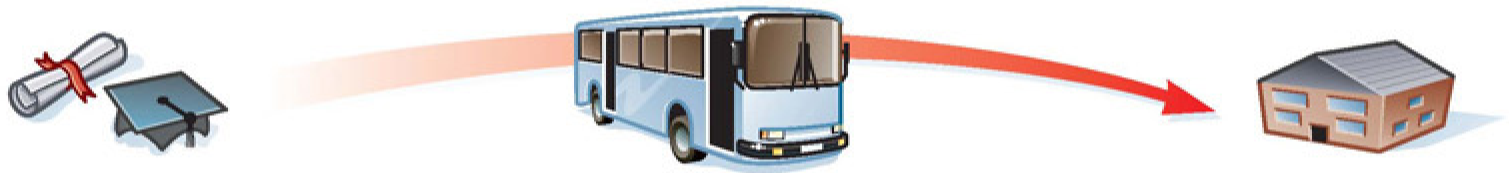
45.3 What / Who do you get if …

1 you want to post a letter? *a stamp*
2 somebody is ill?
3 you are thirsty?
4 you want to write something down?
5 you want to read the news?
6 you want to go to the airport?
7 you want to earn some money?
8 you want to go out and it's raining?

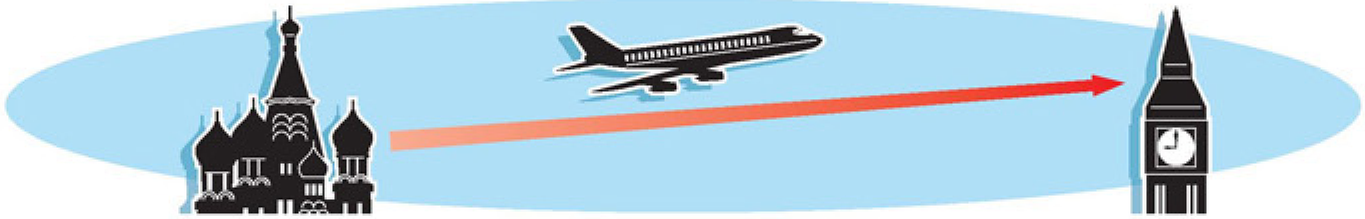
45.4 Complete these sentences.



1 This plane *gets to* Paris at 12.30.



2 The bus from the university …………… my house in 25 minutes.



3 When does the flight from Moscow …………… London?
4 José usually leaves work at 6 and …………… home at 6.30.
5 Mike is in New York. He won't …………… till the 14th July.

45.5 Answer the questions. Write sentences.

1 In your country, how old are people usually when they get married?
2 When do people usually get married? Which day? Which month(s)?
3 What time do you usually get home every day? How do you get there?

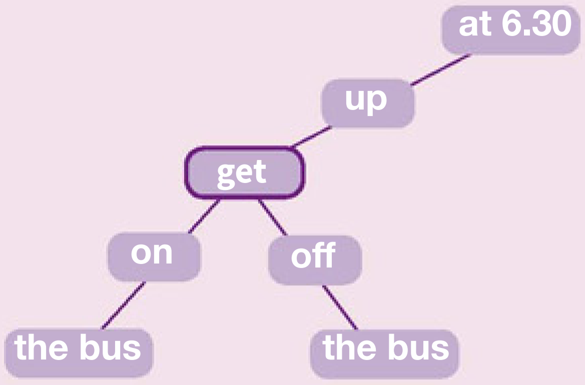
46 Phrasal verbs

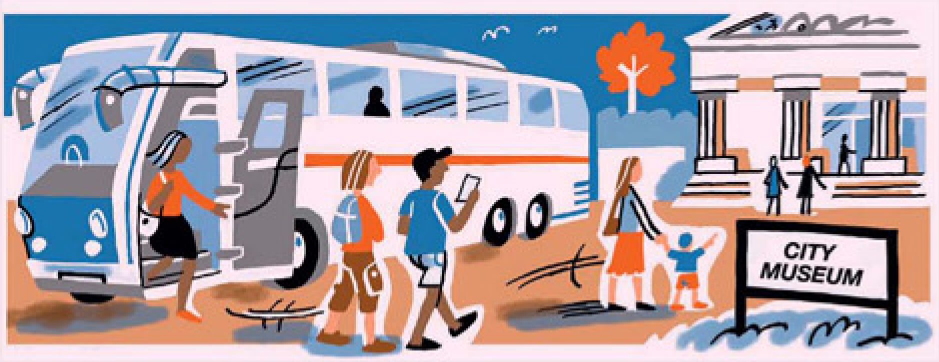
A What are phrasal verbs?

Phrasal verbs have two parts: a verb + a particle.

get up / **on** / **off**

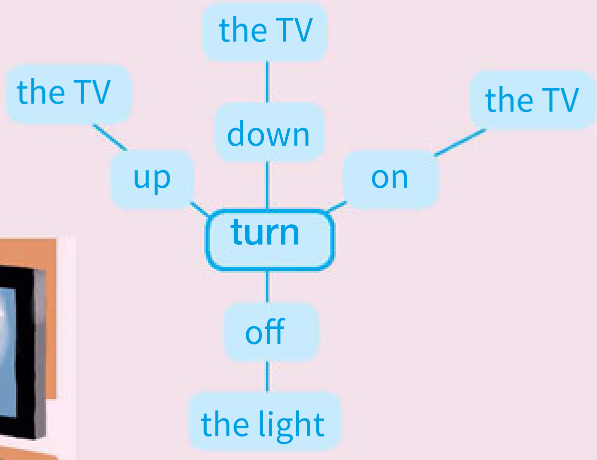
I **got up** at 6.30 this morning. I'm tired now.
We should **get on** the bus. It's leaving in five minutes!
We **got off** the bus at the City Museum.

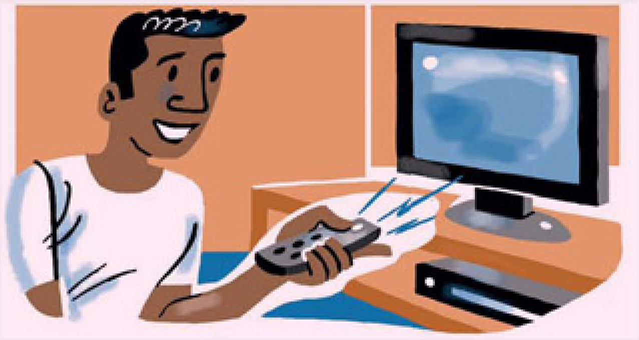




turn on / **off** / **up** / **down**

He always **turns on** the TV at 9 o'clock to watch the news.





It's a sunny day. **Turn** the light **off**.
Turn the TV **up**. I can't hear it**.**
Turn the TV **down**. It's too loud**.**

go on / **off**

Don't stop. **Go on** talking. It's very interesting. [continue]
Karen **went off** and forgot her handbag. [left]

put something on

It's cold and windy outside. **Put** your coat **on**. / **Put on** your coat.

come on

Come on! We're late**.**

B One phrasal verb, different meanings

Note that one phrasal verb can often have different meanings.

turn down

She **turned down** the TV. [made it not so loud]
She **turned down** the invitation. [refused it]

take off

Our plane **takes off** at 12.30. [leaves the ground]
She **took off** her shoes. [removed them from her feet]

Tip

Make a special page in your notebook. Write down any phrasal verbs you see or hear. Organise them into groups, in any way that makes sense to you, for example, clothes, movement.

Exercises

46.1 Match a sentence on the left with a sentence on the right.

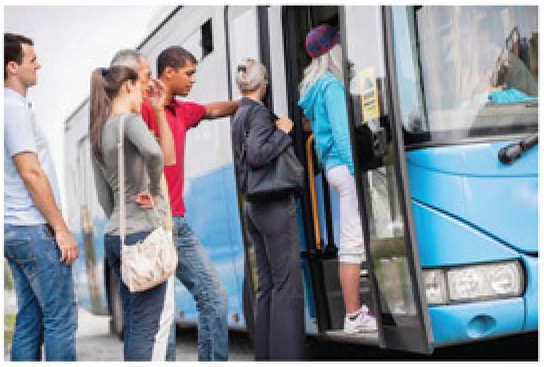
1 It's eight o'clock.
2 We arrived at our station.
3 That funny programme is on soon.
4 The bus arrived.
5 I'm trying to work.
6 I can't hear the news.
7 It's raining today.
8 I don't want to accept that job.

a I'm going to turn it down.
b Please turn your music down.
c It's time to get up.
d We got off the train.
e Put on your raincoat.
f We got on.
g Turn on the TV.
h Turn the radio up.

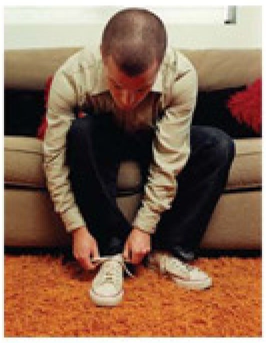
46.2 Put the correct prepositions in these sentences.

1 It's dark in here. Turn ....on.................... the lights.
2 Our plane takes .... at 6.25 and lands at 7.50.
3 Come .... ! It's time to get .... You'll be late for school!
4 The children took .... their school uniforms when they got home.
5 It's time to turn .... the TV and go to bed now.
6 Get .... the bus at the train station, then walk about 100 metres and you'll see the theatre.
7 The students went .... working until late at night.
8 When they got to the beach, he put........................ his swimming trunks and ran down to the sea.

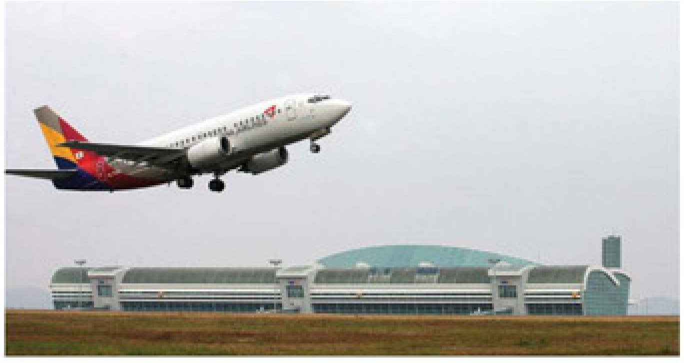
46.3 What is happening in these pictures? Use one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page to describe each picture.



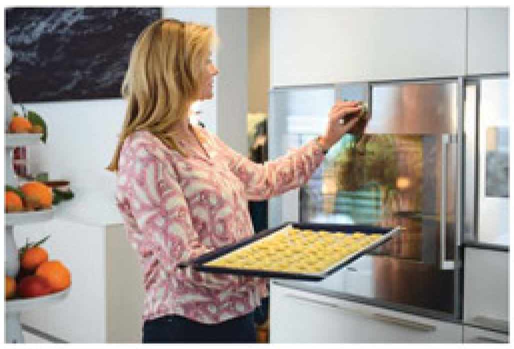
1 *They are getting on the coach.*



2 ....



3 ....



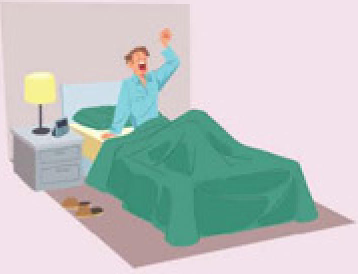
4 .... oven.

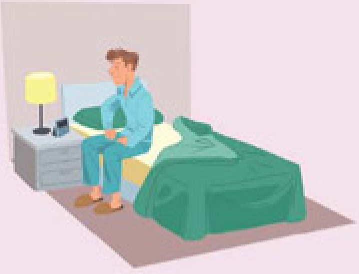
46.4 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

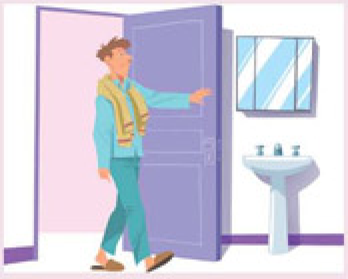
1 The plane left at midnight. *The plane took off at midnight.*
2 I removed my hat and coat.
3 She continued writing novels all her life.
4 Michael left without saying goodbye to anybody.
5 I refused the invitation to Maya's wedding.

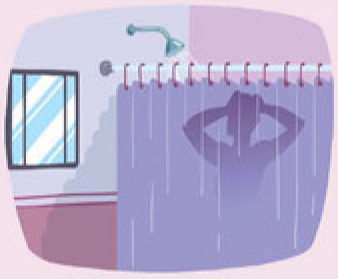
47 Everyday things

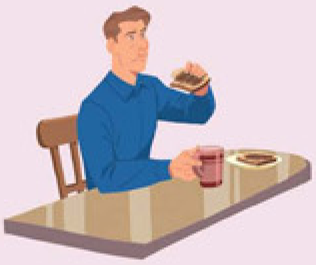
A Things we do every day

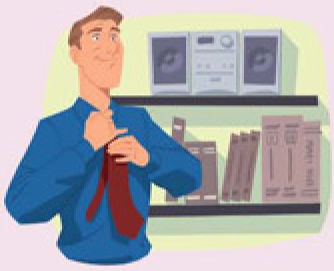

wake up

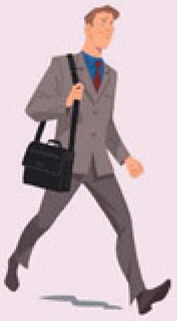

get up

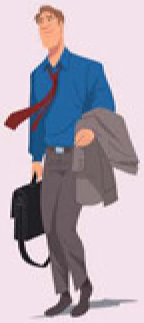

go to the bathroom

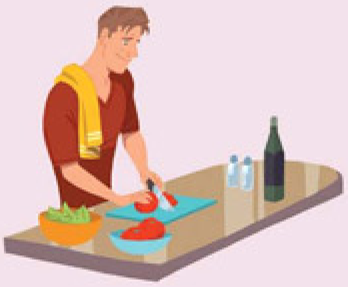

have a shower

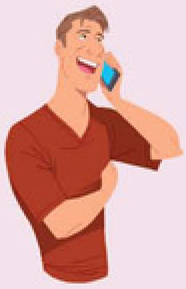

have breakfast /ˈbrekfəst/

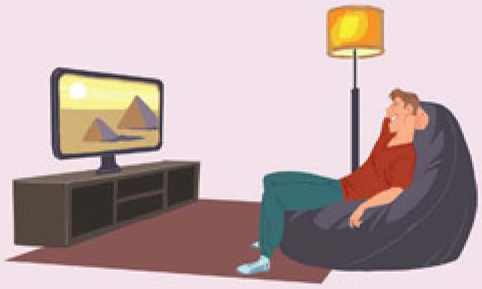

listen to the radio /ˈlɪsən/

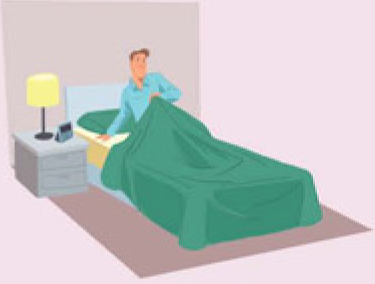

go to work


come home

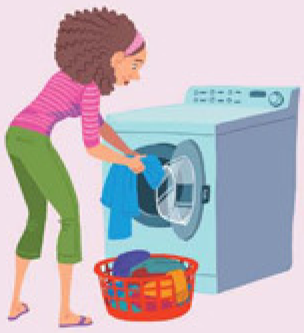

make dinner

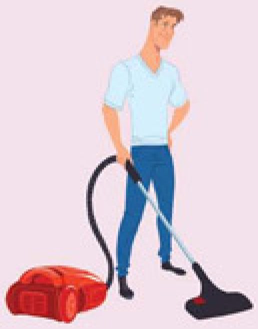

phone (*or* **call**) **a friend**

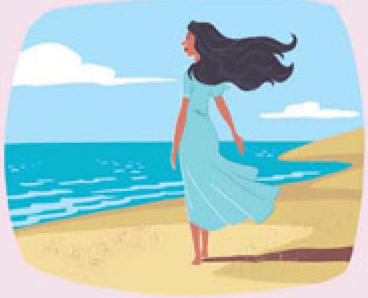

watch TV

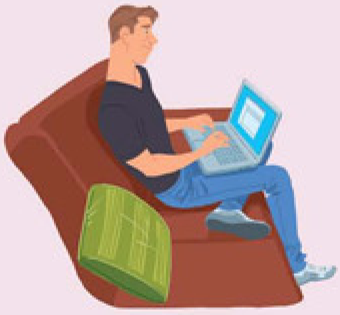

go to bed

B Sometimes I …


wash clothes


clean the house


go for a walk


write letters / emails

C Expressions

A: **How often do you** go out / watch a film?
B: **Three or four times a week**.
A: **What time do you** get up / go to work?
B: **At 7 o'clock normally**.
A: **How do you** go to work?
B: **Usually by bus** / **train** / **car**.
(See also **Unit 38: Have / had / had** and **Unit 41: Make / made / made**.)

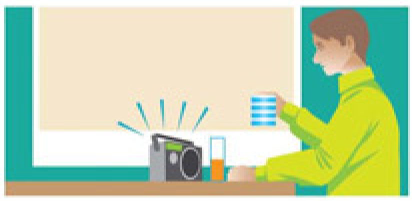
Common mistakes

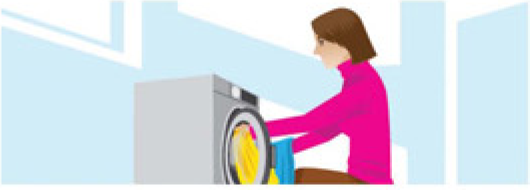
We say I **usually get up** at 8 o'clock, but today I got up at 8.30. [NOT ~~I used to~~ / ~~I'm used to get up~~ at 8 o'clock.]

Exercises

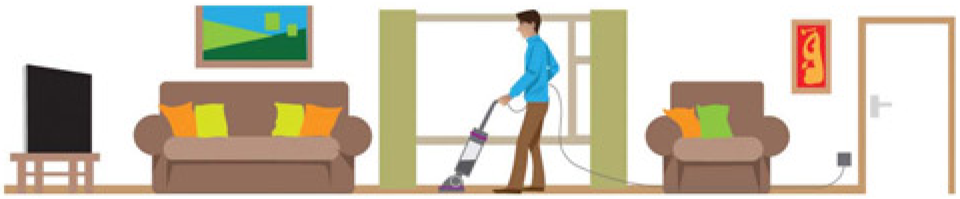
47.1 What do they usually do?

1 *He listens to the radio every morning.*

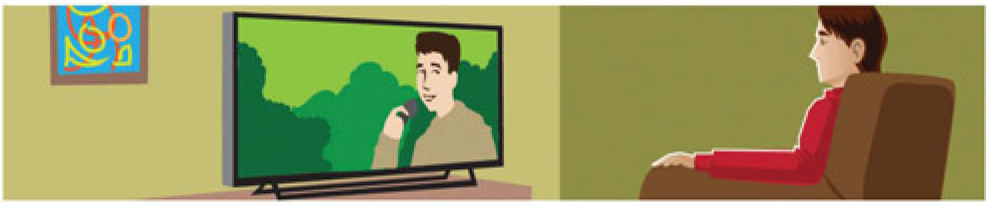




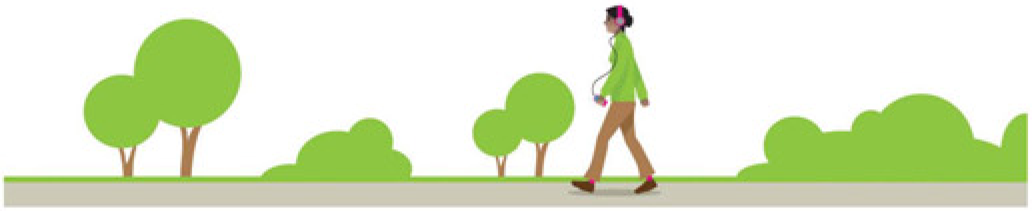
2 She w.. (every Saturday)



3 He c.. (every weekend)



4 He w.. (every evening)



5 She g.. (every Sunday)

47.2 Ask questions.

topic	question	answer
1 get up	What *time do you get up?*	7.30, usually.
2 go for a walk	How …	Every Saturday.
3 go to work	How …	By train.
4 have dinner	When …	At about 7 o'clock usually.
5 come home from work	How …	I normally walk home.
6 phone your best friend	How …	Two or three times a week.
7 clean your room	When …	On Saturday morning usually.
8 have a shower	What …	Usually at about 11 pm.

47.3 Complete the sentences about yourself.

1 I usually wake up at ....

2 I go to the bathroom and have ....

3 I usually have .... for breakfast.

4 I go to work by ....

5 I usually have a cup of tea / coffee at .... o'clock.

6 I usually come home at ....

7 I usually .... dinner at .... o'clock.

8 In the evenings I normally .... or ....

9 Sometimes I .... one or two emails or .... to the radio.

10 I usually .... to bed at ....

48

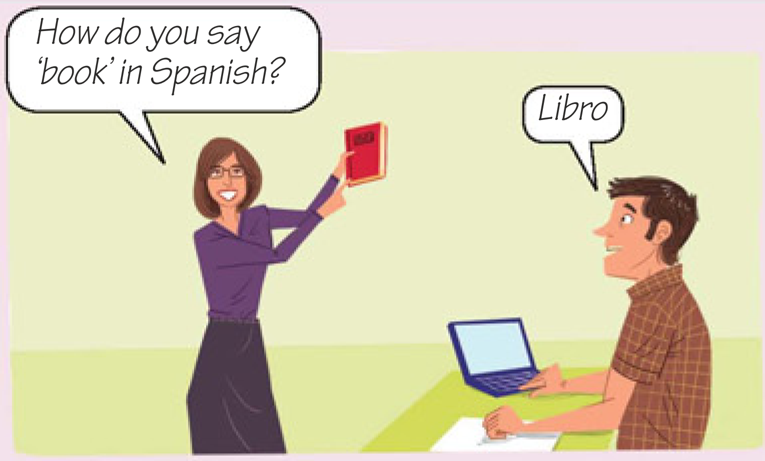
Talking

A

Say (say / said / said)

We use **say** when we report someone's words.
She **said**, 'This is horrible!'
He **said that** he wanted a drink.

We **say hello** / **goodbye** and we **say please** / **thank you** / **Happy Birthday** / **Merry Christmas** / **Happy New Year** / **Congratulations!** /kəngr⌧ tʃə'leɪʃənz/


How do you say 'book' in Spanish?
Libro

We use **say** when we ask about language.

B

Tell (tell / told / told)

Tell is usually followed immediately by a person.
Say is not followed immediately by a person.
Tell is often used with *how* and *wh-* words (when, what, why, where) to find out and give information.

Tell me when you want to have dinner. She **told me how** to fill in the application form.
You can **tell someone the time** / **a story** / **a joke** / **your name** / **your address** / **your phone number**.

Common mistakes

He **told me** his name. [NOT He ~~said me~~ his name.]

Common mistakes

Can you tell me where the bus station is, please? [NOT Can you ~~say me~~ … ?]

C

Ask

Ask is used for questions.
My sister **asked me** where I was going. / My sister **asked** (**me**), 'Where are you going?'
A: Can I **ask you a question**?
B: Yes.
A: What day of the week were you born?
B: Thursday.

You can **ask someone the way** / **the time**.

You can **ask somebody to do something** and **ask someone for something**.
I asked him to turn off his radio. (*or* I said, 'Please turn off your radio.')
She **asked for** the bill. (*or* She said, 'Can I have the bill, please?')

D

Speak / talk / answer / reply

I like **talking to** you. [having a conversation with you]

Common mistakes

Do you speak Japanese? (used for languages) [NOT Do you ~~talk~~ Japanese?]

Can you **answer** the telephone / the door, please? [pick up the phone / open the door to see who it is]
Teacher: Who can **answer** the next question? Joanna?
He didn't **reply to** my email. (also used for letters / texts) [he did not send me an email back]

Exercises

48.1 Fill the gaps with the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

1 Can you ..tell.......... me where the Plaza Hotel is, please?
2 She .... me her name.
3 I .... goodbye to her.
4 'Please .... me a story,' the little boy ....
5 'Come here!' the police officer ....
6 The teacher .... her students that they were very good.

48.2 What do you say?

1 You want to know if an English friend can help you talk to a Russian person who does not know English.
Can ..you speak Russian?..........
2 You want to know the word for 'tree' in German.
How ....
3 You want to know the time.
Excuse me, can you ....
4 Your course is finished. You want to say goodbye to your teacher.
I just want to ....
5 You want to know when the exam is.
Can you ....
6 The telephone rings. You are busy cooking food. A friend is watching you.
(*to your friend*)
Can you ....

48.3 Match the verbs on the left with the words on the right.

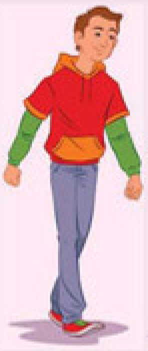
1 say	a an email
2 answer	b someone to help you
3 ask for	c Japanese
4 reply to	d Happy New Year
5 tell	e a friend
6 talk to	f someone a joke
7 ask	g the bill
8 speak	h the door

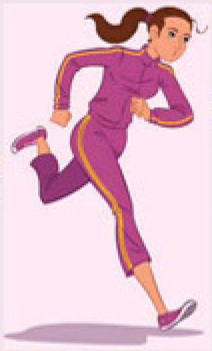
48.4 Complete the phrases.

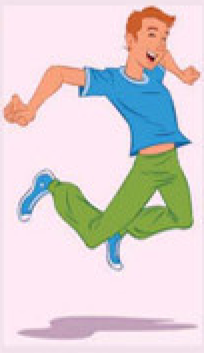
1 (*on December 24th or 25th*) ..Happy.......... Christmas!
2 (*you want to pay in a restaurant*) Can we have .... , please?
3 (*on the first day of the year*) .... Year!
4 (*small child to parent*) .... a story before I go to sleep. Please!

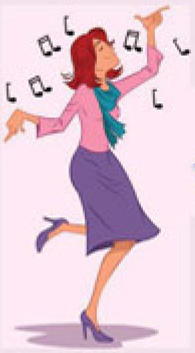
49 Moving

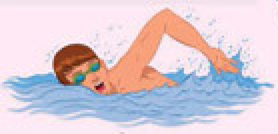
A Without transport

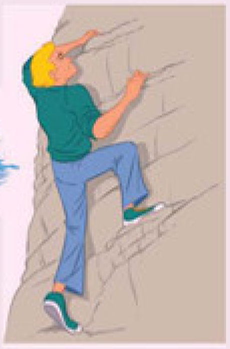

walk

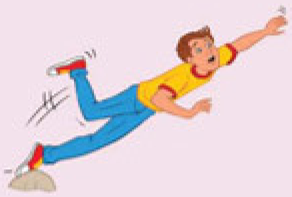

run


jump


dance


swim


climb

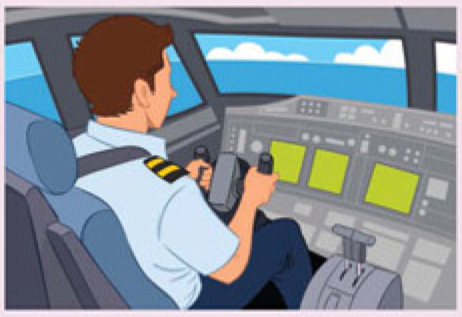

fall

When talking about the past, we say: walked / ran / jumped / danced / swam / climbed / fell.

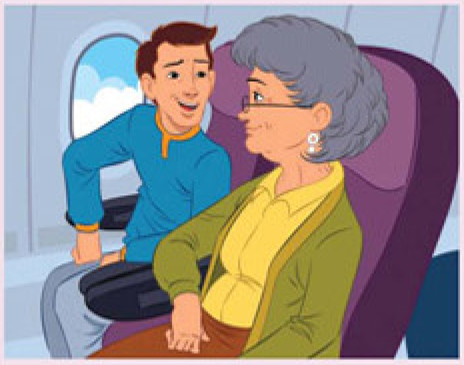
B Transport

verb	transport	example
go by	car / plane / bus / train / bike / motorbike / ship / taxi / underground [NOT by ~~a~~ car]	We **went** to Paris **by** train last summer.
take	a / the bus / train / plane / a taxi / the underground	I **took** a taxi home yesterday.
ride	a bicycle / bike / motorbike / horse	I always **rode** my bike to school.
drive	a car / bus / train	My uncle **drove** a bus for ten years.

The pilot **flies** a plane.



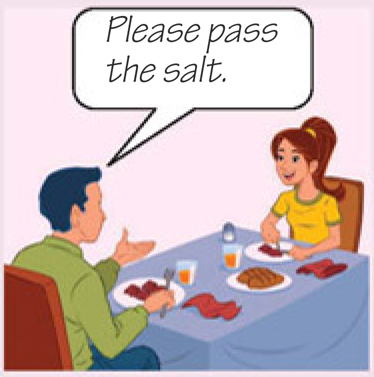
How did you get to Istanbul?
We **flew** there.

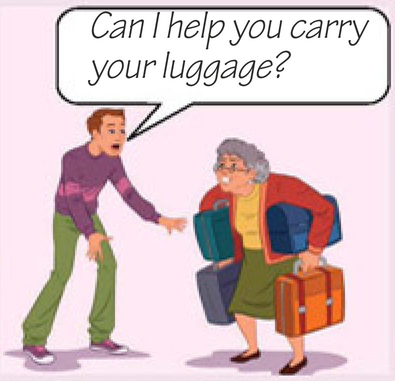


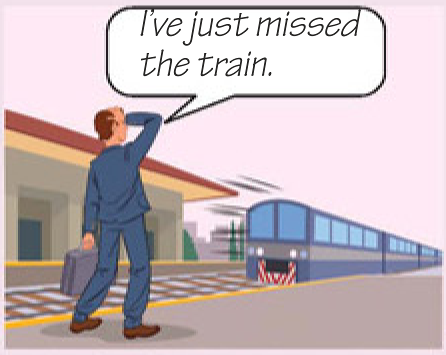
Common mistakes

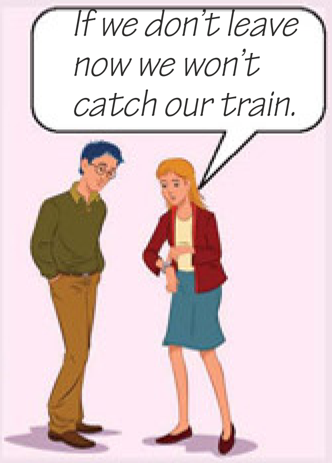
You **arrive at** or **in** a place [NOT ~~arrive to~~ a place]. The train **arrived in** Tokyo on time. The plane **arrived** late **at** Heathrow.

C Expressions


Please pass the salt.


Can I help you carry your luggage?


I've just missed the train.


If we don't leave now we won't catch our train.

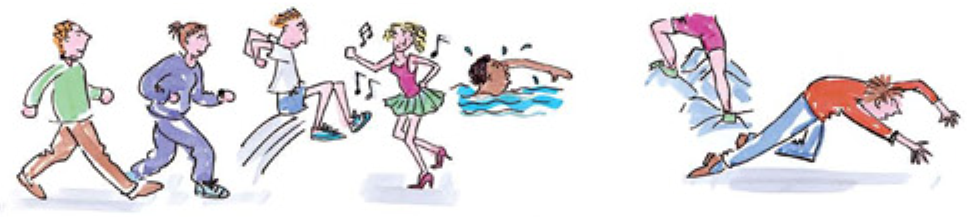
Tip

When you are travelling you will probably see a lot of signs and information in English. Make a note of any new words and expressions you see.

(See **Unit 32: Travelling**.)

Exercises

49.1 Complete the sentences using verbs from A opposite. Write them in the correct form.

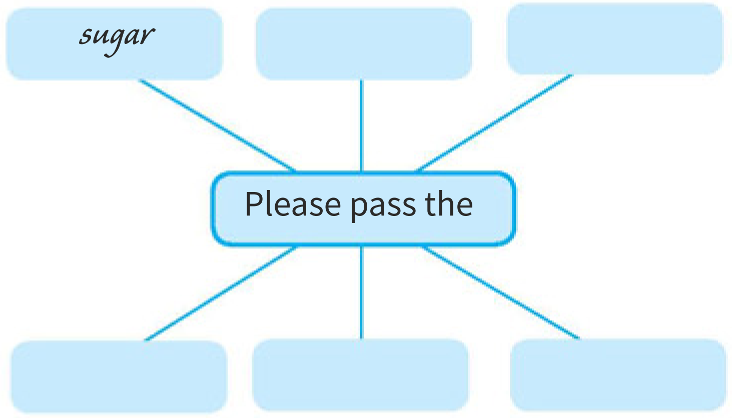


1 Jack likes *running*.................. round the park every morning but Hannah prefers *walking*.................. round it with her dog.
2 Everyone .... at the party last night.
3 Every day Claire .... ten lengths of the pool before breakfast.
4 James can .... very fast. He has won a lot of races.
5 Andrew loves .... mountains.
6 The old lady .... on her way home and broke her arm.
7 Stella .... into the swimming pool and quickly .... to the other side.
8 It is better for you to .... to work than to go by car.

49.2 *Ride*, *drive*, *go by* or *take*? Write the correct word(s) in the sentence.

1 Can you *ride*.......................... a motorbike?
2 He works for a railway company. He .... a train.
3 She sometimes .... the underground to work.
4 He goes away from home a lot. He .... a lorry.
5 I prefer to .... a bus than .... car.
6 Would you like to .... an elephant?
7 You never forget how to .... a bicycle.
8 I usually .... a taxi when it rains.

49.3 Complete the diagram with six possible words.



49.4 Put these sentences into the past tense with the word *yesterday*.

1 Lilian runs a mile every day. *She ran a mile yesterday.*
2 Maria often drives her grandmother to the city.
3 Charlie flies to Madrid every week.
4 I sometimes take a taxi home from the station.
5 Bella often falls when she rides her bike.
6 Adrian often misses the 7.30 bus to school.
7 The taxi driver usually helps the old lady to carry her luggage to the train.
8 Madeline usually dances very well.

49.5 Answer these questions. Use *every day*, *once a week*, *once a year* or *never*.

1 How often do you walk to work or school? *I walk to work every day.*
2 Have you got a bike? How often do you ride it?
3 How often do you go swimming? Do you swim in the sea or in a pool?
4 How often do you go somewhere by plane?
5 How often do you drive a car?
6 How often do you go dancing?
7 Do you often go climbing?
8 How often do you take a taxi?

50 Conjunctions and connecting words

A Basic conjunctions

Conjunctions join two parts of a sentence. They help to show the connection between the two parts of the sentence.

conjunction	example	use
and	Kate is a student **and** she works part-time.	We use *and* to give extra information in the second part of the sentence.
but	They are rich **but** they aren't happy.	We use *but* when the second part of the sentence contrasts with the first part.
or	You can pay by credit card **or** cash.	We use *or* when the second part of the sentence gives a different possibility.
because	We went home early **because** we were tired.	We use *because* when the second part of the sentence explains why the first part happened.
so	I felt ill **so** I didn't go to work.	We use *so* when the second part of the sentence gives a result of the first part.
when	I went to the party **when** the babysitter arrived.	We use *when* to say when the first part of the sentence happened.
before	We left **before** it started to rain.	We use *before* to show that the first part of the sentence happened first.
after	We went for a meal **after** we had seen the film.	We use *after* to show that the second part of the sentence happened first.
if	You can have some ice cream **if** you eat your dinner.	We use *if* to say that the first part of the sentence will only happen after the second part of the sentence happens and it may not happen.

B Other connecting words

These words are useful for making connections between words and phrases.

word	example	use
only	He **only** sleeps for three hours every night.	We use *only* to say something is not very big or very much.
like	She looks **like** her father.	We use *like* to make a comparison.
than	She works harder **than** he does.	We use *than* after a comparative adjective or adverb.
also **too** **as well**	He works in the shop and she does **also** / **too** / **as well**.	We use *also, too* and *as well* to say something is extra.

Tip

These words are small, but they are very important to learn. Write a translation of the words in the first column of the tables.

Exercises

50.1 Choose one of the words to complete each sentence.

1 Blake liked school [✓ *because*] / *but* / *if* he had many friends there.
2 Blake left school *so* / *or* / *and* he joined the navy.
3 He hadn't travelled much *but* / *before* / *after* he joined the navy.
4 Blake was seasick *when* / *if* / *so* he left the navy.
5 He took a job in a bank *because* / *after* / *or* it was near his home.
6 He will stay at the bank *when* / *if* / *before* he likes it there.
7 If he doesn't like his new job, he'll go to university *before* / *if* / *or* he'll move to London.
8 He wants to get married *if* / *when* / *so* he's 30.

50.2 Write down nine sentences from the columns. Use each of the conjunctions once.

Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav after they decided to start a business together.

	after	she loves him.
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav	and	she loved him.
	because	she doesn't love him.
	before	they had two sons.
	but	he moves to London.
	if	he moved to London.
	or	she won't marry anyone.
Annabelle will marry Aarav	so	he was a pop star.
	when	they decided to start a business together.

50.3 Fill in the gaps with words from B opposite.

I love swimming, my brother loves swimming [1] *too* .... and my sister likes it very much [2] .... I can swim better [3] .... they can! Almost all my family loves swimming. My grandmother swims [4] .... a fish but she doesn't swim very often - [5] .... every year or so, now.

50.4 Write six sentences about your family and your habits using *only*, *than*, *like*, *also*, *too* and *as well*.

I play tennis and my mother plays as well. My mother plays better than I do.

50.5 Complete these sentences about yourself.

1 I'm learning English because ....
2 I'll learn more English if ....
3 I'm learning English and ....
4 I started learning English when ....
5 I can speak some English, so ....
6 I'll learn more English but ....

51 Days, months, seasons

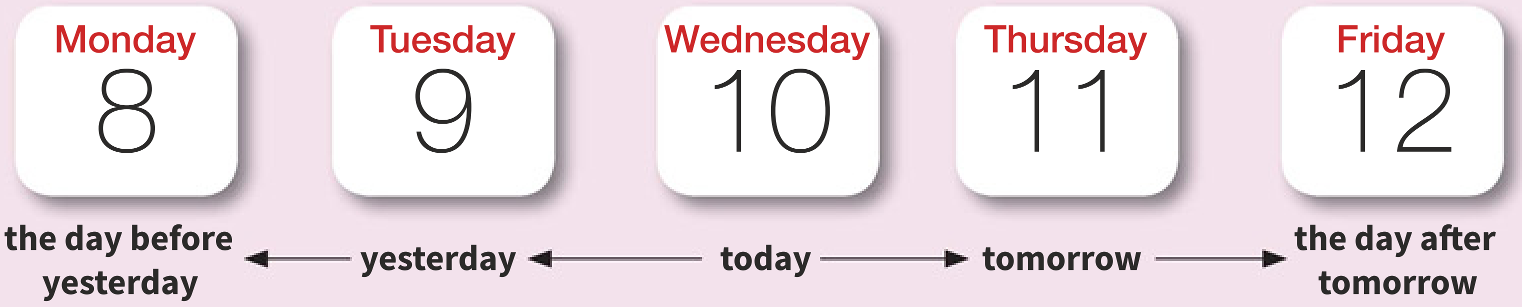
A Time

There are:
365 **days** in a **year** (a year which has 366 days is a **leap year**)
12 **months** /mʌnθs/ in a year
7 days in a **week**
2 weeks in a **fortnight**
24 **hours** in a day
60 **minutes** in an hour (we say **an hour** /'aʊə/)
60 **seconds** in a minute
100 years in a **century**

B Days of the week

Sunday /'sʌndeɪ/, **Monday** /'mʌndeɪ/, **Tuesday** /'tʃuːzdeɪ/, **Wednesday** /'wenzdeɪ/, **Thursday** /'θɜːzdeɪ/, **Friday**, **Saturday**

The names of the days always begin with a capital letter in English.
Saturday + Sunday = **the weekend**



Monday (before 12 pm) = Monday **morning**
Monday (between 12 pm and 6 pm) = Monday **afternoon**
Monday (after 6 pm) = Monday **evening**
We say **on** + days of the week: on Monday, on Saturday, etc. I saw her **on Friday** / **on Tuesday** evening.

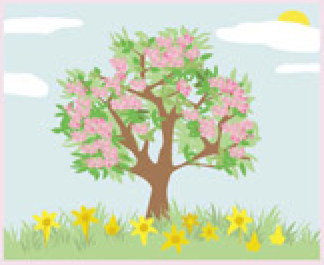
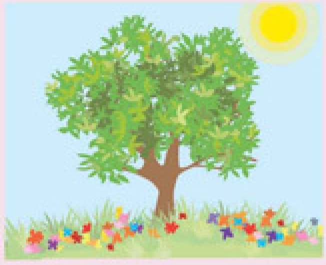
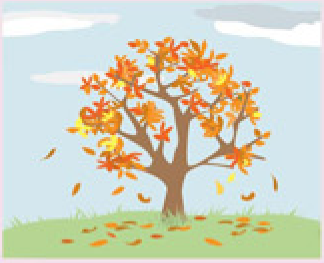
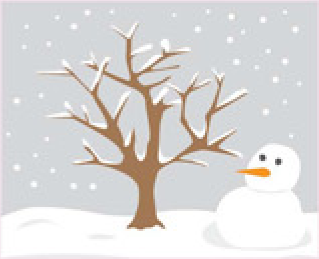
Common mistakes

We say at + the weekend: I went to the cinema at the weekend [NOT ~~in the~~ weekend].

C Months and seasons

Months: January, **February**, **March**, **April**, **May**, **June**, **July**, **August**, **September**, **October**, **November**, **December**
The names of the months always begin with a capital letter in English.

Some countries have four **seasons**: **spring**, **summer**, **autumn** /'ɔːtəm/ and **winter**.

The names of the seasons do not usually begin with a capital letter in English.
We say **in** + months / seasons: **in July**, **in December**, **in** (**the**) **spring**, **in** (**the**) **summer**, etc.
Birds sing in (the) spring.

Common mistakes

My birthday is in July [NOT ~~on~~ July].

Tip

Write the day and date in English every time you do an English exercise, e.g. Wednesday 2nd May 2017.

Exercises

51.1 Answer these questions.

1 24 hours = one day..........
2 100 years = ...
3 2 weeks = ...
4 60 minutes = ...
5 7 days = ...

51.2 Complete this British children's song about the number of days in each month.

Thirty days has S eptember.................. ,
A................................ , J................................ and N................................
All the rest have .... ,
Except for F .... ,
Which has twenty-eight days
And .... in each leap year.

51.3 These abbreviations are often used for the days of the week and the months. Write the names out in full.

1 Mon Monday..............
2 Aug ....
3 Oct ....
4 Sat ....
5 Wed ....
6 Jan ....
7 Apr ....
8 Fri ....
9 Feb ....
10 Sept ....
11 Tues ....
12 Nov ....

51.4 What are the next letters in each of these? Why?

1 S S A W (*the first letters of the four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, winter*)
2 S M T W ....
3 J F M A M J J ....

51.5 Correct the six mistakes in this paragraph.

I'm going to a party on $\overset{S}{\text{s}}$aturday for Valentina's birthday. Her birthday is on thursday but she wanted to have the party in the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think june is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues on the summer. My birthday is in Winter and it's too cold to eat outside!

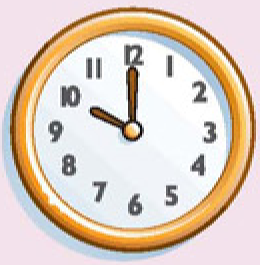
51.6 How quickly can you answer these quiz questions?

1 How many minutes are there in a quarter of an hour?
2 What is the third day of the week?
3 How many seconds are there in five minutes?
4 What is the seventh month?
5 How many months are there in ten years?
6 What month is your birthday in?
7 What day is it today?
8 What day will it be tomorrow?
9 What day will it be the day after tomorrow?
10 What day was it yesterday?
11 What day was it the day before yesterday?
12 What month is it?

52 Time words

A Time in relation to now

Now means at this moment. **Then** means at another moment (usually in the past).
I was born in Edinburgh. **Then** we moved to London. **Now** I live in Cambridge.



It is 10 **o'clock** now.
I got up **four hours ago**, **at** 6 o'clock.
An hour ago it was 9 o'clock.

two years **for two years**
2014-2016 **from 2014 to 2016** **2014 → 2016**

last year / **last week** / **last Saturday**
next year / **next week** / **next summer**

It is July **now**.
Last month it was June.
Next month it will be August.

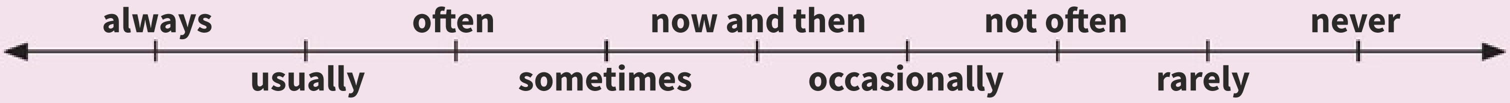
JANUARY

M	T	W	T	F	S	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

When we talk about time in general, we talk about **the past**, **the present** and **the future**.

In the past people didn't have television.
People may travel to Mars **in the future**.

B Frequency adverbs



It **always** snows in Russia in winter.
It **often** rains in the UK.
The Ancient Romans **never** went to America or Australia.

C Expressions

Notice the use of **a** in these expressions of frequency.
once [one time] **a week**: I go swimming **once a week**, every Saturday.
twice [two times] **a day**: I clean my teeth **twice a day**.
three times a year: I see my uncle **three times a year**.
four times a month: I play football **four or five times a month**.

I'll be with you **in a moment** [a very short time].
Nora's in Paris **at the moment** [now].
See you **soon** [in a short time]!
We met **recently** [not long ago].

Exercises

52.1 Fill the gaps with a preposition from the opposite page.

1 *In*.............................. the past, Rosa worked in many different countries. Rosa worked in Hong Kong 2.............................. three years, 3.............................. 2008 4.............................. 2011. 5.............................. the moment she is working in Tokyo. She will stay there 6.............................. two more years.

52.2 Draw lines to match the centuries to their time.

1 the 19th century
2 the 22nd century
3 the 18th century
4 the 21st century
5 the 20th century

the past
the present
the future

52.3 Are these sentences true about you? If not, write them out correctly. Use other frequency adverbs from B opposite.

1 I always go swimming on Fridays. *I sometimes go swimming on Fridays.*
2 I usually go to school / work by bus.
3 I occasionally watch TV.
4 I rarely drink milk.
5 I often wear a hat.
6 I rarely eat chocolate.
7 I always go to bed at 10.
8 I never go to the theatre.

52.4 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

1 Matthew will get his exam results very soon.
Do you think Matthew will get them next year, next month or tomorrow? *Probably tomorrow*
2 Alice and Adam met for the first time recently.
Do you think they first met last year, six months ago or a week ago?
3 I'll help you in a moment.
Do you think I'll help you next week, in two hours or in a few minutes?
4 It's 6 o'clock now.
Two hours ago it started to snow. What time was it then?

52.5 Look at the table and write sentences using expressions like *once a week*, *three times a month*, etc.

John plays tennis twice a week.

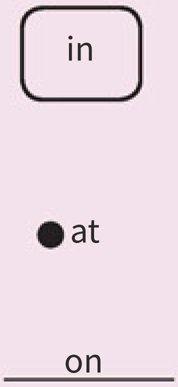
	play tennis	**practise the piano**	**have a business meeting in Germany**
John	Mondays and Thursdays	Saturdays	the first Friday every month
Julia and Alexa	Tuesdays, Fridays and Saturdays	every morning and every evening	once in January, March, May, July, August and December every year

53 Places

A General place words

Come **here**, please. [to me, to where I am]
Have you been to Lima? I'm going **there** in April. [not here, another place]
Max is coming **back** from Portugal in May. [to here again, to this place]
There are books and papers **everywhere** in my room. [in all parts / all places]
(See **Unit 42: Come / came / come**.)

B Prepositions



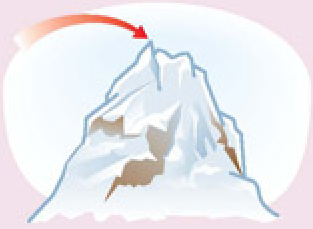
Luke is **in the kitchen**, making dinner.
There are two restaurants **in the village**.
Samantha lives **in Seoul** / **South Korea** / **Asia**.

I'll meet you **at the station**.
I always sit **at the front of the class**.

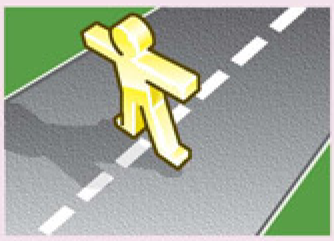
I like that photo **on the wall**.
Don't put your books **on the chair**. I want to sit **on it**!

C Positions

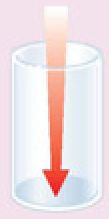
the **top** of the mountain



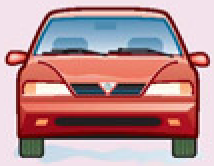
the **middle** of the road



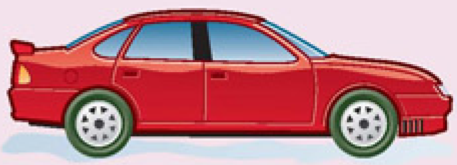
the **bottom** of the glass



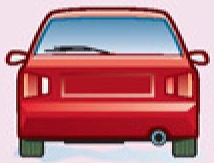
the **front** of the car



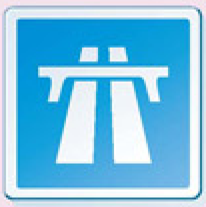
the **side** of the car

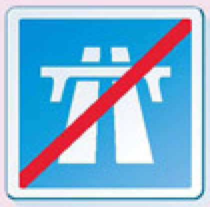


the **back** of the car



the **beginning** of the motorway
the **end** of the motorway

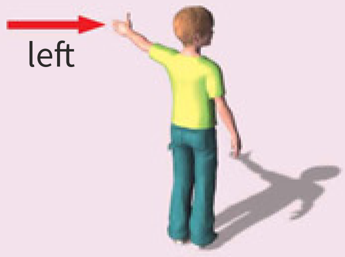


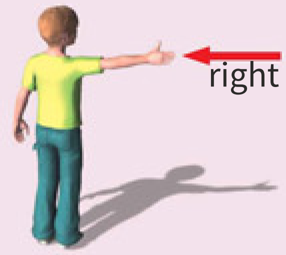


D Left and right

This is his **left** hand. This is his **right** hand.

In York Street, there is a cinema **on the left** and a restaurant **on the right**.





E Home and away

Is Eleanor **at home** [in her house / flat]?
No, sorry, she's **out** [not here for a short time, e.g. at the shops or at work].
No, sorry, she's **away** [not here for a longer time, e.g. on holiday].
No, sorry, she's **abroad** [in another country].

Exercises

53.1 Fill the gaps with *here*, *there*, *back* or *everywhere*.

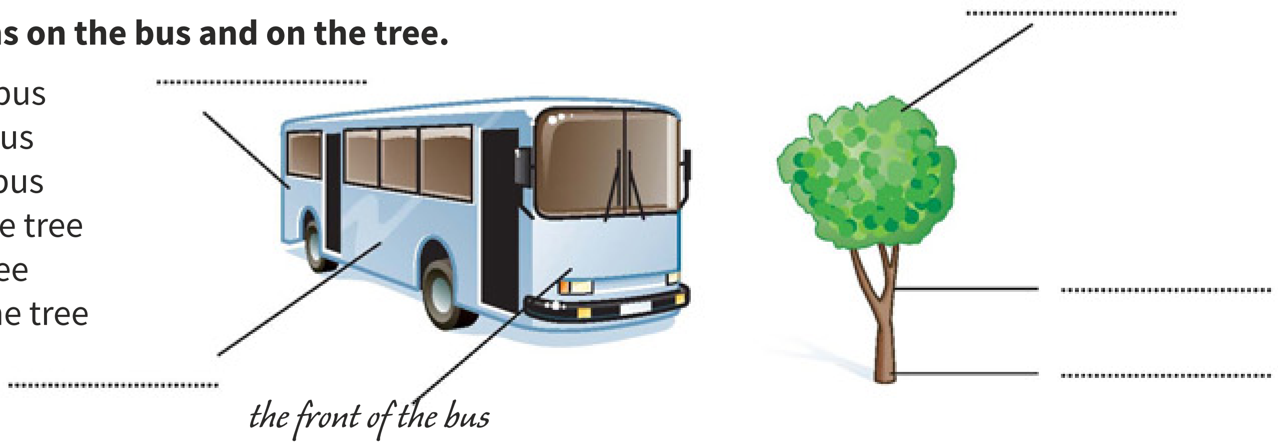
1 Thanks for lending me your dictionary. I'll bring it ....*back*.... soon. (See **Unit 44**: **Bring / brought / brought**.)
2 Come .... Emma! Don't go near the road! (See **Unit 42**: **Come / came / come**.)
3 This letter is for a teacher at the university. Can you take it .... (See **Unit 43**: **Take / took / taken**.)
4 I opened the washing machine too soon. Now there's water .... !
5 I want to leave this letter in Nora's office. Are you going .... ?
6 I'm going to Italy tomorrow, but I'm coming .... on Friday.

53.2 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

1 My brother works ....*in*.... Paris.
2 Why do you always sit .... the back of the class?
3 Let's go and sit .... the sofa.
4 What time do you arrive? I'll meet you .... the bus station.
5 There was a picture of an old man .... the wall.
6 Do you usually study .... your bedroom or .... the living room?

53.3 Mark the positions on the bus and on the tree.

1 the front of the bus
2 the side of the bus
3 the back of the bus
4 the middle of the tree
5 the top of the tree
6 the bottom of the tree


the front of the bus

53.4 Fill the gaps with *out*, *away* or *abroad*.

1 I'd like to work ....*abroad*.... and learn about a new country.
2 Is Lily here? No, she's .... but she'll be back in about five minutes.
3 I'm going .... tomorrow. I'm going to stay with my sister for a few days.
4 When we go .... we like to go .... and see new countries.

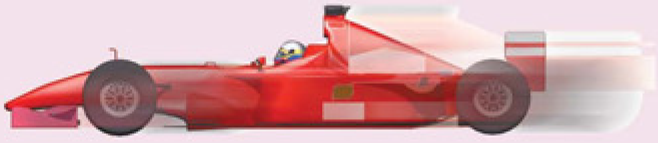
53.5 Answer these questions about yourself and about this book.

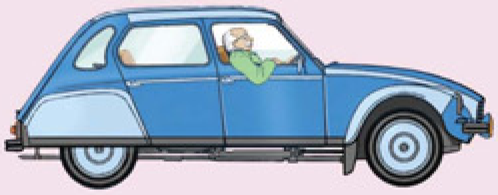
1 Are you studying English at home or abroad?
2 Are you going away this year?
3 What have you got in your left or right hand at the moment?
4 What is there at the end of this book?
5 Where is Unit 3 in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)
6 Where is Unit 36 in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)

54 Manner

Adjectives and adverbs can describe **manner**, i.e. *how* we do something.

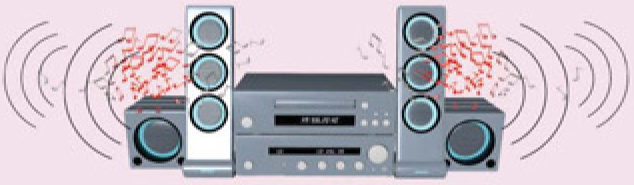
A Fast and slow

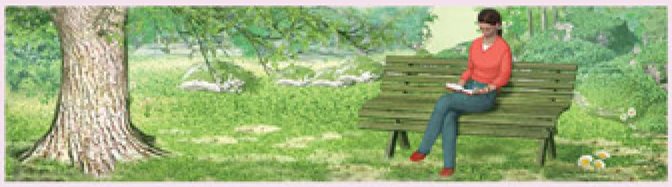




adjectives	This is a **fast** car.	This is a **slow** car.
adverbs	This car goes very **fast**.	This car goes very **slowly**.

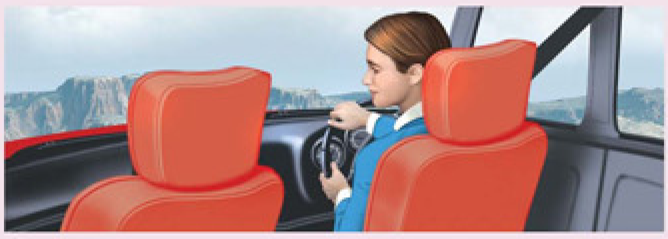
B **Loud** /laud/ **and quiet** /ˈkwaɪət/

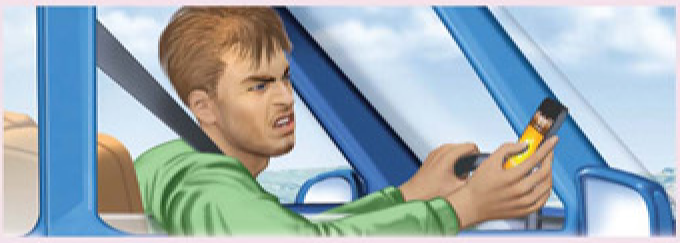




adjectives	The music is too **loud**.	It's very **quiet** here.
adverbs	The children sang **loudly**.	The teacher speaks very **quietly**. We can't hear him.

C Good and bad



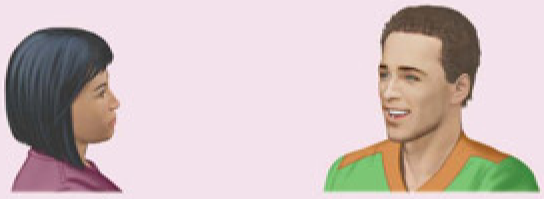


adjectives	She's a **good** driver.	He's a **bad** driver.
adverbs	She drives **well**.	He drives **badly**.

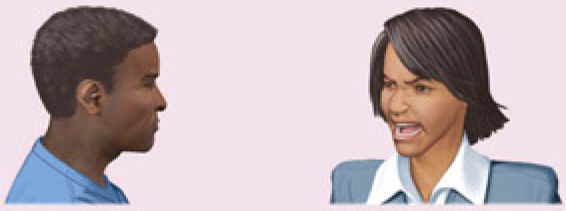
D Right and wrong

This sentence is **right**.	I like coffee very much.	[✓]
This sentence is **wrong**.	I like very much coffee.	[✗]

E Expressions with way

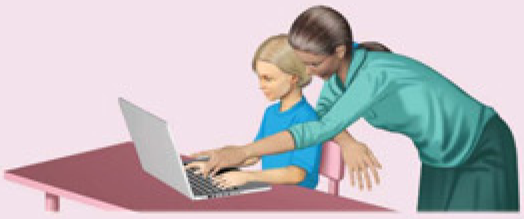


He's speaking **in a friendly way**.

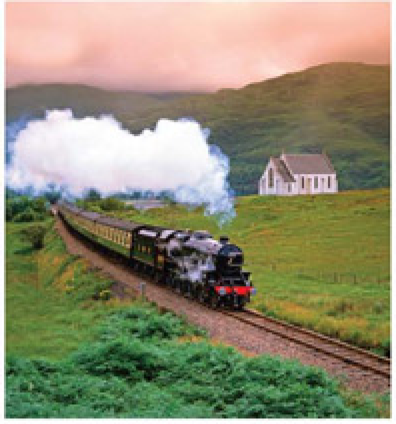


She's speaking **in an unfriendly way**.

You're doing that **the wrong way**.
Let me show you **the right way** to do it.



Exercises



54.1 Complete the sentences.

1 This train is **slow**. It goes very slowly
2 He is a **bad** singer. He sings very ....
3 She is always **loud**. She speaks very ....
4 He's a **fast** swimmer. He swims very ....
5 This girl is **quiet**. She always speaks ....
6 He's a **good** English-speaker. He speaks English ....

54.2 Complete the sentences.

1 Please don't play your music so loudly - I'm trying to study.
2 Let's take the .... train, not the fast one.
3 Katie is very .... at French but bad at German.
4 Why is Fiona behaving .... an unfriendly way?
5 I hope this is the .... answer.
6 It is better to do something well than to do it ....
7 The children are playing very .... - they know that grandma is asleep.
8 Did I do this exercise .... right way?

54.3 Are the definitions right or wrong? Use a dictionary.

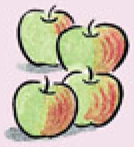
word	definition	right (✓)	wrong (✗)
suddenly	very slowly		✗
sadly	in an unhappy way		
strangely	not in a normal way		
quickly	very slowly		
easily	with no difficulty		

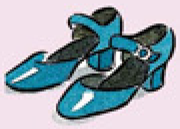
54.4 Complete these sentences about yourself and your friends or family.

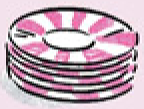
1 My sister plays tennis well.
2 My .... badly.
3 I .... fast.
4 My .... slow.
5 My .... quiet.
6 I .... loudly.
7 My .... in a friendly way.
8 I .... the right way.

55 Common uncountable nouns

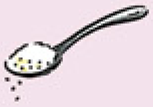
A What are countable and uncountable nouns?

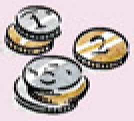

apples


shoes

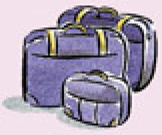

plates

COUNTABLE You can count them: four apples, two shoes.


sugar



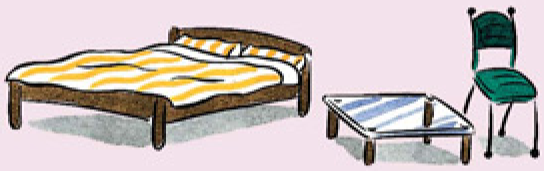
money

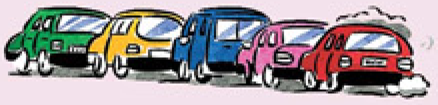

luggage

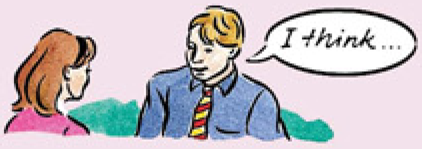
UNCOUNTABLE You can't count it. [NOT three ~~luggages~~]

Can I have **three apples** and **some sugar**, please?
Are these **shoes** yours? **Is** this **luggage** yours?

B Everyday uncountable nouns

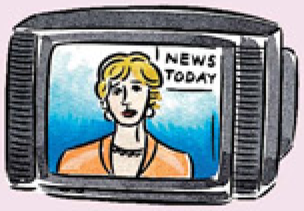

This **furniture** is modern.


The **traffic** is bad today.

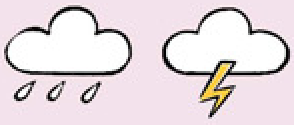


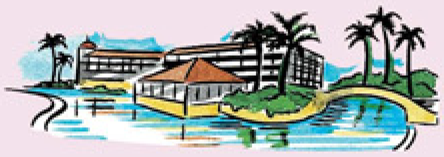
I'll give you some **advice** about your future.

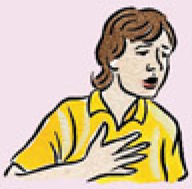
He can give some useful **information** about Bangkok.

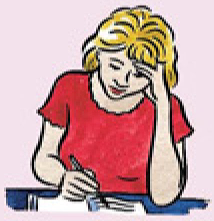


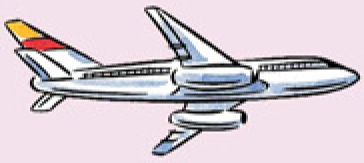
There is some bad **news** today.

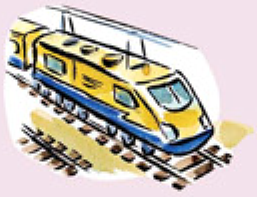

It's terrible **weather** today.


Accommodation here is expensive.


I need some fresh **air**.

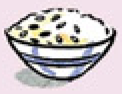

Studying is hard **work**.

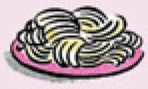

Air **travel** is faster than rail **travel**.

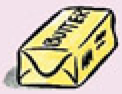


C Food

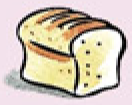
A lot of uncountable nouns are kinds of food and drink.

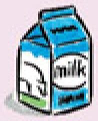

rice


spaghetti

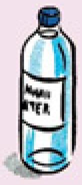


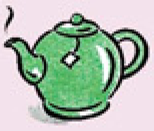
butter

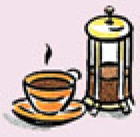

bread



milk


water


tea


coffee

Note: When we want to say how much we want, we say **two loaves** of bread, **three litres** of milk, **a kilo** of rice.

Tip

When you learn a new noun, write it down in a phrase which shows if it is countable or uncountable.

Exercises

55.1 Fill the gaps with an uncountable noun from the opposite page.

1 I'd like to buy a car but I haven't got enough ....money....
2 Cows give us .... and ....
3 If you don't know what to do, ask your parents for some ....
4 The .... at the seaside is very good for you.
5 Rob left school last month and is now looking for ....
6 There is always a lot of .... in central London.

55.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 heavy	a information
2 useful	b travel
3 bad	c water
4 modern	d luggage
5 brown	e news
6 cold	f furniture
7 space	g bread

55.3 Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb *be*.

1 Accommodation in the city centre ....is.... expensive.
2 Spaghetti with Italian tomato sauce .... very good.
3 The weather in Scotland .... best in the autumn.
4 The news .... better today than it .... yesterday.
5 Travel .... the most important thing in Sam's life.
6 Their furniture .... very old and very beautiful.

55.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 The news ~~are~~ not very good today. *is*
2 Where can I get some informations about your country?
3 Let me give you an advice.
4 Cook these spaghetti for ten minutes.
5 Can I have a bread, please?
6 We need to buy some new furnitures.
7 The east of the country usually has a better weather than the west.
8 I must find a new accommodation soon.

Over to you

Use a dictionary to check if these words are countable or uncountable and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook:
equipment
biscuit
homework
vehicle

56 Common adjectives: Good and bad things

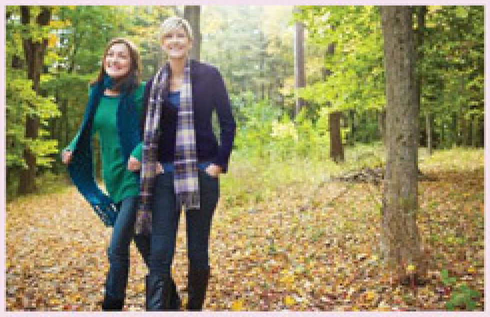
A Good adjectives

a **good** restaurant

an **excellent** restaurant

a **wonderful** view /'wʌndəfəl/

good ________________________________ **very good**
nice **lovely** **great** **wonderful** **excellent**



A: That's a **nice** jacket.
B: Thank you.

It's a **great** film. We all loved it.

A: It's a **lovely** day today! /'lʌvli/
B: Yes, it is.

A: Do you want to go to London on Saturday?
B: That's an **excellent** idea! [very good]

B Bad adjectives

The weather this summer was **very bad**.
Other words that mean very bad are **dreadful**, **horrible**, **terrible**:
The food in that café was **horrible**. Nobody liked it.
What's that **dreadful** smell?
I had a **terrible** day at work today.
The traffic's **terrible** at 5 o'clock on Fridays.

bad weather

C Expressions

A: The train arrives at 7 o'clock; dinner is at 8 o'clock.
B: **Excellent**! / **Great**! / **Wonderful**! / **Lovely**! / **Perfect**!

Note: We often say **not bad** when we are speaking.
A: I get $500 a week in my job.
B: That's **not bad**! (= good!)

We use these adjectives with **how**:
A: I have to get up at 5.30 tomorrow.
B: Oh, **how awful**! / **how horrible**!

A: I've got a great new job in New York!
B: **How nice**! / **How wonderful**! / **How lovely**!

My hair is **awful**!

Common mistakes

How awful! / How horrible!
[NOT ~~How bad!~~]

Exercises

56.1 Complete the sentences.

1 My hair's awful........ . I must go to the hairdresser's.
2 The weather's .... I don't want to go out.
3 The traffic is .... in the city centre. Take the train.
4 That's a(n) .... idea! Let's do it!
5 How .... ! Three exams on the same day!
6 What a .... house! The sea is only 100 metres away!
7 My timetable's not .... I'm free on Wednesdays and Fridays.
8 We have a .... view of the mountains from our hotel room.

56.2 What can you say? Someone says to you …

1 Do you like my new skirt? Yes, it's lovely!
2 I have to get up at 4.30 tomorrow morning.
3 Do you want to go out for dinner tonight?
4 (*in your town*) Excuse me. Is there a good restaurant in this town?
5 What do you think of your English lessons?
6 Is it OK if I come to your house at 6.30 tomorrow evening?

56.3 Match the words on the left with an expression from the right.

1 Blue sky, sun 25°
2 Five stars (*****)
3 I don't want to walk. Let's take a taxi.
4 90 out of 100 in an exam
5 (*in summer*) Grey sky, wind, rain, 4°

a Wonderful news
b Awful weather
c Lovely weather
d A very good idea
e An excellent hotel

56.4 Put these words into the good or bad column. Use a dictionary.

~~dreadful~~ brilliant marvellous nasty fine

good	bad
	dreadful

56.5 Now think of two nouns to go with each of the adjectives in 56.4. Use a dictionary to help you.

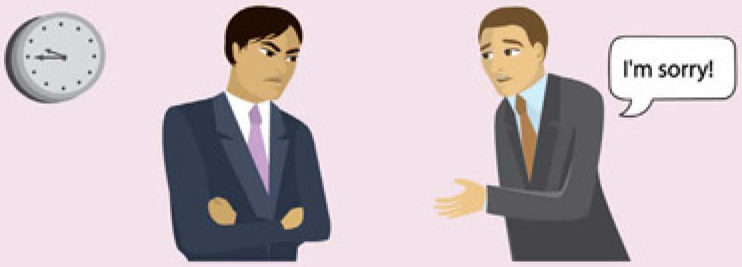
dreadful weather / film..
brilliant ....
marvellous ....
nasty ....
fine ....

57 Words and prepositions

A Phrasal and prepositional verbs

Sarah Smith

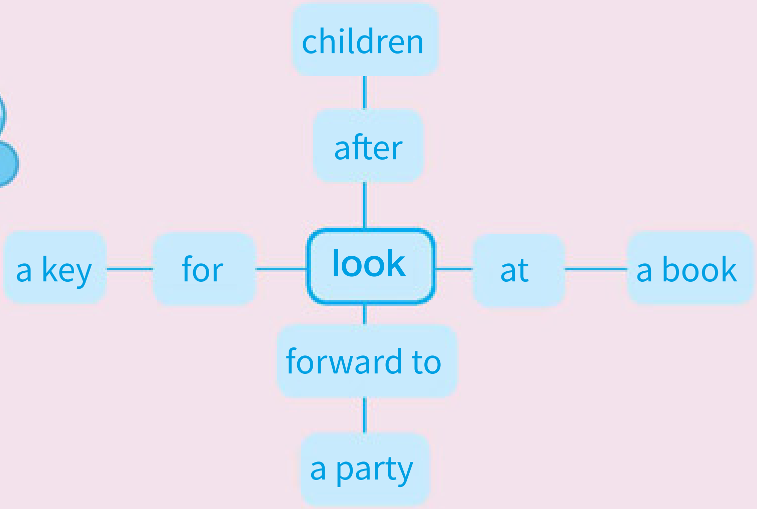
Some verbs are used with different particles and prepositions.
I **listen to** the radio in bed in the morning.
I **waited for** the bus for half an hour yesterday.
I **asked for** a black coffee, not a white one.
Where do I **pay for** our meal?
I hope you can **come to** my party.
This book **belongs to** Sarah Smith.
What are you **thinking about**?
Lauren **thanked** her mother **for** the present.
Damian **apologised for** being late.



B Phrasal verbs

Some verbs have different meanings when they are used with different prepositions, for example, **look**.
I love **looking at** old photographs.
If you want to find your key, you must **look for** it.
Parents **look after** their children.
[they take care of them]

You **look forward to** something nice in the future, for example, a friend's visit, or a holiday.



C Adjectives

Some adjectives are also followed by prepositions.
I'm **good at** geography but **bad at** maths.
I'm **interested in** (hearing) all your news.
He is **afraid of** mice.
Lucy is **proud of** winning a medal and her mother is proud of her.
Note: You are **used to** what you know well: I'm **used to** getting up early, I always do.
You have **to get used to** something new, for example a new school or driving on the other side of the road.

Common mistakes

She's a lovely person and I'm really **happy about** her success
[NOT ~~happy for~~ her success].

D Grammar

Prepositions are followed by a noun: Artur is **good at tennis**
or by the *-ing* form of the verb: Artur is **good at playing** the piano.

Tip

Look carefully at prepositions when you read in English. Make a note of any phrases which use prepositions in a new way.

Exercises

57.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 John is waiting
2 This bicycle belongs
3 The children thanked their aunt
4 Molly is listening
5 He apologised
6 Let me pay
7 Javier is thinking
8 Over 100 people came

a for his mistake.
b about the holidays.
c for a train to London.
d to the hotel.
e for our tickets.
f to the football match.
g to music on her phone.
h for the money.

57.2 Complete these sentences using the appropriate preposition(s) and a word or phrase from the box.

~~books~~ the children me people my party it a new one them

1 Isabel's granddaughter can't read yet but she likes looking *at books*
2 A nurse looks ....
3 I can't find my glasses? Could you help me look .... ?
4 It's my birthday soon. I'm really looking ....
5 Why are you looking .... in that way? Is my face dirty?
6 I don't like my job very much. I'm looking ....
7 Alex is going to France in July. He is looking ....
8 I often look .... when their parents go out.

57.3 Write prepositions.

Josephine has got used ^{1} *to* .... her new school and is doing well there. She is very good ^{2}.......... English and maths. She always listens ^{3} .... her teachers. She is very interested ^{4}.......... sport and she belongs ^{5} .... a tennis club and a swimming club. Her parents were very proud ^{6} .... her when she won a medal for swimming last month. Josephine was very happy ^{7} .... her medal too, of course. She showed it to me when she came ^{8}.......... my house last Saturday.

57.4 Hiroshi is a visitor from Japan. Make sentences about what he found strange (✗) in Britain and what he didn't find strange (✓).

1 speaking English every day ✗ *He wasn't used to speaking English every day.*
2 driving on the left ✓ *Hiroshi was used to driving on the left.*
3 eating British food ✗
4 traffic jams ✓
5 expensive shops ✓
6 British money ✗

57.5 Answer the questions about yourself.

1 What are / were you good at at school? What are / were you bad at?
2 What do you usually ask for when you go to a café?
3 What are you proud of?
4 What are you afraid of?
5 What kind of music do you like listening to?
6 What are you looking forward to?
7 Do you belong to any clubs?
8 Are you used to eating different kinds of food?

58 Prefixes

Prefixes come at the beginning of words. They can help you to understand what a new word means. Here are some common prefixes.

prefix	meaning	examples
ex (+ noun)	was but now isn't	**ex-wife**, **ex-boyfriend**
half (+ noun or adjective)	50% of something	**half-price**, **half-hour**
in, **im** (+ adjective)	not	**informal**, **impossible**
non (+ adjective or noun)	not	**non-smoking**
pre (+ noun, adjective, verb)	before	**pre-school, pre-heat**
re (+ verb)	again	**redo**, **rewrite**
un (+ adjective or noun)	not	**unhappy**, **unsafe**

An **ex-wife** is a woman who is now divorced.
An **ex-boyfriend** is someone who is no longer your boyfriend.
Something that cost £10 yesterday and costs £5 today is **half-price**.
A **half-hour** journey is a journey of 30 minutes.
Informal clothes are clothes like jeans and trainers. Formal clothes are things like a suit.
If something is **impossible**, you can't do it. It's impossible to read with your eyes closed.
You must not smoke in a **non-smoking** restaurant.
Pre-school children are too young to go to school.
You nearly always need to **pre-heat** the oven before you cook something.
To **redo** something is to do it a second time, and to **rewrite** something is to write it a second time.
Unhappy means sad, the opposite of happy.
Unsafe means dangerous, the opposite of safe.

UNSAFE
-NO-
SWIMMING

Tip

Sometimes words with prefixes have a hyphen (-), e.g. a half-hour programme, and sometimes they don't, e.g. an impossible question. Use a dictionary when you are not sure if there is a hyphen or not.

Exercises

58.1 Choose one of the words from the opposite page to fit in these sentences.

1 This part of the restaurant is *non-smoking.*
2 I can't read this. Please .... your homework.
3 In .... English we often say 'Hi', not 'Good morning'.
4 I liked school but my sister was very .... there.
5 I bought two T-shirts because they were .... in the sale.
6 Don't walk on that wall - the notice says it is ....

58.2 Write your own sentences to show what these words mean.

1 ex-wife *Jennifer Aniston is Brad Pitt's ex-wife.*
2 ex-boyfirend ....
3 redo ....
4 impossible ....
5 pre-school ....

58.3 What do you think these words and phrases mean? Look at the table opposite to help you.

1 an ex-husband *a man who is now divorced from his wife*
2 pre-exam nerves
3 an incorrect answer
4 an unread book
5 to retell a story
6 a half-brother
7 an unfinished letter
8 a non-alcoholic drink
9 to reread a book
10 to resend an email

58.4 Find the negative forms of these words. Use a dictionary to help you.

1 possible *impossible*
2 comfortable
3 polite
4 pleasant
5 attractive

Over to you

Look at the table opposite and write one more example of a word using each prefix. Use a dictionary to help you. Write a sentence using your word.

ex: *My ex-boss lives near me.*
half: *You stop at half-time in a football match.*

59 Suffixes

Suffixes come at the end of words. They help you to understand the meaning of a new word. Here are some common suffixes.

suffix	meaning	examples
er, or (noun)	person	**worker**, **swimmer**, **instructor**
er, or (noun)	machine, thing	**cooker**, **calculator**
ful (adjective)	full of	**useful**, **beautiful**
less (adjective)	without	**useless**, **endless**
ly	makes an adverb from an adjective	**quickly**, **happily**
ness	makes an abstract noun from an adjective	**happiness**, **sadness**
y	makes an adjective from a noun	**sandy**, **sunny**

He's a hard **worker**. He works 12 hours a day.
She's a very good **swimmer**. She was in the Olympic team.
Her tennis is much better now that she has a new **instructor**.
We've got a new gas **cooker** so the food should be delicious!
Can we use our **calculators** in the maths test?

Thanks for the information. It was very **useful**.
What a **beautiful** photo. I think it will win the competition.

This book is no help at all - it's **useless**.
I can't finish this book - it's **endless**.

He was late for work so he went **quickly** to the station.
They are **happily** married with two young children.

The mother was smiling with **happiness** as she held her baby in her arms.
They said goodbye with great **sadness** because they knew they would probably never meet again.

That beach is very popular with tourists
because it is long and **sandy**.
It's a lovely **sunny** day - let's go to the beach.

Exercises

59.1 Which of the example words from the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?

1 a s*unny day*……

2 a golf i……

3 a s……

4 He's smiling h……

1234567890
5 a c……

6 a u…… thing

59.2 Find the adjectives and match them with the nouns they go with in the box. Some adjectives can go with more than one noun.

~~electric~~ worker fast beautiful ~~cooker~~ sandy weather sunny car hard idea useful book endless swimmer beach ~~guitar~~ smile picture fun useless

1 *electric cooker / guitar*
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……
8 ……
9 ……

59.3 Complete the sentences using the word in brackets and a suffix.

1 Can I use your bottle *opener*, please? (open)
2 I'm tired because I slept very …… last night. (bad)
3 The waiter was very …… and explained everything on the menu. (help)
4 Thank you very much for all your …… . (kind)
5 It's important not to make …… mistakes in your writing. (care)
6 It was wet and …… most of last week. (wind)
7 I did the homework very …… . (easy)
8 Do you know a good …… who could do some work on our house? (build)

59.4 What do you think these words and phrases mean? Use the information about suffixes from the opposite page to help you.

1 a hair dryer *a thing that you use to dry your hair*
2 a traveller
3 slowly
4 hopeful
5 rainy
6 painless
7 badly
8 a tin opener
9 a footballer
10 snowy

60 Words you may confuse

This unit looks at words which are easy to mix up.

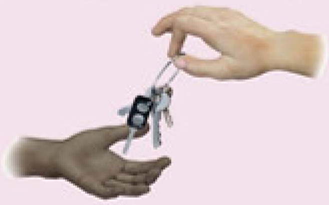
A

Similar sounds

quite /kwaɪt/ / **quiet** /ˈkwaɪət/

This book is **quite** good. bad → quite good → good

My bedroom is very **quiet** [silent].



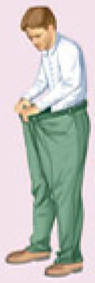
lose /luːz/ **loose** /luːs/

A: Why do I always **lose** my keys!

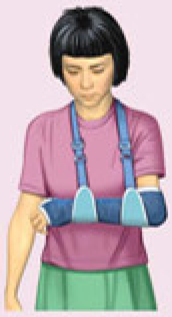
B: Here they are.

A: Oh, thank you!

If you **lose** something, you do not know where it is / you can't find it.



These trousers are very **loose**. (loose means they are not tight, because they are too big)



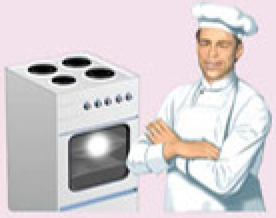
fell / **felt**

Fell is the past of **fall**.

Yesterday I **fell** and broke my arm.

Felt is the past of **feel**.

I **felt** ill yesterday, but I **feel** OK today.



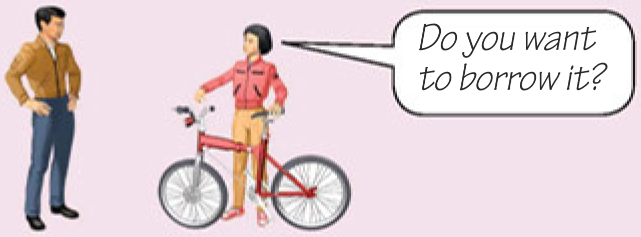
cook / **cooker**

He is a very good **cook** [the person who cooks].

This **cooker** costs £500. [the thing you cook on]

B

Similar or related meanings


Do you want to borrow it?

lend / **borrow**

If you **lend** something, you *give* it.

If you **borrow** something, you *get* it.

Sam wants a bicycle:

SAM: Will you **lend** me your bicycle? (= you *give* it to me for one day / an hour, etc.)

or Can I **borrow** your bicycle? (= I *get* it from you)

RITA: Yes, take it.

SAM: Thanks.

check / **control**

The passport officer **checked** my passport. [looked at it]

We use the mouse to **control** the computer. [tell it what to do]

C

Other words often mixed up

They're **waiting for** the bus.

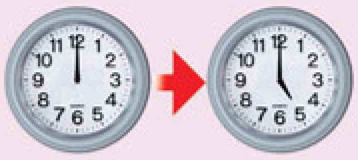
I **hope** I pass my exams. [I really want to pass]

I haven't studied; I **expect** I'll fail my exams. [it's probable]

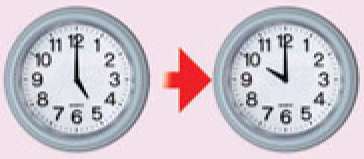
In English the **afternoon** is from about 12 o'clock till 5 or 6 pm.

The **evening** is from 5 or 6 pm until about 9 or 10 pm.

After 9 or 10 pm it is the **night**.



afternoon



evening

Exercises

60.1 Fill the gaps with words from A opposite. The first letter is given.

1 Please be q*uiet*............ . The baby is sleeping.
2 If you l.............................. your passport you must call the embassy.
3 I f.............................. tired this morning, but I am OK now.
4 We are going to buy a c .... for our new kitchen.
5 She f.............................. and broke her leg. She had to go to hospital.
6 It's q.............................. cold today.
7 Do you have this skirt in a smaller size? This one is too l ....
8 My sister is a good c .... I love eating at her house.

60.2 What does each word below sound like? Circle the correct word.

1 lose *juice* [✓ *shoes*]
2 loose *juice* *shoes*
3 quite *right* *higher*
4 quiet *right* *higher*

60.3 Answer these questions.

1 Why do we use a mouse with a computer? To *control it.*..............................
2 What does the passport officer do to your passport? He/She ....
3 If you want to use someone's camera for two hours, what do you say?
Can I .... ?
4 What do you say to someone at 3 pm? Good ....
5 What do people do at a bus stop? They ....
6 What do you say to a friend if you need £1?
Can you .... ?
7 What do you say if someone makes too much noise? Please be ....

60.4 Answer these questions.

1 Are you expecting any visitors today?
2 What do you hope to do this summer?
3 Do you borrow things from your friends? What things?
4 Would you lend £100 to your best friend?

Look at these units to find other words that are often confused:

Do and **make**	**Units 40** and **41**
Take and **bring**	**Units 43** and **44**
Say, **tell**, **speak** and **talk**	**Unit 48**
Rob and **steal**	**Unit 34**

Over to you

Look up these pairs of verbs in a dictionary and make notes on the difference in meaning:

1 lie - lay - lain
lay - laid - laid

2 rise - rose - risen
raise - raised - raised

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1
2 brother
3 aunt
4 uncle
5 grandmother
6 grandfather
7 nephew
8 niece
9 mother
10 wife
11 cousin

1.2
2 aunt
3 only child
4 father
5 wife
6 mother
7 grandchildren
8 wives
9 grandparents (parents is also a possible answer)

1.3 *Possible answers:*

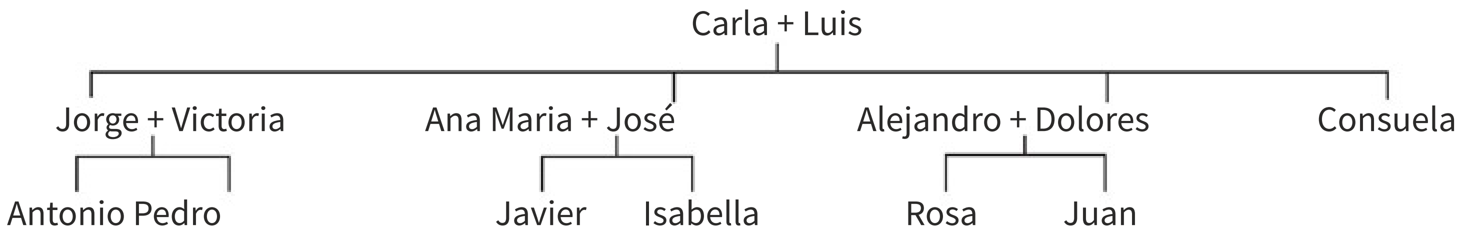
1 Marta has / has got one brother and one sister.
2 Marta has / has got two cousins.
3 Marta has / has got two nephews but she hasn't got any nieces.
4 Marta has / has got only one grandmother now.
5 Marta doesn't come from a very big family.

1.4 *Your own answer*

Over to you

Possible family tree:

I am José. Ana Maria is my wife. Javier and Isabella are our children. Javier is our son and Isabella is our daughter. Rosa is our niece. Antonio, Pedro and Juan are our nephews. Carla and Luis are my parents. Jorge is my brother and Dolores and Consuela are my sisters.



Unit 2

2.1 *Possible answers:*

2 My father was born in South Africa on June 4th 1959.
3 My brother was born in London on June 6th 1984.
4 My husband was born in Russia on February 6th 1979.
5 My son was born in Cambridge on October 16th 2005.

2.2
2 (bride)groom
3 single
4 weigh
5 divorced
6 funeral
7 honeymoon
8 widowed

2.3 2 to 3 of 4 on 5 born 6 after

2.4
2 Christopher Columbus was born in 1451 and died in 1506.
3 Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452 and died in 1519.
4 Princess Diana was born in 1961 and died in 1997.
5 Heath Ledger was born in 1979 and died in 2008.

2.5
2 death
3 dead
4 died
5 dead

2.6
Possible answer:

I have one brother and one sister. My sister got married this year. For her honeymoon, she went to Italy. My brother has two children. They were born in 2001 and 2008.

Unit 3

3.1
2 nose
3 heart
4 stomach
5 shoulder
6 ear
7 tooth
8 thumb
9 back
10 waist

3.2
2 toes
3 teeth
4 nose
5 heart
6 ears
7 knee / shoulders
8 blood
9 brain

3.3
2 That woman has got very big **feet**.
3 My grandfather has a pain in **his** shoulder.
4 The baby has already got two **teeth**.
5 The little girl needs to wash **her** face and **her** hands before dinner.
6 My **hair is** dirty. I need to wash **it**.

3.4
2 football
3 lipstick
4 hairbrush
5 headscarf
6 handbag

3.5

				1 m	
				o	
				u	
	2 f	o	o	t	
	i			h	
3 k	n	e	4 e		
	g		y		
	e	5 n	e	c	k
	r				
	s				

Unit 4

4.1
1 *suit*, shirt, tie
2 T-shirt, shorts
3 socks, trainers
4 carrying, bag
5 belt
6 jacket, coat

4.2

2 belt - waist
3 hat - head
4 glasses - eyes
5 shoe - foot
6 glove - hand
7 tights - legs
8 scarf - neck

4.3

1 is
2 is wearing
3 has; is carrying
4 is; are
5 were; are
6 Is
7 are
8 is wearing / has

4.4

2 jumper
3 umbrella
4 skirt
5 suitcase
6 boots
7 coat
8 watch
9 shirt
10 hat

4.5

morning	night
get dressed	*get* undressed
or put *your clothes on*	*or* take *your clothes off*

4.6

Possible answer:

I'm wearing a blue T-shirt and black trousers. I've got white shoes on. I'm wearing a watch, three rings and a pair of glasses.

Unit 5

5.1

2 tall
3 slim / thin
4 fair
5 young
6 fat / overweight
7 elderly

5.2

2 Is Elena's hair blonde / fair?
3 Is Mike's hair long?
4 Are your parents elderly? (Are your parents old? is a less polite question)
5 Is his sister pretty / beautiful?
6 Why is Sara so thin?

5.3

Possible answers:

2 Jeff has short fair hair and a beard.
3 Anika's got dark skin and dark hair.
4 Stefan's hair is long and he has a moustache.

5.4

2 What does your teacher look like?
3 How much do you weigh? / How heavy are you?
4 How old is your mother?
5 How tall is your sister?
6 What do your parents look like?

5.5

Possible answers:

2 She's tall and slim with blonde hair.
3 I'm 75 kilos. I'm not overweight but I'm not thin.
4 She's middle-aged. She's 49.
5 She's very tall for her age. She's 1 metre 58.
6 They're medium height. My mother has long dark hair and my father has fair hair and a beard and a moustache.

Over to you

Possible answers:

Joanna: Joanna is tall. She has long black hair and brown eyes. She's very pretty.
Kevin: Kevin is medium height. He has fair hair and a beard. His eyes are blue. He's average-looking.
My mother: My mother is short with grey hair. She has green eyes. She's beautiful.

Unit 6

6.1
2 I feel sick. / I don't feel very well. / I feel ill.
3 feel ill.
4 I've got toothache.
5 a cold

6.2

illness	treatment
a headache	*take an aspirin*
toothache	go to the dentist
a heart attack	go to hospital
a cold	go to bed with a hot drink

6.3
2 cholera
3 asthma
4 hay fever
5 cancer / heart attacks

6.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and not many sweet things.
2 I like / love swimming and cycling.
3 Yes, I feel stressed when I have exams.
4 Yes, I had an operation once / I broke my leg, etc. ('Be in hospital' means you are ill, you are a patient. 'Be in a hospital' can just mean you are visiting someone.)
5 Yes, I start sneezing as soon as I get near flowers or grass.

Unit 7

7.1 *Possible answers:*

2 I hate cowboy films.
3 I like flying.
4 I like tea.
5 I don't like football.
6 I love cats.
7 I like cars.
8 I don't like jazz music.

7.2 *Possible answers:*

2 I prefer cats to dogs.
3 I prefer sightseeing to sunbathing.
4 I prefer cars to bikes.
5 I prefer strawberry to chocolate ice cream.
6 I prefer watching sport to doing sport.

7.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I hope (that) the lesson ends soon.
3 I want some food.
4 I hope (that) my friend feels better soon.
5 I want to go to bed.
6 I want to cry.
7 I hope (that) it gets hotter soon.
8 I want him / her to feel / be happy again soon.

7.4
2 Nicholas is thirsty.
3 Max is cold.
4 Sunita is tired.
5 Fiona is surprised.
6 The children are hot.

7.5
2 I am happy **about** my sister's good news.
3 The teacher wants **us to** learn these new words.
4 I **really like** spiders.
5 My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy **for** him.
6 My parents want **me to** go to university.
7 I feel very well. How **about** you?
8 Priya is **a** bit tired this morning.

Over to you

Possible answers:

2 I felt hungry when I saw some chocolate in a shop window.
3 I felt tired yesterday after school.
4 I felt angry when somebody stole my mobile phone.

Unit 8

8.1
2 Good luck!
3 Congratulations! / Well done!
4 Goodbye.
5 Happy Birthday!
6 Fine, thanks.
7 Hello! / Hi!
8 Thank you / Cheers.

8.2
2 Happy Christmas!
3 Thank you!
4 Congratulations!
5 Sorry!
6 Good morning!

8.3
2 Thank you. Cheers!
3 Goodnight. Sleep well.
4 Good morning.
5 Good afternoon.
6 Happy New Year!
7 Sorry!
8 Happy Christmas!

8.4 *Possible answers:*

ANN: How are you?
YOU: Fine, thanks.
ANN: It's my birthday today.
YOU: Happy birthday!
ANN: Would you like a drink?
YOU: Yes, please. An orange juice.
ANN: Here you are.
YOU: Cheers! / Thank you!

8.5 *Possible answer:*

A: Hello, good morning.
B: Hi. How are you?
A: Fine, thanks. And you?
B: I'm very well. I passed my maths exam!
A: Well done! I'm taking an exam in physics this afternoon. I'm a little nervous.
B: Good luck! You'll do fine.
A: I hope so, because it's also my birthday today.
B: Is it? Happy Birthday! Why don't we go out for a drink this evening?
A: OK. See you later. Goodbye.
B: Goodbye. See you soon.

Unit 9

9.1
2 around
3 really
4 else
5 actually (really is also possible)
6 around

9.2
2 mind 3 Let's 4 Be careful 5 anyway

9.3
2 Look out!
3 What a pity!
4 It's up to you.
5 Hurry up!
6 Well done!

9.4
VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!
LUKE: Well **done**! How about **going** out for a meal this evening?
VERA: Great! **Let's** go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?
LUKE: I don't **mind**. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.
VERA: Oh, it **doesn't** matter.
LUKE: OK. Why don't we **go** to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.
VERA: **I** agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?
LUKE: **Absolutely**!

Unit 10

10.1
2 Pasta; pizza (in either order)
3 potatoes
4 fish and chips
5 meat
6 hot dog

10.2

fruit	vegetables
pineapple	*beans*
grapes	onions
apple	carrot
pear	garlic
	mushrooms

10.3
2 strawberry
3 peas
4 apple
5 potatoes
6 tomatoes

10.4
2 beer
3 milk
4 coffee
5 fruit juice
6 mineral water

10.5
2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c

10.6
Possible answer:

My favourite foods are pizza, fish, strawberries and pineapple.
My favourite drinks are tea, coffee and fruit juice.
They are quite good for you.

Unit 11

11.1
2 yes
3 yes
4 no, the freezer is colder than the fridge
5 yes
6 no, a tea towel is for drying plates

11.2 *Possible questions*:

2 Where's the saucepan / frying pan?
3 Where do these bowls go?
4 Can I help with the washing-up?
5 Where can I find the milk?

11.3 *Possible answers:*

2 a cup, a teapot, a spoon
3 a frying pan, a cooker
4 a plate or bowl, a knife and fork, or a spoon and fork, or chopsticks
5 a glass or a cup or a mug
6 a microwave
7 washing-up liquid, a sink and a cloth or a dishwasher
8 a washing machine

11.4
2 a frying pan and a glass
3 a teapot and a tea towel (*or* cloth)
4 on the worktop next to the cooker
5 a kitchen roll
6 (a cupboard with) a bin and a cloth

Unit 12

12.1
2 wardrobe
3 mirror
4 hairbrush
5 comb
6 bed
7 bedside lamp
8 bedside table
9 alarm clock
10 chest of drawers

12.2 *Possible answers:*

toothpaste, hairbrush, comb, pyjamas, shower gel

12.3
2 Selim and Umit are washing their faces.
3 Mrs Park is going downstairs.
4 Mr Park is having a bath.
5 Jaime is getting dressed.
6 Lee is turning off the light.

12.4 *Possible answers:*

bath, shower, toilet, basin, soap, shower gel, shampoo, toothbrush, toothpaste, hairbrush, comb, razor, mirror, bathroom cupboard, shelf

12.5 *Possible answers:*

2 My bedroom has two windows.
3 In my bedroom there is a small bed.
4 There is one wardrobe on the right of the room.
5 True
6 I've got a lamp, some books, a radio and an alarm clock on my bedside table.
7 There is a chest of drawers next to the wardrobe.
8 I have got a dressing table.

12.6
2 10.30 (for example)
3 undressed
4 get
5 for
6 off
7 fall
8 wake
9 up
10 shower / bath
11 clean
12 get

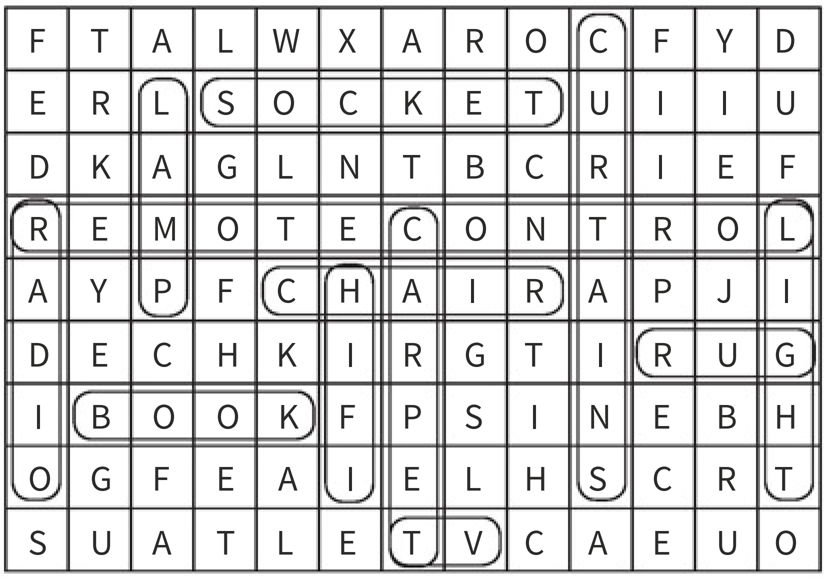
Unit 13

13.1
2 a sofa
3 a coffee table
4 a picture
5 a light switch
6 a hi-fi
7 a carpet or rug
8 a remote control

13.2
2 e
3 f
4 c
5 d
6 a

13.3
2 I don't often listen **to** the radio.
3 We need some more **bookshelves** in this room.
4 I watched television all evening yesterday. (not 'at')
5 It's dark now. Please **close** the curtains.
6 Liam has some very nice **furniture** in his house.

13.4



F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	B	O	O	K	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

Over to you

Possible answer:

In my living room there is not much furniture. There is a table, a TV, a desk, a sofa and two armchairs. The walls are white and there are some pictures on them. I like to relax in the living room. In the evening I watch TV there, or listen to music.

Unit 14

14.1
2 A doctor works in a hospital (or a clinic, or a surgery).
3 A waiter works in a restaurant (or a café).
4 A secretary works in an office.
5 A shop assistant works in a shop.
6 A hairdresser works in a beauty salon (or a hairdresser's).

14.2
2 engineer
3 taxi driver
4 nurse
5 mechanic
6 secretary

14.3

Across	Down
1 bus driver	1 doctor
2 teacher	2 waiter
3 writer	3 nurse

14.4
2 engineer
3 warden
4 librarian
5 clerk
6 officer

14.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm a teacher.
2 In a university.
3 Yes, very interesting.

Unit 15

15.1
2 d
3 g
4 f
5 b
6 i
7 e
8 a
9 h

15.2 board rubber, ruler, piece of paper, pencil sharpener, drawing pin, pencil, textbook, notebook, pen

15.3 *Possible answer:*

In the room where I study English I can see a whiteboard, a noticeboard, a notebook, some pens, a pencil, a board rubber and a pencil sharpener.

15.4
2 does
3 passes
4 take / do
5 passes
6 go
7 fails
8 study
9 do
10 get

15.5 *Possible answer:*

My three favourite subjects were languages, English and art. I didn't like PE, physics and maths.

Unit 16

16.1 *Possible answer:*

I have the following: address, letter, envelope, stamp, phone number, phone, mobile, computer, screen, memory stick, mouse, keyboard, mobile device, CD-ROM, and email address.

16.2
2 phone box
3 mobile (phone)
4 stamp
5 mouse
6 address
7 envelope
8 letter box
9 screen
10 laptop
11 memory stick
12 phone

16.3
2 speak
3 sorry
4 at
5 take (*or* give him)
6 call (*or* phone *or* ring)

16.4 *Possible answers:*

1 01223 240754: oh one double two three, two four oh, seven five four
0207 4417895: oh two oh seven, double four one, seven eight nine five
2 steve@stuff.co.uk: Steve at stuff dot co dot U-K
katerina08@coldmail.com: katerina oh eight at coldmail dot com

16.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I prefer to phone my friends.
2 I send more emails.
3 I go online several times a day.
4 I prefer to use a laptop.
5 I don't write letters very often.

Unit 17

17.1
2 a
3 e
4 b
5 c

17.2
2 charger
3 call
4 camera
5 SIM card
6 phone case

17.3
2 takes
3 downloaded
4 called
5 left

17.4
2 swipe
3 saved

17.5
Possible answers:
1 I don't use a PIN to lock my phone.
2 I have a phone case. It's yellow and has a smiley face on it.
3 The apps I use most often are WhatsApp and Google maps.
4 I save all my photos, but my memory gets full and I have to delete them sometimes.
5 I took a selfie when I went on holiday two months ago.
6 I prefer to text people because if you call, it may not be a good time for people to answer.

Unit 18

18.1
2 going
3 time
4 by
5 send

18.2
2 a package holiday (or package tour)
3 a coach tour
4 a walking holiday
5 a winter holiday

18.3
Possible answers:

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry	✓✓		✓	✓✓	✓✓
car	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓
flight		✓✓✓	✓	✓	✓✓

18.4
2 passport
3 camera
4 luggage (or suitcase)
5 rucksack
6 tickets

18.5
2 a visa
3 a plane
4 a rucksack
5 a suitcase

18.6
2 nightlife
3 local
4 postcard

Unit 19

19.1
2 toy shop
3 butcher
4 newsagent
5 gift shop
6 baker

19.2
2 a supermarket
3 the post office (or a newsagent)
4 a gift shop
5 a bookshop
6 a department store (or perhaps a supermarket)

19.3
2 ground floor
3 fourth floor
4 basement
5 first floor
6 second floor
7 second floor
8 basement
9 third floor
10 fourth floor

19.4
2 cash
3 (a £20) note
4 a credit or a debit card
5 change
6 a shop that sells meat
7 the floor above the ground floor (in a British building)
8 a shop that sells newspapers and magazines
9 the floor under the ground floor

19.5
2 Closed
3 Pull
4 Push
5 Open

19.6
1 cost
2 pay
3 (carrier) bag

Unit 20

20.1 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 c

20.2
2 reviews
3 add
4 delete
5 delivery
6 credit card

20.3
2 order number
3 post code
4 next day

20.4 2 E 3 B 4 C 5 D 6 A

20.5 *Possible answers*
1 Yes, a lot of people shop online in my country.
2 Yes, I've bought clothes and games.
3 Yes, I sometimes read the reviews before I buy things, but it depends what I buy.

Unit 21

21.1
2 shower
3 TV
4 phone
5 hairdryer
6 sea
7 key
8 lift

21.2 2 a 3 h 4 f 5 b 6 g 7 c 8 e

21.3
1 At **reception** you can order **room** service.
2 We'd like a **double** room with a **view** of the garden, please.
3 The lift is **over** there. Take it to the second **floor**.
4 Please **fill** in this **form**.
5 I'd like a **wake-up call** at 7.30 and I'd like to **have** breakfast in my room, please.
6 I have a **reservation** for a **single** room with a bathroom.
7 Can I **have** the bill, please? I'll **check** it now.
8 I'm leaving today. Can I **exchange** some dollars here before I **check** out?

21.4 *Possible answers:*

Can I have breakfast in my room, please?
Can I have / check my bill, please?
Can I have a double room for tonight, please?
Can I have some help with my luggage? or Can I leave my luggage here, please?

21.5 *Possible answers:*

1 It costs about £100.
2 00 44 (from e.g. France)
3 Breakfast is usually from 7 to 10.
4 I think a TV is most important for me.

Unit 22

22.1 *Possible answers:*

2 restaurant
3 fast food restaurant
4 café
5 bar / pub

22.2 *Possible answers:*

2 café - Jim's Corner Café
3 take-away - Corner Kebabs
4 restaurant - The Taj Mahal
5 bar - The Red Lion

22.3 2 curry 3 salad 4 pie 5 steak

22.4
WAITER: Are you ready **to** order?
CUSTOMER: Yes, **I'd** like vegetable soup and steak, please.
WAITER: **How** would you like your steak? Rare, medium or **well-done**?
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
WAITER: What **would you** like to drink?
CUSTOMER: **An** orange juice, please.

22.5 *Your own answers*

22.6 *Possible answers:*

1 I'd choose mixed salad, vegetable curry and ice cream.
2 Vegetarians can eat soup of the day, mixed salad and vegetable curry.
3 I like eating out very much.
4 I go to a restaurant two or three times a month.

Unit 23

23.1
2 swimming
3 judo / karate
4 sailing
5 volleyball
6 motor racing

23.2
2 badminton
3 table tennis
4 snowboarding
5 baseball
6 basketball
7 skiing
8 American football

23.3
2 Do you play football?
3 Do you do any sports?
4 Do you go swimming? / like swimming? / swim?
5 What is your favourite sport?
6 Where do people play rugby?

23.4 *Possible answers:*

1 swimming, skiing, table tennis, tennis, kayaking
2 in a swimming pool, in the mountains, at home, at a sports centre, on a river
3 I like swimming, kayaking and table tennis.
4 I don't like tennis.
5 I'd like to go sailing.

Unit 24

24.1
2 science fiction
3 horror
4 action
5 cartoon
6 romantic comedy
7 thriller
8 musical

24.2 *Possible answers:*

2 romantic comedy - *My Best Friend's Wedding*
3 thriller - *Psycho*
4 western - *High Noon*
5 musical - *High School Musical*
6 cartoon - *Shrek*

24.3

T H R I L L E R
H **O** R R O R
C O **M** E D Y
A C T I O N
S C I E **N** C E F I C T I O N
W E S **T** E R N
M U S **I** C A L
C A R T O O N

24.4
2 watched (some people say 'saw a DVD')
3 played
4 in
5 film stars
6 director

24.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I like romantic comedies.
2 My favourite film star is Nicole Kidman.
3 I prefer going to the cinema.
4 The last film I saw was *Jason Bourne*.
5 You can look in the newspaper, go online or phone the cinema.

Unit 25

25.1
2 He's gardening.
3 He's reading a newspaper.
4 He's cooking.
5 She's using the Internet. / She's using the computer.
6 He's listening to music.

25.2
2 reading
3 talk
4 have
5 have / invite
6 play
7 download
8 see / watch
9 grows
10 watch

25.3 *Possible answers:*

1 We talk, or we have a meal, or we listen to music, etc.
2 My best friend sometimes comes to stay. / My cousins sometimes come to stay, etc.
3 I like novels, and I read a newspaper every day.
4 I talk to them on the phone every day.
5 I don't have a garden. I live in a flat.
6 I chat to my friends online once or twice a week.
7 I often download music or films from the Internet.
8 *The Sims* is my favourite computer game.
9 I use headphones when I want to listen to music on a train.

25.4 *Possible answers:*

gardening	2
cooking	4
reading	5
using the Internet	5
watching DVDs	4
listening to music	5
doing nothing	1
chatting online	2

Unit 26

26.1 2 musician 3 musical 4 music 5 musical 6 musicians

26.2
2 Abigail plays the cello in an orchestra.
3 Noah loves playing the drums.
4 Emily is having a piano lesson.
5 Mason is a very good trumpet-player.
6 Ella plays the clarinet every evening.
7 William plays the guitar.
8 Emma is learning the flute. She will be a good flute-player one day.
9 Madison is a violinist.
10 Emily wants to be a pianist.

26.3 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c

26.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I download music about once a month.
2 I like the violin best.
3 Yes, I play the violin and the guitar.
4 I would like to learn the piano.
5 I like classical music and pop music!

Unit 27

27.1
2 Brazil
3 Spain
4 Morocco
5 Japan
6 Thailand

27.2
2 Rome is the capital of Italy.
3 Canberra is the capital of Australia.
4 Bogotá is the capital of Colombia.
5 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
6 London is the capital of the UK.
7 Berlin is the capital of Germany.
8 Warsaw is the capital of Poland.
9 Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina.
10 Madrid is the capital of Spain.

27.3
2 In Mexico, Spain and Chile they speak Spanish but in Brazil they speak Portuguese.
3 In Austria, Germany and Switzerland they speak German but in Italy they speak Italian.
4 In Morocco, Egypt and Saudi Arabia they speak Arabic but in China they speak Chinese.
5 In Switzerland, Canada and France they speak French but in Scotland they speak English.

27.4
2 Thai
3 German
4 Egyptian
5 Argentinian
6 Spanish
7 Peruvian
8 Chinese
9 Australian
10 Polish

27.5 *Check your answers with your teacher.*

Over to you

The Sahara is in Africa.
The Amazon is in South America.
Wagga Wagga is in Australasia.
The Volga is in Europe.
Mount Kilimanjaro is in Africa.
The Mississippi is in North America.
Mount Fuji is in Asia.
Lake Titicaca is in South America.

Unit 28

28.1 2 f 3 d 4 g 5 c 6 e 7 b

28.2
3 It is windy in La Paz.
4 It is cloudy in Paris.
5 It is foggy in Tashkent.
6 It is sunny in Seoul. / The sun is shining in Seoul.
7 It is snowing in Washington. / It’s snowy in Washington.

28.3
2 rains
3 weather
4 snows
5 lightning
6 degrees
7 storm
8 cold

28.4 *Possible answers:*

2 It is usually 20 degrees in summer and 0 (zero) degrees in winter.
3 There are sometimes thunderstorms in August.
4 It is not usually very wet in spring.
5 We almost never have hurricanes.
6 Summer is usually warm but we can have thunderstorms.

28.5 *Possible answers:*

2 sunny weather - I like to go to the beach / for a walk / lie in the sun.
3 a rainy day - I don’t like to go out / I don’t like to do sports.
4 snow - I like to walk in the snow / I like to go skiing.
5 a windy day - I like to go windsurfing / I don’t like to go out / I love to go for a walk.

Unit 29

29.1
2 at the tourist information office
3 at the bank
4 in / at the car park
5 at the museum
6 at the (train / railway) station
7 at / in the shopping centre
8 at the post office

29.2
2 Exit
3 No smoking
4 Please do not walk on the grass
5 Entrance

29.3
2 The bus **station / stop** is over there **on** the left.
3 For the Town Hall **take** the number 14 bus.
4 **There** is a post office on the other **side** of the road.
5 You can find a cash **machine** at the bank in High Street.
6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist **information** office.
7 Can you tell me the **way** to the railway **station**, please?
8 **Excuse** me. I’m looking **for** a car park.

29.4
2 town hall
3 library
4 car park
5 railway station
6 pedestrian area
7 cash machine
8 post office
9 shops
10 bus stop

29.5 *Possible answer:*

Go left out of the tourist information office and take the first left. Then take the second left, which is Market Street. The shopping centre is on the left.

29.6 *Your own answers*

Unit 30

30.1
2 forest
3 village
4 hills
5 wood
6 farm
7 river
8 country road
9 path
10 fields
11 lake

30.2
2 cottage
3 village
4 town

30.3
2 d
3 e
4 b
5 a

30.4
2 He loves nature.
3 She wants to live in the country.
4 They are interested in wildlife.

30.5 *Possible answers:*

2 There are no hills or mountains.
3 There's a big lake and two small rivers.
4 There are a lot of villages and some small towns.
5 There are a lot of small farms and a few very big ones in the countryside.
6 There are some good paths for walking near where I live.
7 You can't go skiing because there are no hills (and there's usually no snow).
8 You can see a lot of beautiful wildlife.

Unit 31

31.1 *Possible answers:*

2 giraffe
3 Parrots; hens
4 Tigers; lions
5 horse; elephant
6 Fish; birds
7 Chickens / Hens
8 Rabbits
9 feed; give
10 take

31.2

sheep	lamb	lamb
cow	beef	calf
hen	chicken	chick
pig	pork	piglet

31.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Lions, tigers, monkeys, snakes, dogs and cats eat meat.
2 Cows, sheep, pigs, goats, parrots (for feathers) and snakes (for snakeskin) give us things that we wear.
3 Chickens / hens, tortoises, parrots, snakes and fish produce their babies in eggs.
4 We can eat cows, sheep, pigs, chickens / hens, goats, horses and fish (and you may think of some other animals that people eat too).

31.4

Across	**Down**
3 cats	1 *parrot*
6 lion	2 monkey
7 horse	4 sheep
8 elephant	5 tiger
	9 hen

31.5 Write down the number you remembered. Try again tomorrow and write down how many you remember then.

Unit 32

32.1 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 g 7 b

32.2

2 True.
3 False. Planes take off at the beginning of a journey. / Planes land at the end of a journey.
4 False. You need a boarding card to get on a plane.
5 False. Hiring a car is not the same as buying a car.
6 True.

32.3 *Possible answer:*

At Cambridge train station take a number 5 bus. The stop is just outside the station. Get off the bus at the hospital, cross the road and take the first road on the left. My house is on the corner of the street and it has a red door.

32.4

Across	**Down**
3 map	1 *timetable*
6 helicopter	2 taxi
7 bus	3 motorcycle
8 petrol	4 platform
	5 train

Over to you

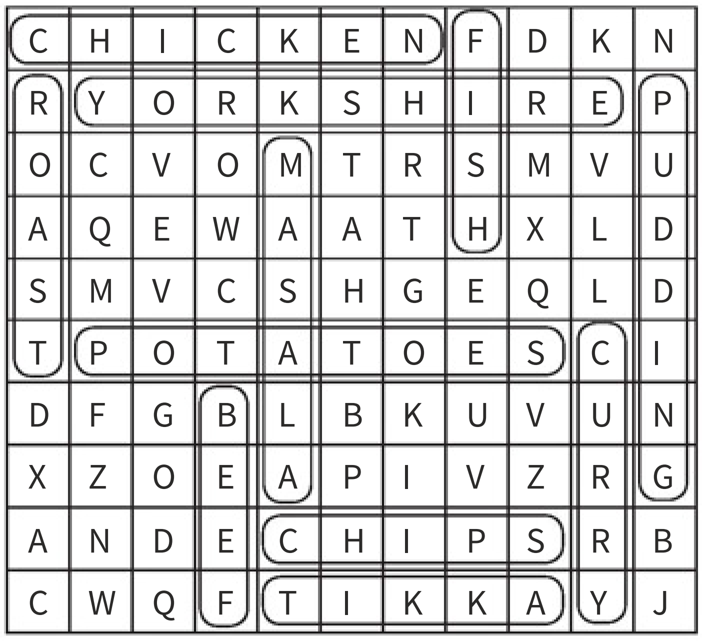
Keep the cards and test yourself every day. If you find this useful, write cards for words from other units of the book.

Unit 33

33.1

2 Christmas
3 Bonfire Night
4 Easter
5 Valentine's Day
6 New Year's Eve / Hogmanay

33.2



C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

33.3
2 India
3 curry
4 No. They eat it with their main course (with roast beef).
5 in the oven

33.4
2 a state secondary school
3 a nursery school
4 a state primary school
5 a private secondary school

33.5 *Answers in 2016:*

1 Theresa May
2 Houses of Parliament
3 Queen Elizabeth II

Unit 34

34.1
2 a murderer
3 a shoplifter / robber
4 a burglar
5 a mugger
6 a drug dealer

34.2
2 arrested
3 vandals
4 fine
5 burglaries / burglars
6 innocent
7 terrorists
8 prison

34.3
2 False - vandals destroy things
3 True
4 False - a car thief steals cars
5 True

34.4
2 stole
3 robbed
4 stolen
5 stole
6 stolen

Over to you

Possible answers:

2 The student should pay a fine and return the book.
3 The woman should go to prison.
4 The terrorists should go to prison for a long time.
5 The woman should pay a fine and the police should take her car away.
6 The teenager should work in the park and plant new trees or pay a fine.

Unit 35

35.1
2 is
3 documentary
4 nature
5 teenage
6 online
7 change
8 interview

35.2
2 e
3 b
4 a
5 d
6 c

35.3
2 a journalist
3 an evening (news)paper
4 a cartoon
5 a nature programme
6 an advert / advertisement
7 a (TV) channel
8 an interview

35.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I always read an evening newspaper.
2 Yes, I usually read the main stories in the morning.
3 I like news magazines.
4 I'll probably watch my favourite soap on TV tonight.
5 My favourite TV channel is BBC1.
6 I watch about an hour of TV every day.
7 I like talk shows and reality TV.
8 I watch TV online once or twice a week.
9 No, I don't like watching adverts on TV.

Unit 36

36.1 *Possible answers:*

2 The computer has crashed.
3 The cup is broken.
4 The coffee machine isn't working.
5 She has too much work (to do).
6 He's cut his hand.
7 The room is untidy.
8 She is late for work.

36.2 *Possible answers:*

2 cut finger / hands / knees
3 untidy room / desk / hair
4 late for school / an appointment / a concert
5 a camera / microwave / fridge that isn't working
6 too much work / rain / wind

36.3 *Possible answers:*

2 dying plants 2
3 a cut finger 2
4 being late for work or school 1
5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood 2
6 a coffee machine that isn't working 1
7 a broken washing machine 1
8 an untidy bedroom 3
9 a row with a friend 1
10 your computer crashes 1
11 lost keys 1
12 too much work 3

36.4 *Possible answers:*

too much work - get an assistant
a colleague in a bad mood - pay no attention
a crashed computer - get a technician
a photocopier that is out of order - repair the photocopier
a coffee machine that isn't working - drink water

36.5 *Possible answers:*

My DVD player didn't work.
My brother lost his credit card.
I cut my knee.
My cousin broke a glass.

Unit 37

37.1

2 car crash
3 flood
4 war
5 earthquake
6 forest fire
7 hurricane
8 traffic jam
9 snowstorm

37.2

2 e
3 f
4 a
5 g
6 b
7 h
8 d

37.3
2 a traffic jam
3 crowded
4 a car crash
5 unemployed
6 the rush hour
7 hungry
8 a forest fire

37.4 *Possible answers:*

2 forest fire, traffic jam
3 strike, war
4 hurricane, snowstorm, flood
5 poor, hungry, homeless, unemployed

37.5
2 strike
3 War
4 car crash
5 earthquakes; snowstorms
6 homeless
7 rush hour
8 polluted

Unit 38

38.1 *Possible answers:*

2 lesson
3 football / tennis / squash / rugby / darts / chess / cards
4 party
5 shower / bath / wash
6 exam
7 meeting
8 coffee / cup of coffee / cup of tea / drink
9 swim
10 dinner / a meal / supper / something to eat

38.2
2 Scarlett has gone to the hairdresser's to **have her hair cut**.
3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a **go**?
4 I want to have **a word** with my teacher after the lesson.
5 Mum didn't have the **time** to go to the shop today.
6 They **don't have** *or* they **haven't got** any cake in the café today.

38.3

1 *m*	2 *e*	*a*	*l*		
	x				
3 p	a	r	4 t	y	
	m	■	e		
		5 g	a	m	e

38.4 *Possible answers:*

2 Have a good journey! / Have a good time!
3 Have you got a cold?
4 Can I have a look?

38.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I've got one brother and two sisters.
2 I have them at 9.30 every day.
3 I have a salad and a cup of tea.
4 Not every day, but I have to go on Wednesday and Friday.
5 I've got two.
6 Yes, we always have a good time in our English classes.

Unit 39

39.1

2 The Sharps are going to the beach.
3 Zoe and Penelope are going shopping / to the shopping centre.
4 Asad is going to Cairo.
5 Lars is going fishing.

39.2

2 This year Victoria is going to pass her driving test.
3 This year Victoria is going to learn Spanish.
4 This year Victoria is going to watch less TV.
5 This year Victoria is going to keep her room tidy.

39.3 *Possible answers:*

I sometimes go swimming.
I never go skiing.
I sometimes go dancing.
I never go fishing.
I always go sightseeing.

39.4 *Possible answers:*

From Cambridge, trains go to London, Norwich, Ely and Peterborough. Buses go to Oxford, to Heathrow and to Scotland from Cambridge. From Cambridge roads go to London, to Huntingdon and to the sea.

39.5

2 Mum is **going shopping** this afternoon.
3 ✓
4 I love Paris. Did you **go there** last year?
5 Alexei is **going home** at 4 o'clock.
6 We always go to the same café. Let's **go somewhere** different today.
7 ✓
8 I **go swimming** every Sunday morning.
9 We're going **sightseeing** today.
10 Jo went **up** to the top of the hill. / Jo went down to the **bottom** of the hill.
11 Let's go **fishing** today.
12 She went out **of** the shop.
13 ✓
14 Would you like to **go home** now?

Unit 40

40.1

2 What are the girls doing? They're playing tennis.
3 What is the dog doing? It's sleeping.
4 What is the man in the house doing? He's washing up. / He's doing the washing-up.
5 What is the woman doing? She's reading a book.
6 What is the man in the garden doing? He's gardening. / He's doing the gardening.

40.2 *Questions and possible answers:*

2 What does Lee Atkins do? He's a teacher.
3 What does Sophie Hicks do? She's a doctor.
4 What do Cooper and Hailey do? They're students.

40.3

2 What did Lara Brown do? She went to a meeting.
3 What did Sophie Hicks do? She talked to five patients.
4 What did Cooper and Hailey do? They wrote an essay.

40.4 *Possible answers:*

I often do the washing-up.
My husband usually does the washing.
My son has to do his homework every day.
My daughter does her exercises every morning.
I hate doing the housework.
I love doing the gardening.
We do business with Eastern Europe.
I always do my best.

40.5 ANNA: Where did you **go** on your holidays? To Wales?
PAVEL: No, we **didn't** go to Wales this year. We went to Scotland.
ANNA: **Does** your grandmother **live** in Scotland?
PAVEL: No, she **doesn't** but my uncle **does**.

Unit 41

41.1
2 made
3 making
4 make
5 made / have made / 've made
6 making

41.2
2 Long lessons always make me (feel) tired.
3 She was horrible to me; it made me (feel) angry.
4 It's a lovely song. It makes me (feel) happy.
5 That meal was horrible. It made me (feel) sick.

41.3
2 She's making tea.
3 The little boys are making a noise.
4 They're making a video / a film.
5 The children are making a mess.
6 She is making her bed.

41.4
2 Can I **take** a photo of you?
3 He's 25 but he never **does** his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
4 Are you **doing / taking** an exam tomorrow?
5 Have you **done** your homework yet?

Unit 42

42.1
2 back (home)
3 into
4 from
5 see
6 out of / back from / home from

42.2
2 Come here!
3 We're going to a party. Do you want to come along?
4 I come from France.

42.3 2 came 3 comes 4 Are; coming 5 comes

42.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I usually come home at five-thirty.
2 I'm from / I come from Scotland / Jamaica / Pakistan / Latvia / Bolivia, etc.
3 I sit down and talk to my friends / take out my books.

Over to you

Possible meanings and example sentences:

1 Meaning: 'come round' can mean 'come to someone's house or flat'.
Example: Do you want to come round this afternoon for a coffee?
2 Meaning: 'come across' can mean 'meet or find for the first time'.
Example: I come across lots of new words when I read English books.
3 Meaning: 'come up' can mean 'be mentioned or occur in conversation'.
Example: When new words come up in class, the teacher tells us the meaning.

Unit 43

43.1 *Possible answers:*

1 It takes me 10 minutes to get to university.
2 It takes me 30 minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.
3 It takes me 20 minutes to get to my best friend's house.
4 It takes me an hour to do one unit of this book.

43.2
2 take the train
3 take a course
4 take some water

43.3
2 You can / have to take a taxi.
3 He takes the bus.
4 They take the underground.

43.4
2 I take my / an umbrella.
3 I take my passport.
4 I take my notebook and pen.
5 I take my mobile (phone).

43.5 *Possible answer:*

It took me about an hour.

Unit 44

44.1 2 bring 3 bring 4 Take 5 take 6 bring

44.2
2 e You must take your passport when you travel.
3 b Come to my house and bring your guitar.
4 a Go to the post office and take these letters, please.
5 d Everybody is going to bring food to the party.

44.3 1 *brings*; brought 2 brought 3 take 4 take; bring

44.4
1 *take*; bring it back
2 brought me back
3 take; bring it back

44.5 *Possible answer:*

I always bring / take my vocabulary notebook, a pen and my coursebook to the lesson.

Unit 45

45.1
2 c sick
3 a hot
4 b dark
5 c wet

45.2
2 When the sun comes up it gets light.
3 She's in hospital but she's getting better.
4 It's raining! I'm getting wet!
5 Please close the window. I'm getting cold.

45.3
2 a doctor
3 a drink
4 a pen / pencil and paper
5 a newspaper
6 a taxi / a bus / a train
7 a job
8 an umbrella / a raincoat

45.4 2 gets to 3 get to 4 gets(back) 5 get back / home

45.5 *Possible answers:*

1 In Britain, people usually get married when they are 20 to 30 years old.
2 People usually get married at the weekend, mostly on Saturday. April, May and June are very popular months (spring and summer).
3 I get home at about 5 o'clock. I get there by car.

Unit 46

46.1 2 d 3 g 4 f 5 b 6 h 7 e 8 a

46.2 2 off 3 on; up 4 off 5 off 6 off 7on 8 on

46.3 2 He is putting on his shoes. 3 A plane is taking off. 4 She is turning on the oven.

46.4 2 took off 3 went on 4 went off 5 turned down

Unit 47

47.1
2 She washes (the / her) clothes every Saturday.
3 He cleans the house / his flat every weekend.
4 He watches TV / television every evening.
5 She goes for a walk every Sunday.

47.2 *Possible question:*

2 How often do you go for a walk?
3 How do you go to work?
4 When do you have dinner?
5 How do you come home from work?
6 How often do you phone your best friend?
7 When do you clean your room?
8 What time do you have a shower?

47.3 *Possible answers:*

1 I usually wake up at 7 o'clock.
2 I go to the bathroom and have a shower.
3 I usually have tea and toast for breakfast.
4 I go to work by car.
5 I usually have a cup of coffee at 11 o'clock.
6 I usually come home at about 6 pm.
7 I usually make dinner at 7 o'clock.
8 In the evenings I normally watch TV or go for a walk.
9 Sometimes I write one or two emails or listen to the radio.
10 I usually go to bed at 11 o'clock.

Unit 48

48.1 2 told 3 said 4 tell; said 5 said 6 told

48.2
2 How do you say 'tree' in German?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me the time?
4 I just want to say goodbye (to you).
5 Can you tell me when the exam is?
6 Can you answer the phone, please? / Can you tell them I'm busy / I'm cooking?

48.3

2 h answer the door
3 g ask for the bill
4 a reply to an email
5 f tell someone a joke
6 e talk to a friend
7 b ask someone to help you
8 c speak Japanese

We can also say ‘answer an email’, but not ‘reply to the door’!

48.4

2 Can we have the bill, please?
3 Happy New Year!
4 Tell me a story before I go to sleep. Please!

Unit 49

49.1

2 danced
3 swims
4 run
5 climbing
6 fell
7 jumped; swam
8 walk

49.2

2 drives
3 takes
4 drives
5 take; go by
6 ride
7 ride
8 take

Note: You can also use ‘go by’ with all these forms of transport (but without ‘the’ or ‘a’), i.e. you can go to work by bicycle, go home by underground / taxi, etc.

49.3

Possible answers:

salt, pepper, bread, butter, water, sauce, salad

49.4

2 Maria drove her grandmother to the city yesterday.
3 Charlie flew to Madrid yesterday.
4 I took a taxi home from the station yesterday.
5 Bella fell when she rode her bike yesterday.
6 Adrian missed the 7.30 bus to school yesterday.
7 The taxi driver helped the old lady to carry her luggage to the train yesterday.
8 Madeline danced very well yesterday.

49.5

Possible answers:

2 I ride my bike once a week.
3 I swim in the sea once a year. I swim in a pool once a week.
4 I go somewhere by plane once a year.
5 I drive my car every day.
6 I go dancing once a week.
7 I never go climbing.
8 I take a taxi once or twice a year.

Unit 50

50.1

2 and
3 before
4 so
5 because
6 if
7 or
8 when

50.2 *Possible sentences:*

Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav after he moved to London. / *Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav after they decided to start a business together.*
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav and they had two sons. / Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav and they decided to start a business together.
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav because she loved him. / Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav because he was a pop star.
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav before he moved to London. / Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav before they decided to start a business together.
Annabelle will marry Aarav because she loves him.
Annabelle will marry Aarav before he moves to London.
Annabelle will marry Aarav but she doesn't love him.
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav if he moved to London.
Annabelle will marry Aarav or she won't marry anyone.
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav so he moved to London.
Annabelle will marry Aarav when he moves to London.

50.3
2 as well / also (too is also possible but it is better to use a different word as too is already in the sentence)
3 than
4 like
5 only

50.4 *Possible answers:*

I only play tennis in the summer.
My sister plays the piano better than I do.
My brother swims like a fish.
I like listening to music and I like reading also.
I like going skiing too.
I often go skiing with the children and sometimes my husband comes as well.

50.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm learning English because I enjoy it.
2 I'll learn more English if I do all the exercises in this book.
3 I'm learning English and I'm also studying Spanish.
4 I started learning English when I was ten.
5 I can speak some English, so it's OK on holiday in the UK.
6 I'll learn more English but sometimes it's difficult.

Unit 51

51.1 2 a century 3 a fortnight 4 an hour 5 a week

51.2
Thirty days has September,
April, June and November.
All the rest have thirty-one.
Except for February
Which has twenty-eight days
And twenty-nine in each leap year.

This is a traditional rhyme which people use to help them remember the number of days of the month. It means that:
September, April, June and November have 30 days. The other months have 31 days except for February which has 28 days and 29 days in a leap year.

51.3
2 August
3 October
4 Saturday
5 Wednesday
6 January
7 April
8 Friday
9 February
10 September
11 Tuesday
12 November

51.4
2 T F S (the first letters of the days of the week)
3 A S O N D (the first letters of the months)

51.5 I'm going to a party on ***Saturday*** for Valentina's birthday. Her birthday is on **Thursday** but she wanted to have the party **at** the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think **June** is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues **in** the summer. My birthday is in **winter** and it's too cold to eat outside!

51.6
1 15 2 Tuesday(*or* Wednesday) 3 300 4 July 5 120
6–12 It is not possible to give answers to questions 6 to 12. Check with your teacher if you are not sure if your answers are correct or not.

Unit 52

52.1 2 for 3 from 4 to 5 At 6 for

52.2
2 the 22nd century – the future
3 the 18th century – the past
4 the 21st century – the present
5 the 20th century – the past

52.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I sometimes go to school by bus. I usually go by car.
3 I often watch TV.
4 I never drink milk. I usually drink coffee.
5 I never wear a hat.
6 I often eat chocolate.
7 I sometimes go to bed at 10. I usually go to bed at 11.
8 I sometimes go to the theatre.

52.4 2 Probably a week ago 3 In a few minutes 4 4 o'clock

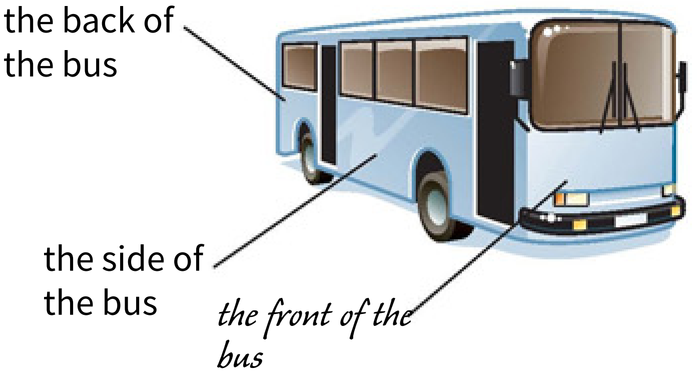
52.5 *John plays tennis twice a week*. He practises the piano once a week and he has a business meeting in Germany once a month.
Julia and Alexa play tennis three times a week. They practise the piano twice a day. They go to Germany for a business meeting six times a year. *or* They have a business meeting in Germany six times a year.

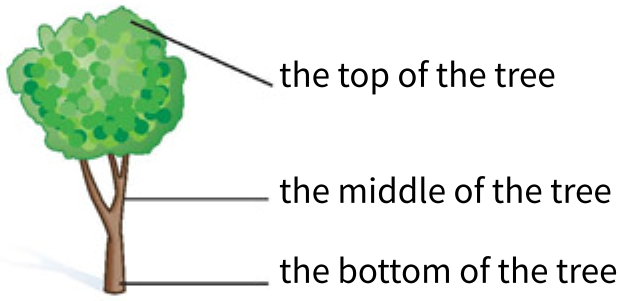
Unit 53

53.1 2 here 3 there 4 everywhere 5 there 6 back

53.2 2 at 3 on 4 at 5 on 6 in; in

53.3


the back of the bus
the side of the bus
the front of the bus


the top of the tree
the middle of the tree
the bottom of the tree

53.4 2 out 3 away 4 away; abroad

53.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm studying English in the UK.
2 Yes, I'm going to Dublin and to the US.
3 At the moment I have a pen in my right hand.
4 The Answer key is at the end of this book.
5 Unit 3 is at the beginning of this book (Unit 3 out of 60 units). (*Note*: we say *at*.)
6 Unit 36 is in the middle of this book (Unit 36 out of 60 units). (*Note*: we say *in*.)

Unit 54

54.1 2 badly 3 loudly 4 fast [NOT ~~fastly~~] 5 quietly 6 well

54.2 2 slow 3 good 4 in 5 right 6 badly 7 quietly 8 the

54.3 *suddenly* ✗ sadly ✓ strangely ✓ quickly ✗ easily ✓
Suddenly means very quickly, when you are not expecting it.
Quickly is similar to 'fast' when fast is an adverb, not when it is an adjective.

54.4 *Possible answers:*

2 My brother speaks German badly.
3 I usually eat too fast.
4 My dog is old and very slow.
5 My voice is quiet.
6 I like to sing loudly.
7 My mum always behaves in a friendly way.
8 I like to do things the right way.

Unit 55

55.1 2 milk; butter 3 advice 4 air 5 work 6 traffic

55.2
2 a
3 e
4 f
5 g
6 c
7 b

55.3 2 is / was 3 is / was 4 is; was 5 is / was 6 is / was

55.4
2 Where can I get some **information** about your country?
3 Let me give you **some** advice.
4 Cook **this** spaghetti for ten minutes.
5 Can I have **some** bread, please?
6 We need to buy some new **furniture**.
7 The east of the country usually has better weather than the west. [NOT ~~a~~ better weather]
8 I must find **some** new accommodation soon.

Unit 56

56.1 *Possible answers:*

2 very bad / terrible / awful / dreadful
3 terrible / awful / dreadful
4 excellent / great / wonderful
5 awful / horrible
6 wonderful / lovely
7 bad
8 wonderful / lovely

56.2 *Possible answers:*

2 Oh, how awful!
3 That's a lovely idea! / Yes, great!
4 Yes, there's the Ritz. It's an excellent restaurant.
5 They're wonderful!
6 Yes, that's perfect!

56.3 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b

56.4

good	bad
brilliant marvellous fine	*dreadful* nasty

56.5 *Possible answers:*

brilliant idea / scientist
marvellous weather / food
nasty surprise / smell
fine weather / day

Unit 57

57.1
2 d This bicycle belongs to the hotel.
3 h The children thanked their aunt for the money.
4 g Molly is listening to music on her phone.
5 a He apologised for his mistake.
6 e Let me pay for our tickets.
7 b Javier is thinking about the holidays.
8 f Over 100 people came to the football match.

57.2
2 after people
3 for them
4 forward to my party
5 at me
6 for a new one
7 forward to it
8 after the children

57.3 2 at 3 to 4 in 5 to 6 of 7 about 8 to

57.4
3 Hiroshi wasn't used to eating British food.
4 He was used to traffic jams.
5 He was used to expensive shops.
6 He wasn't used to British money.

57.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I was good at languages and bad at PE.
2 I usually ask for a black coffee.
3 I am proud of my family.
4 I am afraid of going to the dentist.
5 I like listening to folk music.
6 I am looking forward to my holiday.
7 I belong to a tennis club.
8 I am used to eating lots of different kinds of food.

Unit 58

58.1 2 rewrite / redo 3 informal 4 unhappy 5 half-price 6 unsafe

58.2 *Possible answers:*

2 I never see my ex-boyfriend anymore.
3 This work is not very good. Please redo it.
4 It's impossible to read his handwriting.
5 Pre-school children learn by playing.

58.3
2 nerves before an exam
3 a wrong answer, an answer that is not correct
4 a book that has not been read
5 to tell a story again

6 a brother with one parent the same (for example, perhaps with the same mother but not the same father)
7 a letter that is not finished
8 a drink with no alcohol in it (for example, fruit juice, cola)
9 to read a book again
10 to send an email again

58.4 2 uncomfortable 3 impolite 4 unpleasant 5 unattractive

Over to you

Possible answers:

in: This is an incomplete answer – you need to finish it.
im: I thought the question he asked me was very impolite.
non: I want to buy a non-stick pan.
pre: Would you like to have a pre-lunch drink?
re: We're going to repaint this room next week.
un: My daughter's room is always very untidy.

Unit 59

59.1 2 instructor 3 swimmer 4 happily 5 calculator 6 useful

59.2 *Possible answers:*

You may be able to think of some other possible combinations.
2 fast worker / car / swimmer
3 beautiful beach / weather / car / book / smile / picture
4 sandy beach
5 sunny weather / smile
6 hard worker
7 useful idea / book
8 endless fun
9 useless idea / book (*Note:* You can also say 'I'm a useless swimmer'. It is typical of spoken rather than written English and means 'I am no good at swimming'.)

59.3 2 badly 3 helpful 4 kindness 5 careless 6 windy 7 easily 8 builder

59.4 2 a person who travels
3 the opposite of fast
4 with lots of hope
5 weather when it is raining
6 it doesn't hurt
7 the opposite of doing something well
8 a thing for opening tins
9 a person who plays football
10 weather when there is a lot of snow

Unit 60

60.1 2 lose 3 felt 4 cooker 5 fell 6 quite 7 loose 8 cook

60.2 2 loose – *juice* 3 quite – *right* 4 quiet – *higher*

60.3 2 He/She checks it.
3 Can I borrow your camera?
4 Good afternoon.
5 They wait for the bus.
6 Can you lend me £ 1?
7 Please be quiet.

60.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I am expecting my brother at 5.30. (= He said he would come at 5.30.)
2 I hope to go on holiday to Spain. (= I really want to go to Spain.)
3 Sometimes I borrow books and DVDs.
4 Yes, but only to my best friend!

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/i /	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ /	pin dinner
/ /	foot could pull
/u /	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ /	arrive father colour
/ɜː/	turn bird work
/ /	sort thought walk
/ae/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ /	part heart laugh
/e /	name late aim
/a /	my idea time
/ /	boy noise
/e /	pair where bear
/ /	hear beer
/ /	go home show
/a /	out cow
/ /	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/ /	go guitar
/t /	catch church
/d /	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/ /	thick path
/ /	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ /	shop sugar machine
/ /	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

Index

The numbers in the Index are **Unit** numbers not page numbers. The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

about ə'baʊt 25
abroad ə'brɔːd 53
absolutely ˌæbsə'luːtli 9
accommodation əˌkɒmə'deɪʃən 55
action film 'ækʃən fɪlm 24
actually 'æktʃuəli 9
address ə'dres 16
add to basket æd tə 'bæskət 20
advert 'ædvɜːt 35
advertisement əd'vɜːtɪsmənt 35
advice əd'vaɪs 55
aeroplane 'eərəpleɪn 32
afraid of ə'freɪd əv 57
Africa 'æfrɪkə 27
after 'ɑːftə 50
afternoon ˌɑːftə'nuːn 51, 60
age eɪdʒ 5
ago ə'gəʊ 52
agree ə'griː 9
air eə 55
air pollution eə pə'luːʃən 37
alarm clock ə'lɑːm klɒk 12
alcohol 'ælkəhɒl 22
also 'ɔːlsəʊ 50
always 'ɔːlweɪz 52
American ə'merɪkən 27
American football ə'merɪkən 'fʊtbɔːl 23
and ænd 50
angry 'æŋgri 7
animal 'ænɪməl 31
answer 'ɑːnsər 48
Antarctica ˌæn'tɑːktɪkə 27
anyway 'eniweɪ 9
apologise ə'pɒlədʒaɪz 36
apologise for ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔː 57
apple 'æpəl 10, 55
apple pie 'æpəl paɪ 22
apps æps 17
April 'eɪprəl 51
Arabic 'ærəbɪk 27
Argentina ˌɑːdʒən'tiːnə 27
Argentinian ˌɑːdʒən'tɪnɪən 27
arm ɑːm 3
armchair 'ɑːmtʃeə 13
around ə'raʊnd 9
arrest ə'rest 34
arrive ə'raɪv 32
arrive at ə'raɪv æt 49
arrive in ə'raɪv ɪn 49
art ɑːt 15
as well æz wel 50
Asia 'eɪʒə 27
ask ɑːsk 48
ask (someone) the time ɑːsk ðə taɪm 48
ask (someone) the way ɑːsk ðə weɪ 48
ask for ɑːsk fɔː 48, 57
ask someone for something ɑːsk 'sʌmwʌn fɔː'sʌmθɪŋ 48
ask someone to do something ɑːsk 'sʌmwʌn tuː duː 'sʌmθɪŋ 48
aspirin 'æsprɪn 6
asthma 'æsmə 6
at æt 53
at home æt həʊm 53
at the moment æt ðə 'məʊmənt 52
attack ə'tæk 34
August 'ɔːgəst 51
aunt ɑːnt 1
Australasia ˌɒstrə'leɪʒə 27
Australia ɒs'streɪlɪə 27
Australian ɒs'streɪlɪən 27
autumn 'ɔːtəm 51
average-looking 'ævrɪdʒ 'lʊkɪŋ 5
away ə'weɪ 53
awful 'ɔːfəl 56
baby 'beɪbi 2
back bæk 3, 53
bacon 'beɪkən 31
bad bæd 54, 56
bad at bæd æt 57
bad mood bæd muːd 36
badly 'bædli 54
badminton 'bædmɪntən 23
bag bæg 4, 19
baker(’ s) 'beɪkə 19
ball game bɔːl geɪm 23
banana bə'nɑːnə 10
band bænd 26
bank bæŋk 29
bank clerk bæŋk klɑːk 14
bank holiday bæŋk 'hɒlədeɪ 33
bar bɑː 22
baseball 'beɪsbɔːl 23
basement 'beɪsmənt 19
basin 'beɪsən 12
basket 'bæskət 20
basketball 'bɑːskɪtbɔːl 23
bath bɑːθ 38
bathroom 'bɑːθrʊm 12, 21
battery 'bætəri 17
be born biː bɔːn 2
Be careful biː 'keəfəl 9
be used to biː juːst tə 57
beans biːnz 10, 22
beard bɪəd 5
beautiful 'bjuːtɪfəl 5, 59
beauty 'bjuːti 19
beauty salon 'bjuːti 'sælɒn 14
because bɪ'kɒz 50
bed bed 12
bedroom 'bedrʊm 12
bedside lamp 'bedsaɪd læmp 12
bedside table 'bedsaɪd 'teɪbəl 12
beef biːf 31
beer bɪə 10
before bɪ'fɔː 50
beginning bɪ'gɪnɪŋ 53
belong to bɪ'lɒŋ tə 57
belt belt 4
bicycle 'baɪsəkl 32
bike baɪk 32
bigger (size) bɪgə 19
bill bɪl 21
bin bɪn 11
biology baɪ'ɒlədʒi 15
bird bɜːd 31
birth bɜːθ 2
birthday 'bɜːθdeɪ 2
Bless you bles juː 8
blonde blɒnd 5
blood blʌd 3
blue bluː 5
board bɔːd 15
board pen bɔːd pen 15
board rubber bɔːd 'rʌbə 15
boarding card 'bɔːdɪŋ kɑːd 32
boat bəʊt 32
body 'bɒdi 3
bonfire 'bɒnfaɪə 33

Bonfire Night 'bɒnfaɪə naɪt 33
book bʊk 13, 25, 32
book a seat bʊk ə siːt 32
bookshelf (bookshelves) 'bʊkʃelf 13
bookshop 'bʊkʃɒp 19
boots buːts 4
boring 'bɔːrɪŋ 24
born bɔːn 2
borrow 'bɒrəʊ 60
bottom 'bɒtəm 53
bowl bəʊl 11
brain breɪn 3
Brazil brə'zɪl 27
Brazilian brə'zɪljən 27
bread bred 10, 55
break into breɪk 'ɪntə 34
breakfast 'brekfəst 21, 38
bride braɪd 2
bridegroom 'braɪdgrʊm 2
bring brɪŋ 44
bring back brɪŋ bæk 44
British 'brɪtɪʃ 27
broken 'brəʊkən 36
brother 'brʌðə 1
brown braʊn 5
burger 'bɜːgə 22
burglar 'bɜːglə 34
burglary 'bɜːgləri 34
bus bʌs 29, 32
bus station bʌs 'steɪʃən 29
but bʌt 50
butcher('s) 'bʊtʃə 19
butter 'bʌtə 55
by bus baɪ bʌs 18, 47
by car baɪ kaː 18, 47
by coach baɪ kəʊtʃ 18
by ferry baɪ 'feri 18
by plane baɪ pleɪn 18
by train baɪ treɪn 18, 47
café 'kæfeɪ 22
calculator 'kælkjəleɪtə 59
calf kaːf 31
call kɔːl 16, 17
call a friend kɔːl ə frend 47
call after kɔːl 'aːftə 2
call back kɔːl bæk 16
camera 'kæmrə 17, 18
camping 'kæmpɪŋ 18
Can I...? kæn aɪ 29
Can I help with ...? kən aɪ help wɪð 11
Can you tell me the way ...? kən juː tel miː ðə weɪ 29
can't stand kaːnt stænd 26
Canada 'kænədə 27
Canadian kə'neɪdiən 27
cancer 'kænsə 6
car kaː 18, 29, 32
car crash kaː kræʃ 37
car park kaː paːk 29
car theft kaː θeft 34
car thief kaː θiːf 34
carpet 'kaːpɪt 13
carrier bag 'kæriə bæg 19
carrot(s) 'kærət 10
carry 'kæri 4, 49
cartoon kaː'tuːn 24, 35
cash kæʃ 19
cash desk kæʃ desk 19
cash machine kæʃ mə'ʃiːn 29
cat kæt 31
catch kætʃ 49
cello 'tʃeləʊ 26
century 'sentʃəri 51
chair tʃeə 13
change tʃeɪndʒ 19, 21, 32, 35
change trains tʃeɪndʒ treɪnz 32
change the channel tʃeɪndʒ ðə 'tʃænl 35
change money tʃeɪndʒ 'mʌni 21, 29
channel 'tʃænəl 35
charger 'tʃaːdʒə 17
chat tʃæt 25
chat to friends online tʃæt tə frendz 'ɒnlaɪn 25
check tʃek 21, 32, 60
check in tʃek ɪn 32
check in online tʃek ɪn ˌɒn'laɪn 32
check out tʃek aʊt 21
check your bill tʃek jɔː bɪl 21
Cheers tʃɪəz 8
cheese tʃiːz 38
chemist('s) 'kemɪst 19
chemistry 'kemɪstri 15
cheque tʃek 19
chest tʃest 3
chest of drawers tʃest əv drɔːz 12
chick tʃɪk 31
chicken 'tʃɪkɪn 31
chicken tikka masala 'tʃɪkɪn tikə mə'saːlə 33
children 'tʃɪldrən 1
children's department 'tʃɪldrənz dɪ'paːtmənt 19
Chile 'tʃɪliː 27
China 'tʃaɪnə 27
Chinese ˌtʃaɪ'niːz 27
chips tʃɪps 10
chocolate 'tʃɒklət 22
cholera 'kɒlərə 6
chopsticks 'tʃɒpstɪks 11
Christmas 'krɪsməs 33
Christmas tree 'krɪsməs triː 33
cinema 'sɪnəmə 24
clarinet ˌklærɪ'net 26
classical music 'klæsɪkəl 'mjuːzɪk 26
clean kliːn 12
clean the house kliːn ðə haʊs 47
clean your teeth kliːn jɔː tiːθ 12
climb klaɪm 49
close the curtains kləʊs ðə 'kɜːtns 13
closed kləʊzd 19
cloth klɒθ 11
clothes kləʊðz 4
cloud klaʊd 28
cloudy 'klaʊdi 28
coach kəʊtʃ 18
coach tour kəʊtʃ tʊə 18
coat kəʊt 4
code kəʊd 21
coffee 'kɒfi 10, 38, 55
coffee maker 'kɒfi 'meɪkə 11
coffee table 'kɒfi 'teɪbəl 13
cold kəʊld 6, 7, 28, 38
Colombia kə'lɒmbiə 27
Colombian kə'lɒmbiən 27
colour 'kʌlə 19, 20
comb kəʊm 12
come kʌm 25, 42
come along kʌm ə'lɒŋ 42
come and see me kʌm ənd siː miː 42
come back kʌm bæk 42
come back from kʌm bæk frɒm 42
come from kʌm frɒm 42
come home kʌm həʊm 42, 47
come in kʌm ɪn 42
come into kʌm 'ɪntə 42
come on kʌm ɒn 46
come out kʌm aʊt 42
come out of kʌm aʊt ɒv 42
come to kʌm tə 57

come to stay 25
comedy 'kɒmədi 24
comic 'kɒmɪk 25
computer kəm'pjuːtə 15, 16, 35, 36
computer crashed kəm'pjuːtə kræʃd 36
computer magazine kəm'pjuːtə ˌmægə'zin 35
concert 'kɒnsət 26
Congratulations kənˌgrætʃʊ'leɪʃənz 8, 48
conservation area ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃən 'eəriə 30
continent 'kɒntɪnənt 27
control kən'trəʊl 60
cook kʊk 11, 60
cooker 'kʊkə 11, 59, 60
cooking 'kʊkɪŋ 25
cost kɒst 19
cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 30
Could I have the bill? kʊd aɪ hæv ðə bɪl 22
countable 'kaʊntəbəl 55
country 'kʌntri 27, 30
country road 'kʌntri rəʊd 30
countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 30
course kɔːs 22
court kɔːt 23, 34
cousin 'kʌzən 1
cow kaʊ 31
crash kræʃ 36
credit card 'kredɪt kɑːd 19, 20
crime kraɪm 34
criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 34
crowded 'kraʊdɪd 37
cup kʌp 11
cup of tea kʌp əv tiː 38
cupboard 'kʌbəd 11
currency 'kʌrənsi 18
curry 'kʌri 22, 33
curtains 'kɜːtənz 13
customs 'kʌstəmz 32
cut kʌt 36
dance dɑːns 49
dark dɑːk 5
date deɪt 16
daughter 'dɔːtə 1
day deɪ 51
day after tomorrow dei ɑːftə tə'mɒrəʊ 51
day before yesterday dei bɪ'fɔːr jestədei 51
dead ded 2
death deθ 2
December dɪ'sembə 51
degree dɪ'griː 15
degrees dɪ'griːz 28
delete dɪ'liːt 17
delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 22
delivery dɪ'lɪvəri 20
dentist 'dentɪst 6
depart dɪ'pɑːt 32
department store dɪ'pɑːtmənt stɔː 19
desk desk 15
dessert dɪ'zɜːt 22
die daɪ 2, 36
diet daɪət 6
different (colour) 'dɪfrnt 19
dinner 'dɪnə 25
direct dɪ'rekt 32
directions daɪ'rekʃns 29
director dɪ'rektə 24
disaster dɪ'zɑːstə 37
dishwasher 'dɪʃˌwɒʃə 11
divorced dɪ'vɔːst 2
do duː 14, 23, 25, 40
do a course duː ə kɔːs 15
do an exam duː æn ɪg'zæm 15
do business with duː 'bɪznɪs wɪð 40
do homework duː 'həʊmwɜːk 15, 40
do nothing duː 'nʌθɪŋ 25
do some exercise(s) duː sʌm 'eksəsaɪz 40
do the gardening duː ðə 'gɑːdənɪŋ 40
do the housework duː ðə 'haʊswɜːk 40
do the washing duː ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ 40
do the washing-up duː ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp 40
Do you come from …? duː juː kʌm frɒm 1
Do you do any…? duː juː duː eni 23
Do you have any …? duː juː hæv 'eni 31
Do you like…? duː juː laɪk 7, 40
Do you play …? duː juː pleɪ 23
do your best duː jɔː best 40
doctor 'dɒktə 6, 14
documentary ˌdɒkjə'mentəri 35
dog dɒg 31
dot dɒt 16
double room 'dʌbəl ruːm 21
download ˌdaʊn'ləʊd 17, 25, 26
download an app daʊn'ləʊd ən æp 17
downstairs ˌdaʊn'steəz 12
drawers drɔːz 12
drawing pin 'drɔːɪŋ pɪn 15
dreadful 'dredfəl 56
dress dres 4
dressing table 'dresɪŋ 'teɪbəl 12
drink drɪŋk 10, 22, 38
drive draɪv 49
drug dealer drʌg 'diːlə 34
drug dealing drʌg 'diːlɪŋ 34
drugs drʌgz 34
drums drʌmz 26
dry draɪ 11, 28
DVD ˌdiːviː'diː 25
DVD player ˌdiːviː'diː 'pleɪə 15
ear ɪə 3
earthquake 'ɜːθkweɪk 37
Easter 'iːstə 33
Easter eggs 'iːstə egz 33
egg eg 31
Egypt 'iːdʒɪpt 27
Egyptian ɪ'dʒɪpʃən 27
elderly 'eldəli 5
electricals ɪ'lektrɪkəlz 19
elephant 'elɪfənt 31
else els 9
email 'iːmeɪl 16
email address 'iːmeɪl ə'dres 16
end end 53
endless 'endləs 59
engineer ˌendʒɪ'nɪə 14
English 'ɪŋglɪʃ 15, 27
enjoy ɪn'dʒɔɪ 18, 24
entrance 'entrəns 29
envelope 'envələʊp 16
Europe 'jʊərəp 27
even 'iːvən 50
evening 'iːvnɪŋ 35, 51, 60
every 'evri 12
everywhere 'evrɪweə 53
exam ɪg'zæm 15, 38
excellent 'eksələnt 56
exchange ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ 21

exchange some money ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ sʌm mʌni 21
Excuse me ɪk'skjuːs miː 8, 29
exercise 'eksəsaɪz 6
exit 'eksɪt 29
expect ɪk'spekt 60
ex-boyfriend eks 'bɔɪfrend 58
ex-wife eks waɪf 58
eye aɪ 3
face feɪs 3, 5
factory 'fæktəri 14
fail an exam feɪl ən ɪg'zæm 15
fair feə 5
fall fɔːl 49, 60
fall asleep fɔːl ə'sliːp 12
family 'fæmli 1
farm fɑːm 30
farm animal fɑːm 'ænɪməl 31
farmer 'fɑːmə 14, 30
fast fɑːst 54
fast food fɑːst fuːd 10
fast food restaurant fɑːst fuːd 'restrɒnt 22
fat fæt 5
father 'fɑːðə 1
favourite 'feɪvərɪt 23, 35
February 'februəri 51
feed fiːd 31
feel fiːl 6, 60
feelings 'fiːlɪŋz 7
feet fiːt 3
ferry 'feri 18
festival 'festɪvl 33
field fiːld 30
fill in a form fɪl ɪn ə fɔːm 21
fill up with fɪl ʌp wɪð 32
film fɪlm 24, 25
film star fɪlm stɑː 24
fine faɪn 6, 34
finger 'fɪŋgə 3
Finnish 'fɪnɪʃ 27
fireworks 'faɪəwɜːks 33
first floor fɜːst flɔː 19
fish fɪʃ 10, 31
fish and chips fɪʃ ənd tʃɪps 10, 22, 33
flight flaɪt 18, 32
flight attendant flaɪt ə'tendənt 32
flood flʌd 37
floor flɔː 19, 21
flute fluːt 26
flute-player fluːt 'pleɪə 26
fly flaɪ 18, 49
foal fəʊl 31
fog fɒg 28
foggy 'fɒgi 28
folk music fəʊk 'mjuːzɪk 26
food fuːd 10, 19
foot fʊt 3
football 'fʊtbɔːl 23
football hooligan 'fʊtbɔːl 'huːlɪgən 34
football hooliganism 'fʊtbɔːl 'huːlɪgənɪzəm 34
forest 'fɒrɪst 30
forest fire 'fɒrɪst faɪə 37
fork fɔːk 11
form fɔːm 21
fortnight 'fɔːtnaɪt 51
fourth fɔːθ 19
freezer 'friːzə 11
French frentʃ 27
Friday 'fraɪdeɪ 51
fridge frɪdʒ 11
friend frend 25
friendly 'frendli 54
front frʌnt 53
fruit fruːt 10
fruit juice fruːt dʒuːs 10
fruit salad fruːt 'sæləd 22
frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 11
funeral 'fjuːnərəl 2
furniture 'fɜːnɪtʃə 19, 55
future 'fjuːtʃə 52
game geɪm 38
gardening 'gɑːdənɪŋ 25
garlic 'gɑːlɪk 10
geography dʒɪ'ɒgrəfi 15
German 'dʒɜːmən 27
Germany 'dʒɜːməni 27
get get 45
get a bus get ə bʌs 29
get a degree get ə dɪ'griː 15
get a train get ə treɪn 29
get back get bæk 45
get dressed get drest 4, 12
get information get ˌɪnfə'meɪʃən 29
get married get 'mærɪd 2, 45
get off get ɒf 29, 46
get on get ɒn 46
get to get tuː 45
get undressed get ʌn'drest 4, 12
get up get ʌp 12, 46, 47
get used to get 'jus tu 57
gift shop gɪft ʃɒp 19
giraffe dʒɪ'rɑːf 31
give gɪv 31
give a lift gɪv ə lɪft 32
glass glɑːs 11
glasses 'glɑːsɪz 4
global 'gləʊbəl 37
gloves glʌvz 4
go gəʊ 12, 23, 24, 39, 42
go by gəʊ baɪ 39, 49
go dancing gəʊ 'dɑːntsɪŋ 39
go down gəʊ daʊn 39
go downstairs gəʊ ˌdaʊn'steəz 12
go fishing gəʊ 'fɪʃɪŋ 39
go for a walk gəʊ fɔːr ə wɔːk 47
go in gəʊ ɪn 39
go into gəʊ 'ɪntə 39
go off gəʊ ɒf 46
go on gəʊ ɒn 46
go on holiday gəʊ ɒn 'hɒlədeɪ 18
go out of gəʊ aʊt ɒv 39
go shopping gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ 39
go sightseeing gəʊ 'saɪtsiːɪŋ 39
go skiing gəʊ 'skiːɪŋ 30, 39
go swimming gəʊ 'swɪmɪŋ 39
go through customs gəʊ θruː 'kɪstəms 32
go to bed gəʊ tə bed 12, 47
go to court gəʊ tə kɔːt 34
go to prison gəʊ tə 'prɪzn 34
go to the bathroom gəʊ tə ðə 'bɑːθrʊm 47
go to school gəʊ tə skuːl 15
go to university gəʊ tə ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsəti 15
go to work gəʊ tə wɜːk 47
go up gəʊ ʌp 39
go upstairs gəʊ ʌp'steəz 12
goat gəʊt 31
go walking gəʊ wɑːkɪŋ 30
going to 'gəʊɪŋ tuː 39
good gʊd 54, 56
Good afternoon gʊd ˌɑːftə'nuːn 8
good at gʊd æt 57
Good evening gʊd 'iːvnɪŋ 8
good for you gʊd fə juː 6
Good luck gʊd lʌk 8
Good morning gʊd'mɔːnɪŋ 8
Goodbye gʊd'baɪ 8, 48

good-looking ˌɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ 5
Goodnight ˌɡʊd'naɪt 8
granddaughter 'ɡrænˌdɔːtə 1
grandfather 'ɡrænˌfɑːðə 1
grandmother 'ɡrænˌmʌðə 1
grandparents 'ɡrænˌpeərənts 1
grandson 'ɡrænsʌn 1
grape(s) ɡreɪp 10
great ɡreɪt 56
green ɡriːn 5
green beans ɡriːn biːnz 22
greetings 'ɡriːtɪŋz 8
groom ɡruːm 2
ground floor ɡraʊnd flɔː 19
grow flowers / vegetables ɡrəʊ flaʊəz / 'vedʒtəbəlz 25
guilty 'ɡɪlti 34
guitar ɡɪ'tɑː 26
hair heə 3, 5, 31
haircut 'heəkʌt 38
hairbrush 'heəbrʌʃ 12
hairdresser(' s) 'heəˌdresə 14
hairdryer 'heəˌdraɪə 21
half hɑːf 58
half-hour 'hɑːfˌaʊə 58
half-price 'hɑːf'praɪs 58
Halloween ˌhæləʊ'iːn 33
ham hæm 31
hamburger 'hæmˌbɜːɡə 10
hand hænd 3
handbag 'hændbæɡ 4
happily 'hæpɪli 59
happiness 'hæpɪnəs 59
happy 'hæpi 7
happy about 'hæpi ə'baʊt 7, 57
Happy Birthday 'hæpi 'bɜːθdeɪ 8, 48
Happy Christmas 'hæpi 'krɪsməs 8
happy for 'hæpi fɔː 7
Happy New Year 'hæpi njuː jɪə 8, 48
hat hæt 4
hate heɪt 7
have hæv 12, 22, 25, 38
have (your) hair cut hæv heə kʌt 38
have a baby hæv ə 'beɪbi 2
have a bad day hæv ə bæd deɪ 36
have a bath hæv ə bɑːθ 38
have a cold hæv ə kəʊld 6, 38
have a cup of tea (coffee) hæv ə kʌp ɒv tiː 22, 38
have a drink hæv ə drɪŋk 38
have a game hæv ə ɡeɪm 38
have a go hæv ə ɡəʊ 38
have a good journey hæv ə ɡʊd 'dʒɜːni 38
have a good time hæv ə ɡʊd taɪm 38
have a great time hæv ə ɡreɪt taɪm 18
have a headache hæv ə 'hedeɪk 6, 38
have a healthy diet hæv ə 'helθi daɪət 6
have a heart attack hæv ə hɑːt ə'tæk 6
have a holiday 'hɒlədeɪ 18
have a lesson hæv ə 'lesən 38
have a look hæv ə lʊk 38
have a meal hæv ə miːl 38
have a meeting hæv ə 'miːtɪŋ 38
have a moment hæv ə 'məʊmənt 38
have a party hæv ə 'pɑːti 38
have a piano lesson hæv ə pɪ'ænəʊ lesən 26
have a picnic hæv ə 'pɪknɪk 30
have a row with hæv ə raʊ wɪð 36
have a sleep hæv ə sliːp 25
have a shower hæv ə 'ʃaʊə 12, 47
have a swim hæv ə swɪm 38
have a wake-up call hæv ə weɪk ʌp kɔːl 21
have a word with hæv ə wɜːd wɪð 7, 38
have an exam hæv ən ɪɡ'zæm 38
have breakfast hæv 'brekfəst 21, 38, 47
have coffee hæv 'kɒfi 38
have dinner hæv 'dɪnə 38
have friends round hæv frendz raʊnd 25
have got hæv ɡɒt 38
have got … on hæv ɡɒt ɒn 4
have homework hæv həʊmwɜːk 38
have lunch hæv lʌnʃ 38
have the time hæv ðə taɪm 38
have to hæv tuː 38
have toothache hæv tuːθeɪk 6
Have you got any …? hæv juː ɡɒt 'eni 1
hay fever heɪ 'fiːvə 6
head hed 3, 5
headache 'hedeɪk 6, 38
headphones 'hedfəʊnz 25
health helθ 6
heart hɑːt 3
heart attack hɑːt ə'tæk 6
heavy 'hevi 5
height haɪt 5
helicopter 'helɪkɒptə 32
hello he'ləʊ 8, 48
hen hen 31
here hɪə 53
here is … hɪər ɪz 21
hi haɪ 8
hi-fi 'haɪfaɪ 13
hill hɪl 30
hip hɪp 3
hire a car haɪə ə kɑː 32
history 'hɪstri 15
hobby 'hɒbi 25
Hogmanay ˌhɒɡməneɪ 33
holiday 'hɒlədeɪ 18
home həʊm 12, 25, 36, 53
homeless 'həʊmləs 37
homework 'həʊmwɜːk 15, 38
honeymoon 'hʌnɪmuːn 2
hooligan 'huːlɪɡən 34
hope həʊp 7, 60
horrible 'hɒrəbl 56
horror 'hɒrə 24
horse hɔːs 31
horse racing 'hɔːs ˌreɪsɪŋ 23
hospital 'hɒspɪtəl 6, 14
hot hɒt 7, 28
hot dog hɒt dɒɡ 10
hotel həʊ'tel 21
hour aʊə 51, 52
Houses of Parliament 'haʊzɪz əv 'pɑːləmənt 33
How (awful) haʊ 56
How about …? haʊ ə'baʊt 7, 9
How are you? haʊ ə juː 6, 8
How do I get to …? haʊ duː aɪ ɡet tə 29
How do you …? haʊ duː juː 47
How do you say …? haʊ duː juː seɪ 48
How heavy are you? haʊ hevi ɑː juː 6

How long does it take …? haʊ lɒŋ dəz ɪt teɪk 43
How much …? haʊ mʌtʃ 21
How much do you weigh? haʊ mʌtʃ duː juː weɪ 6
How often do you …? haʊ ˈɒfən duː juː 47
How old is he? haʊ əʊld ɪz hi 6
How tall is...? haʊ tɔːl ɪz 6
How would you like …? haʊ wʊd juː laɪk 22
hungry ˈhʌŋgri 7, 37
hurricane ˈhʌrɪkən 28, 37
hurry up ˈhʌri ʌp 9
husband ˈhʌzbənd 1
I agree aɪ əˈgri 9
I don't mind aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd 9
I'd like … aɪd laɪk 22
I'll have … aɪl hæv 22
ice cream ˌaɪsˈkriːm 22, 38
I'm looking for ... aɪm ˈlʊkɪŋ fɔː 29
ICT (information communication technology) ˌaɪsiːˈtiː 15
if ɪf 50
ill ɪl 2, 6, 7
illness ˈɪlnəs 6
impossible ɪmˈpɒsəbəl 58
in ɪn 24, 49, 53
in a bad mood ɪn ə bæd muːd 36
in a moment ɪn ə ˈməʊmənt 52
in advance ɪn ədˈvɑːns 32
India ˈɪndiə 27
Indian ˈɪndiən 27
informal ɪnˈfɔːməl 58
information ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃən 29, 55
innocent ˈɪnəsənt 34
instructor ɪnˈstrʌktə 59
interested in ˈɪntrəstɪd ɪn 57
Internet ˈɪntənet 16, 25
interview (with) ˈɪntəvjuː 35
Irish ˈaɪrɪʃ 27
Is everything all right? ɪz ˈevrɪθɪŋ ɔːl raɪt 22
Is there...? ɪz ðeɪə 29
it doesn't matter ɪt dʌznt ˈmætə 9
it takes (+ time) ɪt teɪks 43
It's … here ɪts hɪə 16
It's a … day ɪts ə deɪ 28
It's got... ɪts gɒt 38
it's up to you ɪts ʌp tə juː 9
Italian ɪˈtæliən 27
Italy ˈɪtəli 27
jacket ˈdʒækɪt 4
January ˈdʒænjuəri 51
Japan dʒəˈpæn 27
Japanese dʒæpnˈiːz 27
jazz dʒæz 26
jeans dʒiːnz 4
job dʒɒb 14
journalist ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst 35
journey ˈdʒɜːni 32
judo ˈdʒuːdəʊ 23
July dʒuˈlaɪ 51
jump dʒʌmp 49
jumper ˈdʒʌmpə 4
June dʒuːn 51
just relax dʒʌst rɪˈlæks 13
karate kəˈrɑːti 23
kayaking ˈkaɪækɪŋ 23
key kiː 21
keyboard ˈkiːbɔːd 16
kid kɪd 31
kilo ˈkiːləʊ 55
king kɪŋ 33
kitchen ˈkɪtʃɪn 11
kitchen roll ˈkɪtʃɪn rəʊl 11
knee niː 3
knife naɪf 11
lake leɪk 30
lamb læm 31
lamp læmp 13
land lænd 32
laptop ˈlæptɒp 16
last lɑːst 52
late for leɪt fə 36
law lɔː 34
leap year liːp jɪə 51
learn lɜːn 15, 26
leather ˈleðə 31
leave liːv 32
leave a voicemail liːv ə ˈvɔɪsmeɪl 17
left left 29, 53
leg leg 3
lend lend 60
lesson(s) lesʌn 26, 38
let's lets 9
letter ˈletə 16
letter box ˈletə bɒks 16
librarian laɪˈbreəriən 14
library ˈlaɪbrəri 29
lift lɪft 21
light laɪt 12, 13
light switch laɪt swɪtʃ 13
lightning ˈlaɪtnɪŋ 28
like laɪk 7, 23, 50
lion laɪən 31
lip lɪp 3
lipstick ˈlɪpstɪk 3
listen (to) ˈlɪsən 13, 25, 26, 47
listen to ˈlɪsən tə 57
litre ˈliːtə 55
living room ˈlɪvɪŋ ruːm 13
loaf ləʊf 55
local ˈləʊkəl 17
locked lɒkt 17
long lɒŋ 5
look after lʊk ˈɑːftə 57
look at lʊk æt 57
look for lʊk fɔː 29, 36, 57
look forward to lʊk ˈfɔːwəd tə 57
look like lʊk laɪk 5
Look out lʊk aʊt 9
loose luːs 60
lose luːz 36, 60
loud laʊd 54
loudly ˈlaʊdli 54
love lʌv 7, 24
lovely ˈlʌvli 56
lunch lʌntʃ 38
luggage ˈlʌgɪdʒ 18, 21, 32, 55
magazine ˌmægəˈziːn 25, 35
main course meɪn kɔːs 22
make meɪk 12, 40
make a (phone) call meɪk ə kɔːl 16
make a choice meɪk ə tʃɔɪs 41
make a film meɪk ə fɪlm 41
make a mess meɪk ə mes 41
make a mistake meɪk ə mɪsˈteɪk 41
make a noise meɪk ə nɔɪz 41
make a photocopy meɪk ə ˈfəʊtəˌkɒpi 41
make a video meɪk ə ˈvɪdɪəʊ 41
make an appointment meɪk ən əˈpɔɪntmənt 41
make breakfast meɪk ˈbrekfəst 41
make dinner meɪk ˈdɪnə 41, 47
make hot chocolate meɪk hɒt ˈtʃɒklət 41
make lunch meɪk lʌntʃ 41

make me (feel) meɪk miː 41
make my bed meɪk maɪ bed 41
make phone calls meɪk fəʊn kɔːlz 16
make some coffee meɪk səm 'kɒfi 41
make some tea meɪk səm tiː 41
malaria mə'leəriə 6
man-made ˌmæn'meɪd 37
manner 'mænə 54
map mæp 32
March mɑːtʃ 51
marriage 'mærɪdʒ 2
married 'mærɪd 2
maths mæθs 15
May meɪ 51
meal miːl 22, 38
meat miːt 10, 31
mechanic mə'kænɪk 14
media 'miːdiə 35
medium 'miːdiəm 5, 22
memory 'meməri 17
memory stick 'meməri stɪk 16
men's wear menz weə 19
mend mend 36
menu 'menjuː 22
Merry Christmas 'meri 'krɪsməs 8, 48
message 'mesɪdʒ 16, 17
microwave 'maɪkrəweɪv 11
middle ˌmɪdəl 53
middle-aged 'mɪdəl'eɪdʒd 5
milk mɪlk 10, 31, 55
mineral water 'mɪnərəl 'wɔːtə 10
mini-bar 'mɪni bɑː 21
minus 'maɪnəs 28
minute mɪnɪt 51
mirror 'mɪrə 12
miss mɪs 49
mixed salad mɪkst 'sæləd 22
mobile 'məʊbaɪl 16
mobile device 'məʊbaɪl dɪ'vaɪs 16
modern languages 'mɒdən 'læŋgwɪdʒɪz 15
moment 'məʊmənt 38, 52
Monday 'mʌndeɪ 51
money 'mʌni 21, 55
monkey 'mʌŋki 31
month mʌnθ 51
mood muːd 36
morning 'mɔːnɪŋ 35, 51
Moroccan mə'rɒkən 27
Morocco mə'rɒkəʊ 25
mosquito mɒs'kiːtəʊ 6
mother 'mʌðə 1
motor racing 'məʊtə 'reɪsɪŋ 23
motorbike 'məʊtəbaɪk 32
motorcycle 'məʊtəˌsaɪkəl 32
mountain 'maʊntɪn 30
mouse maʊs 16
moustache mə'stɑːʃ 5
mouth maʊθ 3
mug mʌg 11, 34
mugger 'mʌgə 34
mugging 'mʌgɪŋ 34
murder 'mɜːdə 34
murderer 'mɜːdərə 34
museum mjuː'ziːəm 29
mushroom(s) 'mʌʃrʊm 10, 22
music 'mjuːzɪk 15, 26
musical 'mjuːzɪkəl 24, 26
musical instruments 'mjuːzɪkəl 'ɪnstrəmənts 26
musician mjuː'zɪʃən 26
nail neɪl 3
national park 'næʃənl pɑːk 30
nationality næʃən'æləti 27
natural disaster 'nætʃrəl dɪ'zɑːstə 37
nature 'neɪtʃə 30, 35
neck nek 3
nephew 'nefjuː 1
never 'nevə 52
new potatoes njuː pə'teɪtəʊz 22
New Year's Day njuː jɪəz deɪ 33
New Year's Eve ˌnjuː jɪəz iːv 33
New Zealand ˌnjuː 'ziːlənd 27
news njuːz 35, 55
newsagent(' s) 'njuːzˌeɪdʒənt 19
newspaper 'njuːzˌpeɪpə 25, 29, 35
next nekst 52
next day delivery nekst deɪ dɪ'lɪvəri 20
nice naɪs 56
niece niːs 1
night naɪt 60
nightlife 'naɪtlaɪf 18
no smoking nəʊ 'sməʊkɪŋ 29
non-smoking nɒn 'sməʊkɪŋ 58
normally 'nɔːməli 12, 47
North America nɔːθ ə'merɪkə 27
nose nəʊz 3
not bad nɒt bæd 56
not often nɒt 'ɒfən 52
not too bad nɒt tuː bæd 8
note nəʊt 19
notebook 'nəʊtbʊk 15
nothing 'nʌθɪŋ 25
notice 'nəʊtɪs 29
noticeboard nəʊtɪsbɔːd 15
novel 'nɒvəl 25
November nə'vembə 51
now naʊ 52
now and then naʊ ən ðen 52
number 'nʌmbə 29
nurse nɜːs 14
nursery school 'nɜːsri skuːl 33
o'clock əʊ'klɒk 52
occasionally ə'keɪʒnəli 52
October ɒk'təʊbə 51
office 'ɒfɪs 14
often 'ɒfən 52
OHP əʊ eɪtʃ 'piː 15
Oh dear əʊ dɪə 9
old(er) əʊld 5
on ɒn 53
on strike ɒn straɪk 37
on the first floor ɒn ðə fɜːst flɔː 21
on the left ɒn ðə left 29, 53
on the phone ɒn ðə fəʊn 25
on the right ɒn ðə raɪt 53
on TV ɒn tiː'viː 24
once wʌns 52
onion 'ʌnjən 10
online ˌɒn'laɪn 16, 20, 25, 35
online check-in ˌɒn'laɪn tʃek ɪn 32
online reviews 'ɑːnlaɪn rɪ'vjuːz 20
only 'əʊnli 50
only child 'əʊnli tʃaɪld 1
open 'əʊpən 19
opera 'ɒpərə 26
or ɔː 50
orange 'ɒrɪndʒ 10
orchestra 'ɔːkɪstrə 26
order 'ɔːdə 22
order number 'ɔːdə 'nʌm.bə 20
out aʊt 53
out of order aʊt əv 'ɔːdə 29, 36

outside line ˌaʊt'saɪd laɪn 21
oven 'ʌvən 33
over there 'əʊvə ðeə 21
overweight 'əʊvəweɪt 5
package holiday 'pækɪdʒ 'hɒlədeɪ 18
pain peɪn 3
pair of trousers / shorts / glasses peər ɒv 'traʊzəz /ʃɔːts / 'glɑːsɪz 4
Pakistan ˌpɑːkɪ'stɑːn 27
Pakistani ˌpɑːkɪ'stɑːni 27
paper 'peɪpə 35
parents 'peərənts 1
park pɑːk 29
parrot 'pærət 31
party 'pɑːti 38
pass pɑːs 13, 49
pass an exam pɑːs ən ɪg'zæm 15
passport 'pɑːspɔːt 18, 32
past pɑːst 52
pasta 'pæstə 10
path pɑːθ 30
pay peɪ 19, 34
pay a fine pei ə faɪn 34
pay for peɪ fɔː 57
PE (physical education) ˌpiː'iː 15
pea(s) piː 10
pear peə 10
pedestrian area pə'destriən 'eəriə 29
pen pen 15
pencil 'pensəl 15
pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃɑːpənə 15
pepper 'pepə 10
perfect 'pɜːfəkt 56
Peru pə'ruː 27
Peruvian pə'ruːviən 27
pet pet 31
petrol 'petrəl 32
phone fəʊn 13, 21, 25
phone a friend fəʊn ə frend 47
phone box fəʊn bɒks 16
phone call 'fəʊn kɔːl 16
phone case fəʊn keɪs 17
phone number fəʊn 'nʌmbə 16
photo 'fəʊtəʊ 43
photograph 'fəʊtəgrɑːf 43
physics 'fɪzɪks 15
pianist 'piːənɪst 26
piano pi'ænəʊ 26
picture 'pɪktʃə 13
piece of paper piːs əv 'peɪpə 15
pig pɪg 31
piglet 'pɪglət 31
PIN pɪn 17
pineapple 'paɪnæpəl 10
pitch pɪtʃ 23
pizza 'piːtsə 10
place pleɪs 22
plane pleɪn 18, 32
plaster 'plɑːstə 36
plate pleɪt 11, 55
play pleɪ 23, 24, 25
play a musical instrument pleɪ ə 'mjuːzɪkəl 'ɪnstrəmənt 26
play in an orchestra pleɪ ɪn æn 'ɔːkɪstrə 26
play video games pleɪ 'vɪdɪəʊ geimz 25
please pliːz 8, 48
please keep off the grass pliːz kiːp ɒf ðə grɑːs 29
Poland 'pəʊlənd 27
police pə'liːs 34
police officer pə'liːs 'ɒfɪsə 14
Polish 'pəʊlɪʃ 27
polluted pə'luːtɪd 37
pollution pə'luːʃən 37
pool puːl 23
poor pɔː 37
pop music pɒp 'mjuːzɪk 26
pork pɔːk 31
Portuguese ˌpɔːtʃə'giːz 27
position pə'zɪʃən 53
post pəʊst 16, 29
post code 'pəʊst kəʊd 20
post office pəʊst 'ɒfɪs 19, 29
postcard 'pəʊstkɑːd 18
potato(es) pə'teɪtəʊ 10, 22
power button 'paʊə 'bʌtən 17
prefer prɪ'fɜː 7
pre-heat priː hiːt 58
pre-school priː skuːl 58
present 'prezənt 52
pretty 'prɪti 5
price praɪs 20
primary school 'praɪməri skuːl 33
Prime Minister praɪm 'mɪnɪstə 33
prison 'prɪzən 34
private school 'praɪvɪt skuːl 33
problem 'prɒbləm 37
programme 'prəʊgræm 25, 35
proud of praʊd ɒv 57
pub pʌb 22
pull pʊl 19
push pʊʃ 19
put … on pʊt ɒn 4, 46
put on pʊt ɒn 36, 46
pyjamas pɪ'dʒɑːməz 4, 12
queen kwiːn 33
quickly 'kwɪkli 59
quiet 'kwaɪət 54, 60
quietly 'kwaɪətli 54
quite kwaɪt 60
rabbit 'ræbɪt 31
radio 'reɪdiəʊ 12, 13, 25, 35
railway station 'reɪlweɪ 'steɪʃən 29
rain reɪn 28
rainy 'reɪni 28
rare reə 22
rarely 'reəli 52
razor 'reɪzə 12
read riːd 13, 15, 25, 35
ready to order 'redi tə 'ɔːdə 22
reality TV ri'æləti ˌtiː'viː 35
really 'rɪəli 7, 9
receipt rɪ'siːt 19
recently 'riːsəntli 52
reception rɪ'sepʃən 21
redo 'riːˌduː 58
relations rɪ'leɪʃənz 1
relatives 'relətɪvz 1
relax rɪ'læks 6, 13
remote control rɪ'məʊt kən'trəʊl 13
repair rɪ'peə 36
reply rɪ'plaɪ 48
reporter rɪ'pɔːtə 35
reservation ˌrezə'veɪʃən 21
reserve (a seat) rɪ'zɜːv 32
restaurant 'restrɒnt 14, 19, 22
restaurant car 'restrɒnt kɑː 32
return ticket rɪ'tɜːn 'tɪkɪt 32
review rɪ'vjuː 20
rewrite 'riːraɪt 58
rice raɪs 10, 55
ride raɪd 49
right raɪt 29, 53, 54
right way raɪt wei 54
ring rɪŋ 4
river 'rɪvə 30
road rəʊd 29

roast beef rəʊst biːf 33
roast potatoes rəʊst pə'teɪtəʊz 33
rob rɒb 34
robber 'rɒbə 34
robbery 'rɒbəri 34
rock rɒk 26
romantic (comedy) rə'mæntɪk 24
room service 'ruːm ˌsɜːvɪs 21
room with a view ruːm wɪð ə vjuː 21
routine ruː'tiːn 12
row raʊ 36
royal family 'rɔɪəl 'fæməli 33
rubber 'rʌbə 15
rucksack 'rʌksæk 18
rug rʌg 13
rugby 'rʌgbi 23
ruler 'ruːlə 15
run rʌn 49
running 'rʌnɪŋ 23
rush hour rʌʃ aʊə 37
sad sæd 7
sadness 'sædnəs 59
sailing 'seɪlɪŋ 23
salad 'sæləd 22
salmon fillet 'sæmən 'fɪlɪt 22
salt sɒlt 10
sandy 'sændi 59
Saturday 'sætədeɪ 51
saucepan 'sɔːspən 11
say seɪ 48
save seɪv 17
scarf skɑːf 4
school skuːl 15
science fiction saɪəns 'fɪkʃən 24
Scottish 'skɒtɪʃ 27
screen skriːn 16, 17
search sɜːtʃ 20
season 'siːzən 51
seat siːt 32
second 'sekənd 19, 51
secondary school 'sekəndri skuːl 33
secretary 'sekrətəri 14
see siː 24, 25
See you soon siː juː suːn 8
selfies selfis 17
sell sel 34
sell drugs sel drʌgz 34
send a postcard send ə pəʊstkɑːd 18
send a text (message) send ə tekst 16
separated 'sepəreɪtɪd 2
September sep'tembə 51
shampoo ʃæm'puː 12
sheep ʃiːp 31
shelf ʃelf 11, 12
ship ʃɪp 32
shirt ʃɜːt 4
shoe(s) ʃuː 4, 55
shop ʃɒp 14, 19, 29
shop assistant ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt 14
shop online ʃɒpɑːnlaɪn 20
shoplifter ʃɒplɪftə 34
shoplifting 'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ 34
shopping 'ʃɒpɪŋ 19
shopping centre 'ʃɒpɪŋ 'sentə 29
short ʃɔːt 5
shorts ʃɔːts 4
shoulder 'ʃəʊldə 3
shower ʃaʊə 12, 21, 38
shower gel 'ʃaʊə dʒel 12
sick sɪk 6
side saɪd 3, 29, 53
sign saɪn 19, 21
SIM card 'sɪm kɑːd 17
single 'sɪŋgəl 2
single room 'sɪŋgəl ruːm 21
single ticket 'sɪŋgəl 'tɪkɪt 32
sink sɪŋk 11
sister 'sɪstə 1
size saɪz 19, 20
skiing 'skiːɪŋ 23, 30
skin skɪn 3, 5
skirt skɜːt 4
sleep sliːp 25
sleep well sliːp wel 8
slim slɪm 5
slow sləʊ 54
slowly 'sləʊli 54
smaller (size) smɔːlə 19
snack snæk 22
snake sneɪk 31
sneeze sniːz 6
snow snəʊ 28
snowboarding 'snəʊbɔːdɪŋ 23
snowing 'snəʊɪŋ 28
snowstorm 'snəʊstɔːm 37
snowy 'snəʊi 28
so səʊ 50
soap səʊp 12
soap opera 'səʊpˌɒpərə 35
socket 'sɒkɪt 13
socks sɒks 4
sofa 'səʊfə 13
soft drink(s) sɒft drɪŋk 22
sometimes 'sʌmtaɪmz 47, 52
son sʌn 1
song sɒŋ 26
soon suːn 52
sorry 'sɒri 8
soup (of the day) suːp 22
South Africa saʊθ 'æfrɪkə 27
South African saʊθ 'æfrɪkən 27
South America saʊθ ə'merɪkə 27
spaghetti spə'geti 55
Spain speɪn 27
Spanish 'spænɪʃ 27
speak spiːk 48
speak to spiːk tə 16
spoon spuːn 11
sports spɔːts 23, 35
sports centre spɔːts 'sentə 23
sports magazine spɔːts mægə'ziːn 35
sports programme spɔːts prəʊgræm 35
spring sprɪŋ 51
stamp stæmp 16
starter 'stɑːtə 22
state school steɪt skuːl 33
station 'steɪʃən 29
stay steɪ 25
steak steɪk 22
steal stiːl 34
stomach 'stʌmək 3
storm stɔːm 28
strawberry (-ies) 'strɔːbəri 10
stressed strest 6
strike straɪk 37
student 'stjuːdənt 15
study 'stʌdi 15
subject 'sʌbdʒəkt 15
sugar 'ʃʊgə 10, 55
suit suːt 4
suitcase 'suːtkeɪs 18
summer 'sʌmə 51
sun sʌn 28
Sunday 'sʌndeɪ 51
sunglasses 'sʌnˌglɑːsɪz 4
sunny 'sʌni 28, 59
supermarket 'suːpəˌmɑːkɪt 19

surprised sə'praɪzd 7
sweater 'swetə 4
swim swɪm 38, 49
swimmer 'swɪmə 59
swimming 'swɪmɪŋ 23
swimming pool 'swɪmɪŋ puːl 23
swipe swaɪp 17
switch on swɪtʃ ɒn 13
table 'teɪbəl 13
table tennis 'teɪbəl 'tenɪs 23
take teɪk 34, 43, 44, 49
take (some) lessons teɪk 'lesənz 43
take … for a walk teɪk fɔːr ə wɔːk 31
take … off teɪk ɒf 4
take a course teɪk ə kɔːs 43
take a message teɪk ə 'mesɪdʒ 16
take a photo teɪk ə 'fəʊtəʊ 43
take a taxi teɪk ə 'tæksi 43
take an exam teɪk ən ɪg'zæm 15, 43
take drugs teɪk drʌgz 34
take off teɪk ɒf 32, 46
take the bus teɪk ðə bʌs 29, 43
take the lift teɪk ðə lɪft 21
take the train teɪk ðə treɪn 43
take the underground teɪk ðə 'ʌndəgraʊnd 43
take-away teɪk ə'weɪ 22
talk tɔːk 25, 48
talk to tɔːk tuː 25
talk show tɔːk ʃəʊ 35
tall tɔːl 5
tap tæp 11
taxi 'tæksi 32, 43
taxi driver 'tæksi 'draɪvə 14
tea tiː 10, 38, 55
tea towel tiː taʊəl 11
teach tiːtʃ 15
teacher 'tiːtʃə 14, 15
teapot 'tiːpɒt 11
teenage 'tiːneɪdʒ 35
teenage magazine tiːneɪdʒ ˌmægə'ziːn 35
teeth tiːθ 3
telephone (phone) 'telɪfəʊn 12, 16
television (TV) 'telɪvɪʒən 12, 13, 35
tell (someone) a joke tel ə dʒəʊk 48
tell (someone) a story tel ə 'stɔːri 48
tell (someone) the time tel ðə taɪm 48
tell someone you called tel 'sʌmwʌn juː kɔːld 16
tell someone your address tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔː ə'dres 48
tell someone your name tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔː neɪm 48
tell someone your phone number tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔː fəʊn 'nʌmbə 48
tennis 'tenɪs 23
terrible 'terəbəl 56
terrorism 'terərɪzəm 34
terrorist 'terərɪst 34
text tekst 16, 17
textbook 'teksbʊk 15
Thai taɪ 27
Thailand 'taɪlænd 27
than ðæn 50
thank for θæŋk fɔː 57
Thank you θæŋk juː 8, 48
thanks θæŋks 8
then ðen 52
there ðeə 53
there's a … ðeəz ə 29
thief θiːf 34
thin θɪn 5
think about θɪŋk ə'baʊt 57
third θɜːd 19
thirsty 'θɜːsti 7
thriller 'θrɪlə 24
thumb θʌm 3
thunder 'θʌndə 28
thunderstorm 'θʌndəstɔːm 28
thundery 'θʌndəri 28
Thursday 'θɜːzdeɪ 51
ticket 'tɪkɪt 32
tidy 'taɪdi 36
tie taɪ 4
tiger 'taɪgə 31
tights taɪts 4
time taɪm 51, 52
timetable 'taɪmˌteɪbəl 32
(four) times a month taɪmz ə mʌnθ 52
(three) times a week taɪmz ə wiːk 47
tired taɪəd 7
today tə'deɪ 51, 52
toe təʊ 3
toilet 'tɔɪlət 12
tomato(es) tə'mɑːtəʊ 10
tomorrow tə'mɒrəʊ 51, 52
too tuː 50
too much (work) tuː mʌtʃ 36
tooth tuːθ 3
toothache 'tuːθeɪk 6
toothbrush 'tuːθbrʌʃ 12
toothpaste 'tuːθpeɪst 12
top tɒp 53
tortoise 'tɔːtəs 31
tourist (information) office 'tʊərɪst 'ɒfɪs 29
towel taʊəl 12
town taʊn 29, 30
town hall taʊn hɔːl 2929
toys tɔɪz 19
traffic 'træfɪk 55
traffic jam 'træfɪk dʒæm 37
traffic warden 'træfɪk 'wɔːdən 14
train treɪn 14, 18, 29, 32
trainers 'treɪnəz 4
train station treɪn 'steɪʃən 29
transport 'trænspɔːt 18, 32, 49
travel 'trævəl 55
travelling 'trævəlɪŋ 32
tropical 'trɒpɪkəl 6
trousers 'traʊzəz 4
trumpet 'trʌmpɪt 26
trumpet-player 'trʌmpɪt 'pleɪə 26
try on traɪ ɒn 19
T-shirt 'tiːʃɜːt 4
Tuesday 'tjuːzdeɪ 51
Tunisia tjuː'nɪziə 27
Tunisian tjuː'nɪziən 27
turn tɜːn 29
turn down tɜːn daʊn 46
turn off tɜːn ɒf 12, 13, 46
turn on tɜːn ɒn 13, 46
turn up tɜːn ʌp 46
TV ˌtiː'viː 13, 21, 24, 25, 35
twice twaɪs 52
ugly 'ʌgli 5
UK ˌjuː'keɪ 27
umbrella ʌm'brelə 4
uncle 'ʌŋkəl 1
uncountable ʌn'kaʊntəbəl 55
underground 'ʌndəgraʊnd 32
unemployed ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd 37

unfriendly (way) ʌn'frendli 54
unhappy ʌn'hæpi 58
United States (the US) juːˌnaɪtɪd 'steɪts 27
university ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsəti 15
unlock ʌn'lɒk 17
unsafe ʌn'seɪf 58
untidy ʌn'taɪdi 36
upset ʌp'set 7
upstairs ʌp'steəz 12
USA ˌjuːes'eɪ 27
used to 'jus tu 57
useful 'juːsfəl 59
useless 'juːsləs 59
usually 'juːʒəli 47, 52
Valentine's Day 'vælətaɪnz deɪ 33
vandal 'vændəl 34
vandalism 'vændəlɪzəm 34
vegetable(s) 'vedʒtəbəl 10, 22, 25
vegetarian ˌvedʒɪ'teəriən 10
very (bad / good) 'veri 56
very well 'veri wel 7
video games 'vidiːəʊ geɪmz 25
village 'vɪlɪdʒ 30
violin ˌvaɪə'lɪn 26
violinist vaɪə'lɪnɪst 26
visa 'viːzə 18
voicemail 'vɔɪsmeɪl 16
volleyball 'vɒlibɔːl 23
waist weɪst 3
wait for weɪt fɔː 57, 60
waiter 'weɪtə 14
wake up weɪk ʌp 12, 47
wake-up call weɪk ʌp kɔːl 21
walk wɔːk 30, 49
walking holiday 'wɔːkɪŋ 'hɒlədeɪ 18
want wɒnt 7
war wɔː 37
wardrobe 'wɔːdrəʊb 12
wash wɒʃ 3
wash clothes wɒʃ kləʊðz 47
washing machine 'wɒʃɪŋ məˈʃiːn 11
washing-up liquid 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp 'lɪkwɪd 11
watch wɒtʃ 4, 23, 24,
  watch television (TV) wɒtʃ televɪʒən 25, 47
watch a DVD wɒtʃ ə diːviːdiː 25
watch TV online wɒtʃ tiːviː ɒnlaɪn 36
water 'wɔːtə 31, 36, 55
way weɪ 54
wear weə 4
weather 'weðə 28, 55
wedding 'wedɪŋ 2
Wednesday 'wenzdeɪ 51
week wiːk 51, 52
weekend ˌwiːk'end 51
weigh weɪ 2, 5
weight weɪt 5
well wel 6, 7, 54
Well done wel dʌn 8, 9
well-done ˌwel'dʌn 22
western 'westən 24
wet wet 28
What a pity wɒt ə 'pɪti 9
What about …? wɒt ə'baʊt 9
What time do you ….? wɒt taɪm də juː 47
What time is…..? wɒt taɪm ɪz 21
What would you like…? wɒt wʌd juː laɪk 22
What's his/her job? wɒts hɪz/hɜː dʒɒb 14
What's on …? wɒts ɒn 24
What's on TV? wɒts ɒn ˌtiː'viː 35
What's the weather like? wɒts ðə 'weðə laɪk 28
What's your favourite …? wɒts jɔː 'feɪvərɪt 23
when wen 50
Where can I find …? weə kən aɪ faɪnd 11
Where does … go? weə dəz … gəʊ 11
Where is …? weər ɪz 29
whiteboard 'waɪtbɔːd 15
Why don't …? waɪ dəʊnt 9
widowed 'wɪdəʊd 2
wife waɪf 1
wild animal waɪld 'ænɪməl 31
wildlife 'waɪldlaɪf 30
wind wɪnd 28
window 'wɪndəʊ 13
windy 'wɪndi 28
wine waɪn 10
winter 'wɪntə 51
winter holiday 'wɪntə 'hɒlədeɪ 18
women's magazine 'wɪmɪnz mægə'ziːn 35
women's wear wɪmɪnz weə 19
wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 56
wood wʊd 30
wool wʊl 31
work wɜːk 14, 36, 55
worker 'wɜːkə 59
worktop 'wɜːktɒp 11
Would you like …? wʊd juː laɪk 22
write raɪt 15
write emails raɪt iːmeilz 47
write letters raɪt 'letəz 47
wrong (way) rɒŋ 54
year jɪə 51, 52
yesterday 'jestədeɪ 51
Yorkshire pudding 'jɔːkʃə 'pʊdɪŋ 33
young(er) jʌŋ 5
zip code zɪp kəʊd 20
zoo zuː 31

Irregular verbs

Most verbs in English are regular but some of the most common verbs in English are irregular. The forms here are the infinitive (*go, come*), the past simple (*went, came*) and the past participle (*gone, come*).

A All forms the same		
cost	cost	cost
cut /kʌt/	cut	cut
hurt	hurt	hurt
let	let	let
put/pʊt/	put	put
shut /ʃʌt/	shut	shut

B Two different forms		
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
bring	brought	brought
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
come	came	come
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
get	got	got
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept
leave	left	left
learn	learnt	learnt
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid /peɪd/	paid
read /riːd/	read /red/	read /red/
run	ran	run
say	said /sed/	said
sell	sold	sold
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
win	won	won
understand	understood	understood

C Three different forms

be	was / were	been
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
know	knew	known
ride	rode	ridden
rise	rose	risen
sing	sang	sung
speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
write	wrote	written

Tip

When you learn a new irregular verb, add it to one of the groups of verbs on these pages.

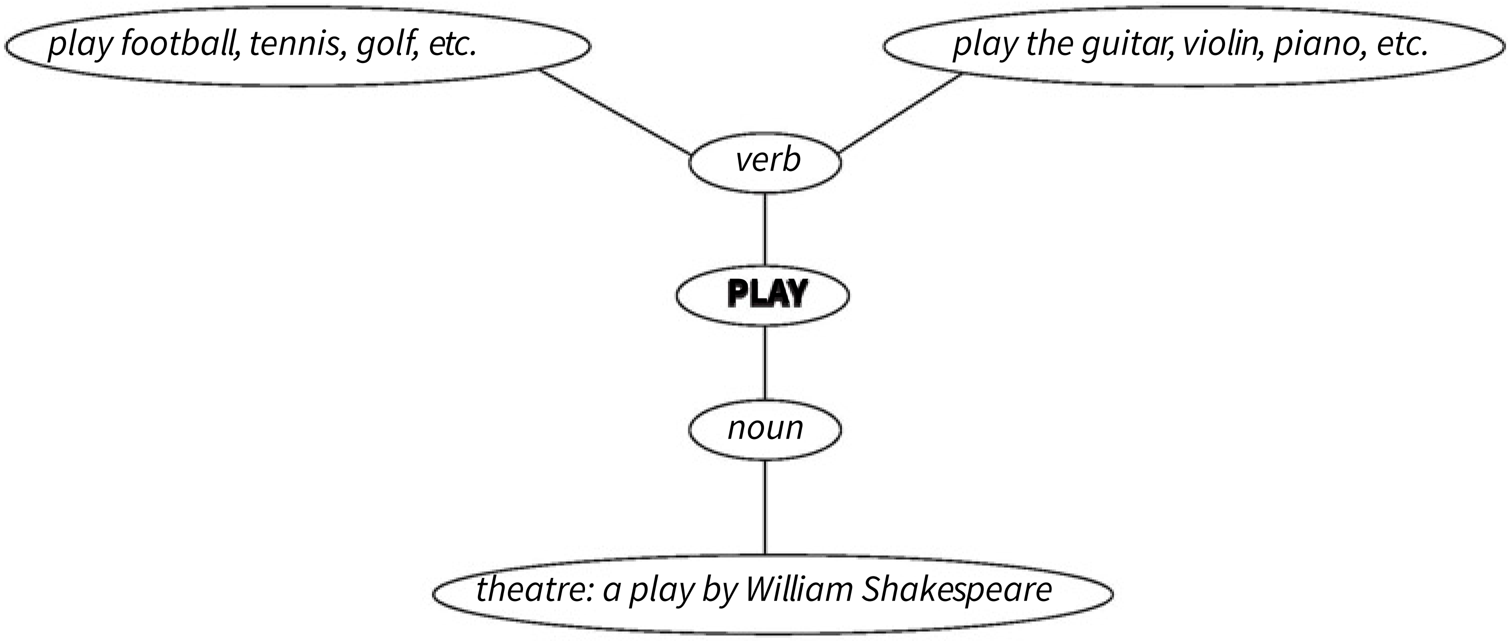
How to learn vocabulary

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do different things.

1. Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers with your teacher. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten. Repeating work is very important.
2. Keep a vocabulary notebook. Students who regularly make notes in a separate notebook often do better in tests and examinations than students who do not keep a notebook.
3. Use different ways of recording things in your notebook. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in your notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Here are some examples:

   ready: *(person at the door of a theatre, to all the people waiting) 'Have your tickets ready, please!' = have your ticket in your hand*
   else: *(person in a restaurant) 'Would you like anything else?'= more or in addition or different*
   rush hour: *(person who is about to leave home for work) 'I'm going early so that I miss the rush hour' = the times when there are lots of people travelling to work in the morning or when people are travelling home in the evening*

   Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.
4. Use diagrams and other visual aids to help you learn and remember words and phrases. Word bubbles are very easy to draw and can help you remember the different meanings and uses of words. Here is an example for the word *play*, which can be a verb or a noun:


play football, tennis, golf, etc.
play the guitar, violin, piano, etc.
verb
PLAY
noun
theatre: a play by William Shakespeare

Charts can also help you to organise information about words. This student has made notes in her vocabulary notebook about useful verbs and the nouns we use them with:

take	*a taxi* *a message* *violin lessons*	*catch*	*a cold* *a criminal* *a ball*	*make*	*dinner* *a mistake* *an appointment*	*do*	*my homework* *somebody a favour* *my best (to)*

Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: B = Below, BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, BC = Below Centre, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, L = Left, R = Right, T = Top, TR = Top Right, TL = Top Left.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from Getty Images.

p. 10 (T): KidStock/Blend Images; p. 10 (C): Nerida McMurray Photography/DigitalVision/Getty Images Plus; p. 10 (B): RubberBall Productions/Brand X Pictures; p. 11: Georges De Keerle/Hulton Archive; p. 18 (headache): BakiBG/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 18 (toothache): VladimirFLoyd/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 18 (cold): Lyashik/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 18 (sneeze): Moxie Productions/Blend Images/Getty Images Plus; p. 19: Pete Saloutos/Image Source; p. 20: Robert Oelman/Photodisc; p. 22 (morning) & (evening): Korvit78/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (afternoon): Korvit/Shutterstock; p. 22 (TL): Thorsten Jochim/Stock4B; p. 22 (TR): BJI/Blue Jean Images; p. 22 (cheers): Ezra Bailey/Taxi; p. 34 (nurse): Eric Audras/ONOKY; p. 22 (excuse): Inmagineasia; p. 22 (sorry): Michael M Schwab/The Image Bank; p. 22 (bless you): Ariel Skelley/Blend Images; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.1): Nils Hendrik Muller/Cultura; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.2): Robert Daly/OJO Images; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.3): Satoshi Kawase/Moment; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.4): michaeljung/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.5): Klaus Tiedge/Blend Images; p. 32 (BC), p. 89 (BL), p. 93 (Ex 43.3.1) & p. 118 (BR): Image Source; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.6) & p. 125 (Ex 59.1.3): Westend61; p. 32 (watch television): antikainen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 32 (listen to the radio) & p. 47: andresr/E+; p. 32 (reading book): Shestock/Blend Images; p. 32 (relaxing) & p. 57 (Ex 25.1.6): Wavebreakmedia Ltd/Wavebreak Media/Getty Images Plus; p. 32 (BL): Bruskov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 32 (BR): Roderick Chen/First Light; p. 34 (doctor): Buero Monaco/Taxi; p. 34 (teacher) & p. 89 (TR): PeopleImages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 34 (mechanic): Jetta Productions/Blend Images; p. 34 (secretary): Mohamad Itani/Photolibrary; p. 34 (shop assistant): Greg Pease/The Image Bank; p. 34 (hairdresser): petekarici/E+; p. 34 (engineer): stock_ colors/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 34 (farmer): Monty Rakusen/Cultura; p. 34 (police): Daniel Allan/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 34 (warden): Adam Gault/Photodisc; p. 34 (librarian): Antonello Turchetti/DigitalVision; p. 34 (clerk): Keith Brofsky/Photodisc; p. 34 (waiter): Michael Blann/DigitalVision; p. 34 (BL): JGI/Jamie Grill/Blend Images; p. 38 (letter box): Pawel Libera/LightRocket; p. 38 (computer): arattansi/E+; p. 38 (screen): PC Plus Magazine/Future; p. 38 (keyboard) & (laptop): PC Format Magazine/Future; p. 38 (mouse): stockcam/E+; p. 38 (memory stick): Krasyuk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 38 (mobile device), p. 39 (Ex 16.2.10) & p. 46 (photo 2): pagadesign/E+; p. 38 (mobile) & p. 93 (mobile): lvcandy/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 38 (telephone): Artur Synenko/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 38 (phone box): Robin Hunter/Dorling Kindersley; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.1): MacFormat Magazine/Future; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.2): Richard & Gillian Long/Moment Open; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.3): Anatolii Babii/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.4): Simon Belcher/imageBROKER; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.5): kmaassrock/E+; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.6): PixelEmbargo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.8): Petra Wallner/imageBROKER; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.9): GeorgeManga/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.11): Nadore/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.12): connect11/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (smartphone): ET-ARTWORKS/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (charger): aimy27feb/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (battery): PhanuwatNandee/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (sim) & p. 42 (train): scanrail/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (case): Tap Magazine/Future; p. 40 (selfie): Instants/E+; p. 40 (swipe): monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (pin): milindri/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (save): LunarisMemo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (delete): ved007/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (plane): Okea/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (car): Rawpixel/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (ferry): JTB Photo/Universal Images Group; p. 42 (coach): mladn61/E+; p. 42 (passport) p. 42 (camera) & p. 93 (passport): Creative Crop/Photodisc; p. 42 (ticket): Pgiam/E+; p. 42 (currency): TKphotography64/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (suitcase): terex/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (rucksack) & p. 43 (Ex 18.4.5): monticelllo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.1): maogg/E+; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.2): Terraxplorer/E+; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.3): Creative Crop/DigitalVision; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.4): s-cphoto/E+; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.6): cybrain/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (basket icon): epapijon/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (t-shirt): FlamingPumpkin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (delivery van): art12321/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (checkout): nickylarson974/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (photo 1) & p. 57 (Ex 25.1.5): Jamie Grill; p. 46 (photo 3): chokkicx/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 46

(photo 4): PeopleImages/E+; p. 50: AlexeyBorodin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 51: Tom Grill/The Image Bank; p. 54: Steve Finn/Getty Images Entertainment; p. 55: Keith Hamshere/Moviepix; p. 56 (photo 1): Monkey Business Images/Monkey Business/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (photo 2): elenaleonova/E+; p. 56 (photo 3): sjenner13/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (photo 4): John Fedele/Blend Images; p. 56 (photo 5): BananaStock/BananaStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.1): RuslanDashinsky/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.2): Mint Images -Henry Arden/Mint Images RF; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.3): Lumina Images/Blend Images; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.4): Hybrid Images/Cultura; p. 58 (piano): Dmitry Molev/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (cello): gabink/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (guitar): Zoonar RF/Zoonar/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (flute) & p. 58 (trumpet): Hemera Technologies/PhotoObjects. net/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (violin): pepifoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (clarinet): BradWynnyk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (drums): Stockbyte/Stockbyte; p. 60: InterNetwork Media/Photodisc; p. 61: janrysavy/E+; p. 64 (exit): desert_ fox99/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (entrance): giovanecek/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (no-smoking): pepj/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (grass): KevinHolt/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (out of order): mrdoomits/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (horse): Abramova_ Kseniya/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (chicken): Dorling Kindersley; p. 68 (pig): Tsekhmister/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (sheep): Digital Zoo/Photodisc; p. 68 (cow): narvikk/E+; p. 68 (goat, monkey, lion & giraffe), p. 69 (lion, horse, Sheep, monkey & cats): GlobalP/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (elephant): excentric_ 01/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (snake): Michael Blann/Stone; p. 68 (tiger): luamduan/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (cat): Life On White/Photographer's Choice; p. 68 (rabbit): Life On White/Photodisc; p. 68 (parrot): FlamingPumpkin/E+; p. 68 (dog): Tracy Morgan/Dorling Kindersley; p. 68 (tortoise): amwu/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (goldfish): MirasWonderland/isStock/GettyImages Plus/Getty Images; p. 69 (elephant): rusm/E+; p. 69 (parrot): Les Stocker/Oxford Scientific; p. 69 (tiger) & p. 93 (umbrella): Dave King/Dorling Kindersley; p. 69 (chicken): Richard Clark/Photolibrary; p. 70 (passport): Creative Crop/Photodisc; p. 72 (fish): mtreasure/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 72 (yorkshire): JoeGough/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 72 (curry): LauriPatterson/E+; p. 72 (B): N-Photo Magazine/Future; p. 80 (TL): OMAR TORRES/AFP; p. 80 (TC): Dreef/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 80 (TR): CampPhoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 80 (BL): Danita Delimont/Gallo Images; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.1): Nick Pedersen/Photolibrary; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.2): David McNew/Getty Images News; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.3): OLI SCARFF/AFP; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.4): JOEL SAGET/STR; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.5): Anadolu Agency; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.6): STR; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.7): Scott B Smith Photography/Photolibrary; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.8): Doable/A. collection/amana images; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.9): Byba Sepit/Moment; p. 82 (TR): kupicoo/E+; p. 82 (TL): Tetra Images -Rob Lewine/Brand X Pictures; p. 82 (C): BraunS/E+; p. 82 (hairdresser): leaf/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 83: Alistair Berg/DigitalVision; p. 88 (TL): Jupiterimages/Photolibrary; p. 88 (TR): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images; p. 88 (CL): Jetta Productions/Stone; p. 88 (CR): Jupiterimages/PHOTOS.com/Getty Images Plus; p. 88 (BR): 36clicks/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 89 (TL): Reza Estakhrian/The Image Bank; p. 89 (TC): PeopleImages/DigitalVision; p. 89 (BC): Frank Carter/Lonely Planet Images; p. 89 (BR): Maskot/Maskot; p. 93 (Ex 43.3.2): RODRIGO BUENDIA/AFP; p. 93 (Ex 43.3.3): klohka/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 93 (Ex 43.3.4): JackF/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 93 (camera): yozks/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 93 (notebook): simaso/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 95: fcafotodigital/E+; p. 99 (TL): skynesher/Vetta; p. 99 (BL): Justin-Julius Santos/The Image Bank; p. 99 (TR): AFP/AFP; p. 99 (BR): altrendo images/Stockbyte; p. 103: Nick David/Taxi; p. 107 (T): Jaimie Duplass/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 107 (B): Alistair Berg/The Image Bank; p. 115 (T): Premium/Universal Images Group; p. 115 (B): microgen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 117: Paul Poplis/Photolibrary; p. 118 (TL): Simon Watson/The Image Bank; p. 118 (TC): Jon Lovette/The Image Bank; p. 118 (BL): John Rensten/Taxi; p. 118 (TR): ZoltanFabian/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 118 (Ex 56. b): Dimitri Otis/Photographer's Choice; p. 118 (Ex 56. c): Keith Berson/Image Source; p. 122: John Greim/LightRocket; p. 124: Cultura RM Exclusive/John Philip Harper/Cultura Exclusive; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.1): Australian Scenics/Photographer's Choice; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.2): vm/E+; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.4): David Lees/DigitalVision; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.5): Larry Washburn; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.6): evemilla/E+; p. 127: Compassionate Eye Foundation/Siri Stafford/DigitalVision.

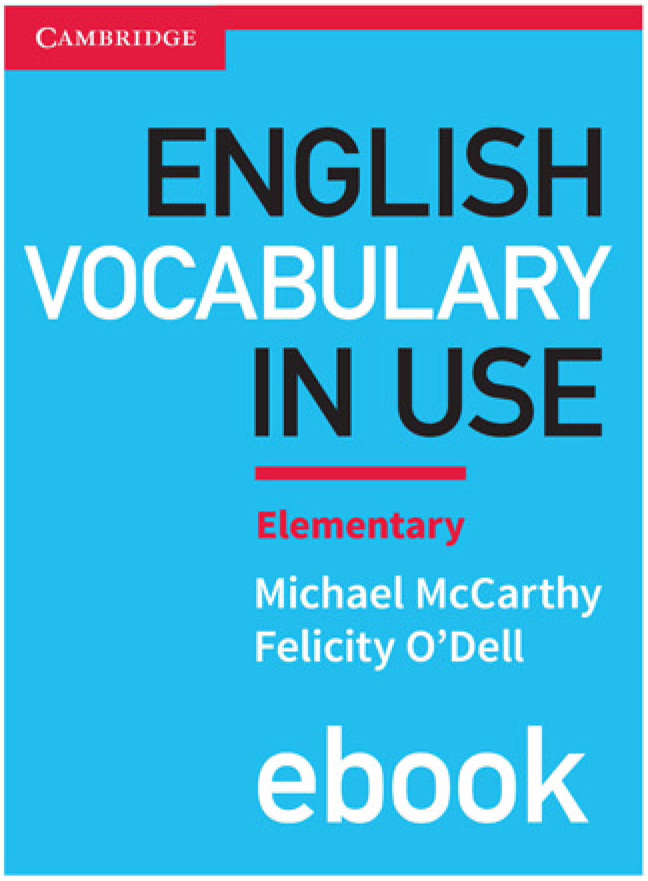
Illustrations

Pablo Gallego (Beehive Illustration), John Goodwin (Eye Candy Illustration), Daniel Limon (Beehive Illustration), John Lund (Beehive Illustration), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), Martina (KJA Artists), Jorge Santillan (Beehive Illustration), Norbert Sipos (Beehive Illustration), Laszlo Veres (Beehive Illustration), Amanda McPhail, Gary Wing, Gillian Martin, Humberto Blanco, Jo Taylor, Kathy Baxendale, Vicky Woodgate, Kate Charlesworth, Kathryn Baker, Mark Duffin and QBS Learning.

Designed and typeset by QBS.

Enhanced ebook

You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same vocabulary explanations as the book.



CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Elementary

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

ebook

25 Free time at home
Exercises

Using the ebook

You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac.

You can: listen to the text on the left-hand page, to help you with your listening and pronunciation.

Using the ebook, you can:

Listen to examples

Make notes

Highlight text

Bookmark pages

How to get your ebook

Follow the instructions in the inside front cover of this book.